00037991

NOT TO BE ISSUED
OUT OF THE LIBRARY.

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
Town Hall, Bombay.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 25 June, 2016

37991

THE

WORKS

OF

Thomas Hearne, M.A.

PRINTED FOR SAMUEL BAGSTER, IN THE STRAND. 1810.

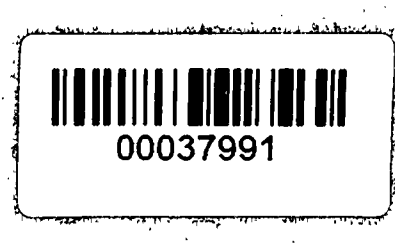
VOL. I.

CONTAINING THE FIRST VOLUME OF

ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER'S CHRONICLE.

B. 1163

W. W. d. 5


00037991

ROBERT
OF
GLOUCESTER'S CHRONICLE.

Transcrib'd, and now first publish'd, from a MS. in the HARLEYAN LIBRARY By THOMAS HEARNE, M. A.

To which is added,
Besides a Glossary and other Improvements, a Continuation (by the Author himself) of this Chronicle from a MS. in the COTTONIAN Library.

In two Volumes.

OXFORD,
Printed at the THEATER,
M. DCC. XXIV.

Marcus Zuerius Boxhornius *ad initium Orationis Dominicæ, antiquissima Alemanorum lingua à se (una cum aliis id genus) editæ, Lugduni Batavorum* A. D. CIↃIↃCL. 12°.

Ex dialecto vide rerum humanarum inconstantiam, & collige antiquitatem, eamque venerare.

THE CONTENTS.

I. THE Publisher's Preface. pag. v.

II. Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, from a MS. in the HARLEYAN Library; with a Continuation of the same (by the Author himself) transcrib'd from a MS. in the COTTONIAN Library, by the Care and at the Expenses of the learned Dr. RICHARD MEAD. 1, 465

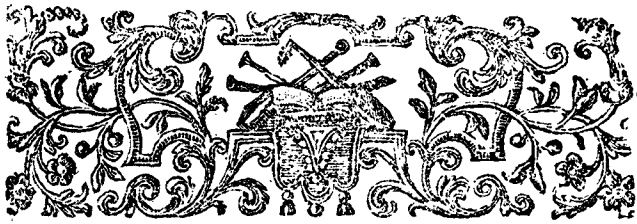
III. *De mirabilibus Britanniæ*, out of an old folio MS. in Vellam, given me by Richard Graves, of Mickleton in Gloucestershire, Esq. 572

IV. The Foundation of the Abbey of Glocester, and the change of the same before the Suppression thereof in the Reign of King Henry the Eight. By William Malverne, Abbat of that Monastery. 584

V. A Peregreu, fro William Conquerour, of the Crowne of Engelonde, lynnyally descendyng, vn to King Henry the vi. Out of the MS. of Robert of Gloucester, that belongs to the Heralds Office. 585

VI. A Letter to Mr. Bagford, containing some Remarks upon Geffry Chaucer and his Writings. 596
VII. The Preface of Mr. John Stowe to one Edition of his Summary (that comes to the Year 1573.) by which my Conjecture about Mr. Murray's Fragments (that I have printed at the End of Heming's Chartulary) is confirm'd. 607
VIII. Some Remarks, in a late, but unknown, hand, at the Beginning of the Cottonian MS. of Robert of Gloucester, relating to the age of the Author, and containing two Passages from a MS. Copy of this Historian, that was formerly in the hands of the learned Mr. Thomas Allen. 609
IX. Glossary. 612
X. Index. 744

THE



THE PUBLISHER'S

PREFACE.

THE Disservice to any branch of Learning, when Persons of skill depretiate the most proper Books for obtaining a Knowledge in it. The Bodleian MS. does not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester. §. I. *The Curiosity of Mr. Keck. The great use of Robert of Gloucester in the Study of the old Saxon Tongue. His value upon other accounts.* **Borstall** *the same with the Saxon* Burgstall. **Brill** *an ancient Burgh, and is nothing else but* **Burgh Hill** *or* **Burgh on the Hill.** §. II. *Robert of Gloucester's following Geffry of Monmouth in the first Part of his Work, no good Objection against his History. The nature of the ancient* βακτηρίαι *to be gathered from an old Roll in the Hands of Mr. Graves. The old use of Horns instead of Cups. Several remarkable Particulars relating to some of our old English Bibles. The Curiosity of the Nuremberg Chronicle.* §. III. *Ferdinando Pulton, the great Law-*

yer, a Cambridge, and not an Oxford, Writer. §. IV. *Something peculiar in the Copy of the Nuremberg Chronicle in Trinity College Library at Cambridge, that I have not yet met with in any other. The first, and not the second, Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle, the true genuine Work of the Author.* §. V. *Many things in Robert of Gloucester, that properly belong to the Business of an Antiquary. In the Saxon Times the Princes, and other great Personages, did not use to be buried at their Palaces, but at Religious Houses. Cosham in Wiltshire very famous formerly. The Coffin lately found there belong'd to some fine Gentleman since the Conquest. The Knife, with which Edward the Martyr was kill'd, preserv'd at Caversham in the time of Robert of Gloucester. Three kinds of Churches formerly.* §. VI. *Robert of Gloucester's Account of the Conflict between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford, in the time of Henry* III. *very remarkable in all it's Circumstances.* §. VII. *Which tho' it be published by Mr. Wood, yet he seems to have had it from second hand. The* Parewell, *mentioned in that Account, is, probably, the same with* Walton Well. Walton Well *the oldest Well of note about Oxford. St. Edward's Well by St. Clement's, older than the old Well from which St. Crosse's Parish, in the Suburbs of Oxford, was called* Holywell. *The respect formerly paid to Wells, which occasioned Injunctions against the Worship of them.* §. VIII. *Our Author's Poëtry agreeable to the Genius of his Age, and his regard to truth in his Rhythms*

Rhythms, answers the Custom of the Pythagoræans and old Britains. §. IX. *He hath continued too long hid from the World. The value of the Harleyan MS. which is followed in the Edition, that we now set forth. The Language, as well as the Work, altered in the MS. of the Heralds Office, and that by one who lived in the time of Hen.* VI. §. X. *Who, however, is pleased to conceal his Name, as he does also that of Robert of Gloucester. A Rhythmical Account of the Kings of England at the end of his MS. which is here likewise printed.* §. XI. *But these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester, as are likewise those in this MS. that relate to K. Richard* I. §. XII. *The Author of which Rhythms about Richard* I. *seems to have been Robert of Brunne.* §. XIII. *This Robert of Brunne the same with Stowe's Robert Brune. Stowe was certainly the Author of the Fragments, that I have printed in Heming. Stowe's Honesty, and the value of his Chronicle. A very remarkable Passage out of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, together with the same as it occurrs in Stowe.* §. XIV. *Instead of the anonymous fabulous Rhythms upon Richard* I. *I have inserted the genuine ones of Robert of Gloucester, in a Continuation of the Harleyan MS. from the Cottonian Library.* §. XV. *The Harleyan MS. perfect, tho' it comes nothing near so low as that of the Cottonian Library. One Leaf, at least, is wanting in the Cottonian MS.* §. XVI. *Our Author seems to have dyed in the Beginning of Edw. the First's Reign.*

Himself gives an express Testimony of the Time in which he flourished. §. XVII. *Which, however, is pass'd over by one, who endeavour'd to settle his Age from Proofs extracted from his Chronicle.* §. XVIII. *Our Author rightly observes the vast disproportion that there was between the pious Acts of K. Edward the Confessor, and the first K. Edward after the Conquest. Interpolations are to be look'd upon as Redundancies, not as Perfections, in old MSS.* §. XIX. *Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Small-Coal Man, seems to have had a MS. of Robert of Gloucester. The learned Mr. Thomas Allen had two MSS. of him, one of which came to the Bodleian Library, the other to some unknown Hands.* §. XX. *Mr. Selden and Mr. Wood had a right notion of the Age of our Author, who ought to be reckon'd among the Oxford Writers.* §. XXI. *Our Author seems to have resided in Oxford in an old House on the West side of Stockwell Street.* §. XXII. *The strange mistake of Mr. Weever, with regard to the Age of Robert of Gloucester.* §. XXIII. *Robert of Brunne's true Sirname was Manning. But the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester does not occur.* §. XXIV. *The Name of Robert Moille inserted at random, as it seems, in the MS. of the Heralds Office. That MS. concludes with some Verses that are not in Caxton.* §. XXV. *This Work is a great Curiosity. The Reproach in neglecting the black Letter.* §. XXVI.

§. I.

§. I. IT cannot but be of great Disservice to any branch of Learning, when such Persons, as are fam'd for their skill in it, take all opportunities of depretiating those Books, that are the most proper Helps for obtaining a Knowledge in it. Among such I may, therefore, deservedly reckon those, that decry, and speak against, Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, as if the Fragments, that have been occasionally published of him by some of our greatest Antiquaries, were sufficient satisfaction to any one, that is curious. *We may probably* (saith [1] the Compiler of the English Historical Library) *bring in also* Robert *of* Gloucester, *for another of his* [Mat. Paris's] *Contemporaries, since Archbishop* [2] Usher *and* [3] *Mr.* Camden *are both positive, that he liv'd some Time in the Reign of King* Henry *the Third. His Rhyming Chronicle is in* [4] English; *and the Reader may have a Taste of it, (as much, it may be, as ever he'll desire) either from* [5] *Mr.* Selden, *or* [6] *Mr.* Wood. But I know several curious Persons, that are so far from be-

The Disservice to any branch of Learning, when Persons of skill depretiate the most proper Books for obtaining a Knowledge in it. The Bodleian MS. does not conta n the genuine Robert of Gloucester.

[1] Ed. fol. p. 62. [2] Hist. Eccles. Brit. p. 29. [3] *Remains*, p. m. 8. [4] Bibl. Cott. *Caligula* A. 11. [5] *Titles of Hon.* p. 535. [6] Hist. & Antiq. Oxon. Par. I. p. 112.

ing

ing satiated with the published Fragments, that the more they have read them, the more earnestly they have desired and wish'd to see the whole Work. And tho' I ought not to be reckon'd among such curious Persons, yet I can testify thus much for my self, that, when I first saw a MS. of this Author (which was when I was even a young Undergraduate) in the Bodleian Library, being one of the first MSS. I ever perus'd there, I was wonderfully delighted with it, and could not but often signify, that I was not at all pleas'd with those, that insinuated, that there was enough of him already published to gratify any curious Reader. Nor can I at all think, that my late ingenious and learned Friend Robert Keck, Esq. (who was formerly Gentleman-Commoner of University College, and died[1] in the Year 1719.) repented the Charges he had been at, in having the said Bodleian MS. transcrib'd, for any other reason, than because he found, that it was a very imperfect MS. and did not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester, which he might have met with in the Cottonian Library, as he was, without doubt, afterwards fully appriz'd of by his Friends.

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 84. p. 7, 8.

§. II. Indeed Mr. Keck was a young Gentleman extremely inquisitive after Books in old English, and the nearer they were to the Conquest, so much the better pleased he was with them. For which reason 'tis no wonder, that he should several times express a great Dissatisfaction, when he understood, that, after all his Charges, he had not got either an intire, or an authentick Robert of Gloucester. He had a design either of publishing this old Historian himself, or, at least, of assisting some body else in the publication of him; which could not but, therefore, make him the more concern'd, that his Copy was not of better Authority. He knew perfectly well, that such old English Books are of wonderful use in acquiring a knowledge in the Saxon Tongue, which continued to be spoke (tho' with great Alterations) in Robert of Gloucester's time[1], and many Years after, and it began to be most of all disus'd, when Geffry Chaucer undertook to refine (as they termed it) the Language. But now of all Books of this kind, I know none hardly so valuable as this Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, and upon that account, were there no other reason, it is very proper to be read over and considered by all such as are willing to be acquaint-

The Curiosity of Mr. Keck. The great use of Robert of Gloucester in the Study of the old Saxon Tongue. His value upon other accounts. Borstall the same with the Saxon Burg-steall. Brill an ancient Burgh, and is nothing else but Burgh hill or Burgh on the Hill.

[1] See page 364. of this Chron.

ed

ed with the old Saxon Tongue, a Language which even the vulgar are very fond of talking of, though they are perfectly ignorant of it; in so much that I have known some of the Country Common People shew an unusual Pleasure, when they have seen so much as the old Saxon Letters. And 'tis with great Attention that they will listen to the Derivation of Places from the Saxon Tongue. The People of Borstall in Buckinghamshire are mightily pleas'd, when any one tells them, that Borstall is the same with the Saxon Burg-steall, which signifies *a Seat on the side of an Hill*, which exactly answers to this Place. "Burg-steal." (saith Mr. Somner[1]) "clivus. a little hill whereon any thing is "builded: a seat on the side or pitch of an hill; as "that at Whitstable in Kent called Borstall." And this account of Burg-steal pleaseth them the better, when they hear, that these Words in the 33d. verse of the VIIIth. Chapter of St. Luke, *Then went the devils out of the man, and entred into the swine: and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the lake, and were choak'd*, are thus read in that which is called Wickliff's Translation[2], & so þe deuelis wenten out fro þe man, & entride in to þe swyn, & wiþ a birre þe flok wente heedlyng in to þe pool, & was drenchid. The Expression with a birre here is the

[1] Saxon Dict. voc. Burg-steal. [2] MS. opt. membran. penes me. Vide infra in Glossario, p. 728.

same

same with the Vulgar Latin *impetu*, and the Saxon ꝑæꝛe, (whence our common Word *Race*) and answers very well to any Place situated at the side of an Hill. Upon hearing this Derivation of Borstall, the Inhabitants look upon the story of it's being called so from a wild Boar kill'd by Nigellus in the Forest of Bernwood (on the Edge of which Borstall is placed) to be as weak, as the ascribing the Song of the Boar's Head by some to a wild Boar, that was kill'd, I know not when, by a Tabarder in Shottover Wood, whereas, on the contrary, the Song was so far formerly from being sung only in one Place, that it was a Christmass Carol all over England, the Boar's Head being an ancient Dish, and much in vogue at that Season, being much admired by even the greatest Princes, in so much that it was brought up by K. Henry I. [1] with Trumpets before his Son, when his said Son was crown'd. But tho' the Inhabitants of Borstall are much pleased to hear, that Borstall is the same with the Saxon Bupȝ-ꝛtall, yet their Neighbours, the Inhabitants of Brill, are as much displeas'd with those, that detract from the Antiquity of Brill, and will not allow it to be an ancient Burgh, and to be the same as Burgh-hill or Burgh on the Hill, which nevertheless is plain enough to any one that considers either the Situation of the Place, or the

[1] Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubrigensis, p. 744.

Coyns

Coyns that have been found there and thereabouts, some of which I have seen my self. Mr. Camden had well weigh'd this matter, and therefore he very clearly established this Notion of it's being an old Burgh. *Hæc tota* [vallis] (saith he [1]) *fere campestris est, solo item argillaceo, tenaci, & fæcundo, pabulosis pratis innumeros ovium greges pascit, quarum mollia, & tenuissima vellera ab Asiaticis usque gentibus expetuntur. Sed sylvis nuda nisi ad Occiduum latus, ubi præter alias* Bernewood, *circa quam anno à Christo nato* DCCCCXIIII. *Danorum furor impotentiùs sævit, tumque forte concidit* Burgus *ille antiquus, ut Romani nummi inventi testantur, qui posteà regia erat villa Edwardi Confessoris. Nunc autem pagus est rusticus, & pro* Buri-hill, Brill *contractiùs appellant.* Thus this great Man, whose words are of better Authority with the Inhabitants and others, than those of any more illiterate and injudicious Writers, especially such as derive the Name from Bryers and Thorns, (from which they also derive Bruern Abbey, when, on the contrary, it was so denominated from the *Bruern, Bourn,* Bupn or Bypna, there) an Etymology that is more weak, than that of the very learned Dr. Skinner, who thinks [2] it was so called from Burrs growing at the Place. Brill, *in Com.* Bucks (so he writes) *contr. à* Burr-hill, *sc. à Lappis, quæ ibi frequentes crescunt.* It's having been a Royal

[1] Brit. p. 279. Ed. fol. [2] Etymol. Dict.

Vill

Vill of Edward the Confessor had been sufficient to have stil'd it a Burgh, were there nothing else to rely on. Such Vills in those times were commonly call'd Burghs. Whence 'tis, that κώμαι in St. Luke [1] is translated burhga in the Saxon, *castella* in the vulgar Latin, and castels in that which is termed Wickliff's Version. As there was, doubtless, a Castle or Fortification at Brill, so the Place had a greater right than otherwise to the Title of a *Burgh*. And as here was also a Market, so, withall, it might have been call'd ſtræte, such as are mentioned in St. Luke, where [2] for *greetings in the Markets* the Saxon hath gretinga on ſtrætum, and Wickliff ſalutaciouns in chepyng. Mr. Somner, in his Saxon Dictionary, hath noted, that ſtræte signifieth sometimes a market-place, having an eye, I suppose, partly upon what occurrs in the Saxon Version of the New Testament, and partly upon what he had met with in other old Saxon Monuments. I do not know but Streatley in Berks was so call'd, not only because the Ikenild [3] street or way pass'd by or through that Place, but as it was formerly a Market Town. Now since the Chronicle, I have here published, is so very usefull for understanding Saxon, what but Prejudice, or some other bad Quality, could induce any one of skill in this Tongue to speak against, and endeavour to

[1] IX. 6. [2] IX. 43. [3] Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubr. p. 737.

sup-

suppress Robert of Gloucester, an Author of great Worth, even upon other Accounts, that is, for his own Probity and Honesty, and for the History he hath given us, extracted from the best Memoirs he could come at?

Robert of Gloucester's following Geffry of Monmouth in the first Part of his Work, no good Objection against his History. The nature of the ancient βακτηρίαι to be gathered from an old Roll in the Hands of Mr. Graves. The old use of Horns instead of Cups. Several remarkable Particulars relating to some of our old English Bibles. The Curiosity of the Nuremberg Chronicle.

§. III. I am aware, that it will be objected, that the beginning of this Book is, for the most part, taken from Geffry of Monmouth. But this Objection makes rather for the Reputation, than the Disgrace, of this Historian, and it may be as well alledg'd against our other Historians, that have written since Geffry's time. Geffry was an Author so much in vogue, for the most early Affairs of our British Princes, that he was constantly transcrib'd, and put into most Libraries, which is the reason why there are so many MSS. of him extant. By comparing Robert of Gloucester with him, the Reader will soon perceive, what a faithfull Historian Robert was, when he took care to be very exact in what he extracted from him. I have subjoyn'd some Passages here and there at the Bottom of the Page from Geffry, by way of Illustration, but I took them not from a printed Latin Copy (having none by me) but from a good, tho' (at the End) imperfect MS. that was given me by my Friend, that curious Antiquary, Richard Graves, of Mickleton in Glou-

Gloucestershire, Esq. from whom, much about the same time, I had borrowed the old French Roll, from which I have printed two Passages in the following Work; which Roll is so much the greater Curiosity, as it represents the Figures of our Kings and Princes from the time of Athelstan, where it begins, to the time of Edward the I. with whom it ends. For tho' the Pictures are but rude, yet there are many things in them, that will be of use to curious Men, as even our Saxon Coyns are, notwithstanding the Barbarousness of them. The very first Picture exhibits to us the form of the ancient βακτηρίαι, or βασιλικαὶ Ῥάβδοι, which, however, we do not find, that I know of, even in Athelstan's Coyns. We ought not, therefore, to reject old Pictures of this Kind upon account of their Rudeness. I never look'd upon the Bodleian Picture as the less, but rather the greater, Curiosity, that makes Cain slay his brother Abel with a Sithe, tho' in the strange odd MS. Almanack or Conjuring Book, given me by the late Bishop of Ely, Dr. William Fleetwood, (written, as it seems, in the time of Edward III.) he is delineated as killing him with the Jaw Bone of an Ass. 'Tis with pleasure likewise that I have often look'd over the English Bible, that was printed *anno* 1541. (in the 33d. Year of K. Hen: VIII.) being about five Years after the death of William Tyndale,

in which there are several odd wooden Cutts, that represent the Habits in use in Hen. the Eighth's time. The Picture of the Pit, into which they cast Joseph, is made to be a sort of Stone Fountain. In the Picture of Ahasuerus's Feast is a Horn for a Cup, agreeable to the old way of drinking at great Feasts. Bacchus[1] used to quaff and carowse in an Horn. Hence Nonnus, Καὶ κέρας ἄγκυλον εἶχε βόῳ, δέπας. *He had an Horn crooked, for a Cup;* which was, saith the Scholiast of Nicander, an ancient Custom. Οἱ ἀρχαῖοι κέρασιν ἐχρῶντο ἐν τῇ πόσει, ἀντὶ ποτηρίων· ὅθεν καὶ τὸ κεράσαι εἴρηται. *The ancients in their Carowsings used Horns, instead of Cups: and thence, to pour out, or to mingle Wine, is called* cerasai, *of* ceras *an horn.*

Ὡς ἄρα φωνήσασα θεὰ παρέθηκε τράπεζαν,
Ἀμβροσίης πλήσασα· κέρασσε δὲ νέκταρ ἐρυθρὸν,

saith Homer[2]. Upon which the Scholiast observes thus: Κέρασσε δὲ νέκταρ.] Νῦν ἐνέχεεν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἀρχαίας συνηθείας· εἰς κέρας γὰρ ἐγχέοντες ἔπινον. 'Tis no wonder, therefore, that upon the Jollities on the first of May formerly the Custom of blowing with, and drinking in, Horns so much prevail'd, which tho' it be now generally disus'd, yet the Custom of blowing them prevails, at that season, even to this day, at Oxford, to remind people of the pleasantness of that part

[1] See Mountague's Diatribe against Selden's History of Tythes, p. 559. [2] Odyss. E. 92, 93.

of

of the Year, which ought to create Mirth and Gayety, such as is sketch'd out in some old Books of Offices, such as the Prymer of Salisbury, printed at Rouen 1551. 8vo. of which I have a Copy by me (and 'tis a most rare thing) given me by Mr. Graves, fairer and more perfect than that of another (*viz.* a later) Edition in Balliol College Library. But tho' I have taken so much pleasure in perusing the English Bible of the Year 1541. yet 'tis nothing equal to what I should take in turning over that of the Year 1539. (an Edition that Selden made great use of, as he did also of other old Editions of the Bible in English, in compiling his Work intit'led, *De Synedriis veterum Ebræorum*) which they have in St. John's College Library in Cambridge, in reference to which my learned Friend, the Reverend Mr. Thomas Baker of that College writes to me thus[1]: "We have such a Bible as you "describe (a very noble Book) printed on Vel-"lum, and imbellished with Cutts that are Il-"luminated, the Leaves gilt, and the Cover im-"bost with Brass: but it is printed in the Year "1539. as appears from the Conclusion, thus,

The ende of the New Testament and of the whole Byble, fynished in Apryll, Anno. MCCCCC.XXXIX.
A Dnō factū est istud.

"The Frontispiece is the same with that of

[1] In his Letter of Febr. 9. 1721.

"*An.* 1540. described by Mr. Strype [Memorials "of Archbp. Cranmer Lib. 3. cap. 33.] only "Cromwell's Arms are left there a Blank, which "in our Copy has his bearing (as the rest) in "colors, left out, I presume, upon his fall. It "might probably (as you observe) be the same "Book, that was presented to Cromwell, there "being only one other (that we can hear of) "that is the King's. But how it came to us "does not appear, unless from the late Earl "of Southampton, who gave us most of those "MSS. we now enjoy, and it has always had a "place amongst the MSS. as it well deserves." Mr. Baker writ this Passage upon account of a Letter I writ to him, in which I had mentioned the Bible printed in English with Cutts on Vellum, as I had found it spoke of in the following remarkable Particulars that I meet with [1] in a Quarto MS. of Collections relating to Bibles and Testaments from 1526. to 1700. made (and written with his own hand) by the late ingenious Mr. John Bagford, who was pleased to give it me himself:

"1540. —— In the Year 1540. the 32. of "King Hen. the 8. a Convocation was called, "and in the third Session (being Friday) several "Bishops were assigned to peruse the several "Translations of the New Testament, in order "as followeth:

[1] Fol. 4. a.

"1. Cran-

" 1. Cranmer Archbp. of Canterbury	1. Matthew.
" 2. Longland of Lincolne	2. Mark.
" 3. Stephen Gardiner of Winch.	3. Luke.
" 4. Tho. Goodrick of Ely	4. John.
" 5. Nicholas Heath of Rochester	5. The Acts of the Apostles.
" 6. Richard Sampson of Chichester	6. Romans
" 7. John Capon of Sarum	7. ½ Corinthians
" 8. Will. Barlow of St. David's	8. Galatians. Ephesians. Philippians. Colossians.
" 9. John Bell of Worcester	9. ½ Thessalonians
"10. Robert Parfew of St. Asaph	10. Timothy. Titus. Philemon.
"11. Robert Holgate of Landaff	11. ½ Peter.
"12. John Skip of Hereford	12. Hebrews.
"13. Thomas Thyrlby of Westminster	13. James. 1 2 3 John. Jude
"14. John Wakeman of Gloster	14. The Reve-
"15. John Chambers of Peterborow	15 lation.

" Gardiner desired, that certain Latin words " in the Text might be preserved intire (as much " as might be) in the Translation of the New " Testament, and in Fuller's Church History " you have a Catalogue of the words:

" And, if I mistake not, I have seen a Testa- " ment in English in 4°. put forth by the above-

" said Bishops with the King's Privilege. 1540

" A Bible in folio Recognized by Rich. Ta-
" verner. 1540

" *Id.* a Testament in 4°. by the same hand. 1540

" A Bible of the larger Volume, the Frontis-
" piece described by Mr. Strype, and supposed
" to be printed at Paris. 1540

" There is one of them in the Queen's Li-
" brary at St. James's, printed on Vellum, and the
" Cutts curiously illuminated. This is supposed
" to be the presentation Book to King Henry
" the 8. 1540

" I have seen one in the Library of St. John's
" College in Cambridge, found of late years
" among some old Books in a private place
" nigh the Library, printed on Vellum, and the
" Cutts illuminated as the former, and this,
" perhaps, might be the presentation Book to
" Tho. Cromwell.

" Another very fair of the same Impression
" in the Collection of Sir Andrew Fountaine
" on paper. 1540

" *Id.* another printed in folio by Will. Pettet
" for Thomas Berthlet. The Title in red and
" black Letters, with the Picture of King H. the
" 8. with the Bishops with their Mitres on. 1540

" The New Testament translated from the
" Greek by Delayne (who was Librarian at St.
" James's, and is dedicated by him to K. Henry
" the 8.) and printed in 4°. in the white Letter
" by Jo. Mayler. 1540." And

And here, upon this occasion of mentioning wooden Cutts, I must observe, that the vast Variety of wooden Cutts in the Nuremberg Chronicle, compiled by Hartman Schedel, are not to be at all despis'd for their Odness, but to be the more admir'd. For my part, the oftener I consult it, the more I wonder at the Things in it, and I cannot but esteem the Book as extremely pleasant, usefull and curious, by reason of these very odd Cutts, tho' those Copies are always to be look'd upon as the most valuable, which have the Figure of Pope Joan untouch'd, a Thing I here mention, because in many Copies this Figure is either eras'd, or, at least, defac'd, and the History of her oblitterated. And now I mention this Nuremberg Chronicle, I cannot but take notice of a Copy of it, that was given to Christ's College in Cambridge by the great common Lawyer Ferdinando Pulton. Before which Copy is an Inscription, that is very remarkable, and had it fallen into the Hands of the industrious Author of *Athenæ Oxonienses*, he would not, surely, have rang'd this eminent Lawyer among the Oxford Writers. I shall give the Inscription, with some other Particulars, just as they were all sent me by my foresaid Friend, the Reverend Mr. Thomas Baker, the great Antiquary of Cambridge.

Ferdinando Pulton, the great Lawyer, a Cambridge, and not an Oxford, Writer.

§. IV. "In turning my Papers" (saith Mr. Baker) "I likewise find, we have "another Copy of Hartman Schedel &c. "at Christ's Coll. given the Coll. by "Ferd. Pulton, with this Inscription before the "Book. Ferdinando Pulton, Esquier, admitted "Scholar in his Youth into Christ's Colledge in Cam- "bridge, the last yeere of the Raigne of King Edward "the 6xt, continued there untill the last yeere of the "Raigne of Queene Marie, and made Fellowe of the "same Colledge one yeere before he departed thence. "Became afterwards a paynfull Student and Professor "of the Common and Statute Lawes of this Realme "(as maye appeare by severall Bookes or Workes by "him composed and published in print, tending to the "knowledge and divulging of the same Lawes) even "untill his age of fourscore yeeres and upward: For the "love and affection which he did beare to the said Col- "ledge his Nurse and Schoolmistris, and in token of "good will to the same House, did, upon the 6xt daie of "September, Anno Domini 1617. & anno Regni Regis "Jacobi 15. bestowe this Booke uppon the Master and "Fellowes of the foresaid Colledge & their Successors, "too meane a guifte for so worthie and well deserving a "place, intended nevertheles to have been much great- "er, had it not been extenuated by the charges & expen- "ses of his travell and labors in the workes aforesaid, "willinglie bestowed uppon the Professors of the "same Studie, for the benefitt of his Countrie and "Commonwelth thereof.

"By me
"Ferdinando Pulton, of Borton in the Countrie
"and Parishe of Buckingham.

"The

"The Subscription is in a different hand, "and, I presume, his own.

"*Nov.* 23, 1552. *Ferdi. Pulton coll. Chr. admis-* "*sus in Album sive Matriculam Acad. Cant.*

"*An.* 1555,6. *conceditur Ferdinando Pulton, ut* "12. *Termini, in quibus Lectiones ordinarias audi-* "*vit, licet non omnino secundum formam Statuti,* "*cum Oppositionibus & Respons: requisitis sufficiant* "*ei pro completis gradu & forma Bac. in Artibus:* "*sic quod examinetur & approbetur, convivetur, &* "*cætera peragat juxta formam Statuti, quoniam* "*Determinationem finalem sine maximo suo dispendio* "*expectare non potest.* Reg. Acad.

"*Pulton actu Bac. ante determinationem* Regr. "Acad. This great dispatch was, I presume, in "order to his being elected Fellow, for in a Ca- "talogue of their Fellows, I find, *Ferd. Pulton* "*electus Socius an.* 1555. that is, I suppose, in "Jan. Febr. or March 1555,6." The words in *Athenæ Oxon.* are[1]: "*Ferdinando Pulton* alias "*Poulton* (Son of *Giles Pulton,* Esq. who died "1560.) was born at *Deusborough* in *Northam-* "*ptonshire,* became[2] commoner of *Brasnose* Coll. "in the beginning of Q. *Mary's* Reign, laid "there a foundation of Academical literature, "which he found useful to him afterwards when "he grew eminent in the common Law. But "leaving that House before he took a degree, "he went to *Lincoln's* Inn, studied the said Law,

[1] Vol. 1. col. 362. [2] Reg. 1. coll. Ænean. fol. 92. a.

"took

"took the usual degrees, and became eminent "for the knowledge in, and practice of, it, not "only in *London*, but the usual place of his re- "sidence in the Country, *viz.* at *Borton* in the "Parish and County of *Buckingham.* ——— He "departed this Life, on the 20. *January* in six- "teen hundred and seventeen, aged 82. and "was buried in the Chancel of the Church of "*Deusborough*, before-mention'd, *&c.*" Mr. Wood here quotes a Register in Brazen-nose Coll. and his Quotation is faithfull enough, as I find by this *Memorandum*, that, upon this occasion, a worthy Friend writ out of it for me: "*Nomina* "*Admissorum in Coll.* 1556. *Junii* 28°. *Ferdinan-* "*dus Pulton Northampt.*

"Reg. A Coll. Æn. Nas. fol. 92."

But then Mr. Wood builds too much upon it, it being very clear, from the Inscription and Notes above, that Pulton was one of the Cambridge Writers, and not an Oxford one, where he only resided a little while, and entered himself of Brazen-nose Coll. tho', at the same time, he was actually a Member of the University of Cambridge.

Something peculiar in the Copy of the Nuremberg Chronicle in Trinity College Library at Cambridge, that I have not yet met with in any other.

§. V. Mr. Baker had before given me an account of three other Copies (which they have at Cambridge) of the Nuremberg Chronicle, one of which is in Trinity College Library, and hath in it something peculiar, that is not in either of The first, and not

of the others, or indeed either in my own Copy (which, by the by, wants the Note about the time when the Book was printed) or in any that I have yet seen. What this is, will be better gathered from Mr. Baker's own words, than from any thing I can say, which are these[1]: —— "Your "last Letter put me upon turning Hartman "Schedel, which is a very entertaining, and (as "you say) a very strange Book. We have three "Copies, one amongst the Bp. of Ely's, which "I had from Dr. Middleton, who presents you "with his service. The second in our College "Library. The last (the most beautifull) at "Trinity College (from Mr. Hadderton) having "all the Faces, Maps, and other Figures fairly "depicted in Colors.

the second, Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle, the true genuine Work of the Author.

"At Fol. CCLXI. the Picture of Antichrist "with seven Heads, (different from the ordi- "nary Prints) and almost as many Colors, makes "a frightfull appearance, and upon the Pede- "stall in a fair hand, which I should have taken "for Print, had it not been wanting in the two "other Copies, this Inscription,

"*Hęc depinxit Jacobus Jaqueri*
"*de Civitate Taurini in pede Montium*
"*An°. Domini millesimo quater centesimo*
"*primo,*

"And on the opposite Page thus, *This Picture*

[1] Out of his Letter to me, dated Dec. 2. 1722.

"*was*

"*was set in the Temple of the Jacobines in Jeneua* "*in an°.* 1401. *a show of Antechriste, and from* "*thens abrode into the worlde, that the abhomina-* "*tion of the wicked maye be percevid. B. S. M.* "with 5. or 6. ryming Monkish latin verses.

"At Fol. CLXXXIII, CLXXXIIII. The Pictures "of the Emperor, 7: Electors, Princes, and Counts "of the Empire, with their Arms fairly de- "picted, with this note, *Hæc Scuta recte pin-* "*guntur in suis coloribus juxta juditium Heraldi.*

"I doubt, you can hardly safely show the "former Inscription to your worthy Friend the "Author of the Antiquities of Glast. He will "be apt to observe, that Antichrist was so early "in the Church of Geneva, for, I think, Ge- "noua cannot be meant.

"In all the Copies Pope Joan stands with "the face of a Female, a triple Crown, a Child "in her arme instead of a Cross, which is born "by the rest of the Popes. Neither face nor "story are obliterated in any of our Copies, "only in that of Trin. Coll. *septimus*, is dasht, "and the Figure, 8. plac't in its roome. For "she is styl'd *Joannes Septimus* in all our Copies, "tho' another *Jo. Septimus* had been mention'd "before. The story is short, I can send it you, "if you have not the Book by you. Martinus is "quoted, which shows, she stood in the Copies "of Martinus Polonus[1] of that age.

[1] Against the story in a Copy of Suffridus Petrus's Edit. at Ant.

"Fol. CCLVIII. *Cartas aliquas sine scriptura pro "sexta etate deinceps relinquere convenit, judicio po- "steriorum qui emendare, addere* &c. *possunt* &c. "Then follow some blank leaves in all the Co- "pies, only the Title and Numbers printed at "the top of the pages.

"Fol. CCLXVI. *Completo in famosissima Nurem- "bergensi urbe Operi de Hystoriis etatum Mundi, ac "descriptione Urbium, felix imponitur finis. Col- "lectum brevi tempore auxilio Doctoris Hartmanni "Schedel, qua fieri potuit diligentia. Anno Christi "millesimo quadringentesimo nonagesimo tercio. die "quarto mensis Junii.*

"Fol. CCLXVII. follows a further account of "the European Nations, most or all from Æneas "Sylvius: In the Title, over his Picture,

Sum pius Æneas fama super Ethera notus.

"Fol. CCC. *Adest nunc studiose lector finis libri "Cronicarum per viam Epithomatis & Breviarii "compilati. Opus quidem preclarum & à doctissimo "quoque comparandum. Continet enim gesta que- "cunque digniora sunt notatu ab initio Mundi ad "hanc usque temporis nostri calamitatem. Castiga- "tumque a viris doctissimis ut magis elaboratum in "lucem prodiret. Ad intuitum autem & preces pro-*

Antwerp (*ex Off. Christophori Plantini* 1574. 8vo.) that I purchased out of the Study of the late Dr. Arthur Charlett, some learned hand hath written this Note: *Antiquissimus auctor hujus fabulæ est iste Martinus Polonus, qui tamen scripsit* 479. *annos post illud tempus, quo ait asseri, id est, fingi, istam Joannam vixisse.*

Polonus vixit anno Christi	1334
Joanna fingitur vixisse	855
	479

"vido-

"*vidorum civium Sebaldi Schreyer & Sebastiani*
"*Kamermaister hunc librum Dominus Anthonius*
"*Koberger Nuremberge impressit. Adhibitis tamen*
"*viris Mathematicis pingendique arte peritissimis,*
"*Michaele Wolgemut & Wilhelmo Pleydenwurff. quo-*
"*rum solerti acuratissimaque animadversione tum*
"*Civitatum tum illustrium Virorum figure inserte*
"*sunt. Consummatum autem duodecima Mensis Ju-*
"*lii. Anno Salutis nostre* 1493.

"There is no Name or Title at the begin-
"ning of any of the Copies. Towards the end,
"there are five leaves, *De Regno Polonie* &c. not
"numbred, which seem to have been inserted.

"Fol. CCLII. *Matheolus perusinus medicus* &c.
"*— Preceptor meus eruditissimus, Quem ego Hart-*
"*mannus Schedel Nurembergensis Doctor Patavinus*
"*tribus annis ordinarie legentem auscultavi. à quo*
"*demum prehabita per eum oratione elegantissima*
"*insignia Doctoratus Padue accepi.*——Follows a
"large Character of his Master, no more of
"himself.

"Fol. CCLII. *Ars imprimendi libros hiis tempo-*
"*ribus primum in germania enata est. Quantum*
"*igitur literarum studiosi germanis debeant nullo sa-*
"*tis dicendi genere exprimi potest. Hanc apud magun-*
"*tiam rheni urbem solerti ingenio librorum impri-*
"*mendorum ratio:* 1440. *inventam fuisse aiunt.*
"*Hoc tempore in omnes fere orbis partes propaga-*
"*tur —— Ideo in ejus laudem quidam hos cecinit*
"*versus.*

"(1) *O felix nostris memoranda impressio seclis.*
"(3) *Desierat quasi totum quod fundis in Orbem.*
" (5) *Omnes te summis igitur nunc laudibus ornent.*
"(2) *Inventore nitent utraque lingua tuo.*
"(4) *Nunc parvo doctus quilibet esse potest.*
"(6) *Te duce quando ars hec mira reperta fuit.*

"These verses stand like Prose (without di-"stinction) in the print, I presume the Printer "had jumbled them out of Order.

"This seems to be a good and antient au-"thority for printing at Mentz, being within "memory of Man."

There is no doubt, but there was a great Number of Copies printed of this Book, that so the Charges of the Impression might be the better countervail'd by the sale. They were greedily bought up, and in a little time the Book grew scarce, which caus'd a new[1] Edition,

[1] Concerning which my Friend Mr. Graves writes thus to me in a Letter, dated from Mickleton in Gloucestershire, Saturday, 14th. of Dec. 1723. "Schedel's Chronicle, that is "now in the Hands of Mr. Fan-"court Bookseller in Stratford "upon Avon, is but a small "siz'd Folio, tho' pretty thick; "containing 338. Leaves, be-"sides a large Alphabetical In-"dex at the End thereof, not at "the Beginning, as the other; "printed in a black Letter, but "much less Character, than "that; and the Cuts are but "very small, and few, in "comparison with the other, "*&c.*

"In fol. 294. a. is this Note, "*viz. Completo in famosissima "Nurembergensi Urbe operi de "hystoriis etatum mundi, &c. "Collectum, &c. auxilio Docto-"ris Hartmanni Schedel, &c. "Anno Christi,* 1493. *die* 4*to. "Mensis Junii, &c.* as in the "other.

"And in fol. 338. a. at the "very End of the Book is this "Note, *viz. Finit hic liber Cro-"nicorum,*

but in a less Folio, with worse Types, (notwithstanding both Editions are of the black kind) and without most of the Cuts, which omission of the Cuts made this Edition, therefore, much less valued by curious and critical Men than the first. The same Defect likewise makes the second Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle of less esteem with many curious Men, than the first, which came out in Fol. at London 1577. and is full of wooden Cuts, (as the authentick Edition of Robert Fabyan's Chronicle [1], and the Chronicle of John Ra-

"*nicorum, &c. Impressum*
"*ac finitum, &c. in imperiali*
"*Urbe Augusta à Johanne*
"*Schensperger, Anno ab In-*
"*carnatione Domini*, 1497.

"After I had seen your's at
"Oxford, and view'd my own,
"and that at Stratford again;
"I thought there was as much
"Difference between mine,
"and your's, as between
"your's, and that: For tho'
"our's are both the same Edi-
"tion; yet mine is extraordi-
"nary large Paper, with a very
"broad Margin, and extreme
"fair; and the chief initial Let-
"ters are painted with blew,
"and red; and some of them
"are handsomely illuminated,
"*&c.*

[1] Of which Chronicle I find the following Particulars, in a Paper MS. in Folio (containing a Catalogue of Books relating to the English and Irish Histories and Antiquities) written by Mr. William Cooper, who dealt in old Books, and made this Catalogue for his own use [Sic in Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 92. p. 244.] This MS. belong'd, after the Collector's Death, [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 63. p. 14.] to the ingenious Mr. John Bagford, who lent it to the Compiler of the English Historical Library, and at length (after a great while) recovering it, he parted with it to the learned Sir Hans Sloane, Baronet, in whose hands it is now, and he was so kind as to lend it me in the Month of January 1721.

"Fabyan's Chronicle of the
"Kings of England and France,
"from Brute's entring into this
"Island,

tell[1], of which last there is a well preserved [2]Copy in the Harleyan Library, are also im-

---

" Island, untill the last Year " of King Richard the third, " *anno* 1485. continued to the " begining of Hen. the 8th. " *Anno* 1509. in seaven parts, " and two Volumes, with the " Effigies of the Kings, their " Coats of Armes, and other " figures, being the first Edi- " tion incastrate. Instead of " a Title it hath a figure the " Armes of England and " France united, the sup- " porters a Dragon & Gray- " hound, and two Portcul- " lices, 2. Angels bearing " the Motto about the Rose " over the Crown, the same " figure at the end of the " book, fol. *circa annum* " 1509*.

" —— *Idem* newly printed, " with some what a larger " Chronicle of the Acts and " Deeds don in the time of " the Reign of King Henry " the seaventh, father to our " dread soveraign K. Hen. 8. " London printed by Wm. " Rastall 1533. in fol. *cum* " *Privilegio* differeth from the " first, and not gelt soe much " as Record's edition.

" —— *Idem iterum* named " the Concordance of Histo- " ry, with Notes upon the " Kings Reigns, and a Conti- " nuation from the begining " of K. Hen. 7. to the Coro- " nation of Queen Elizabeth " *Anno* 1558. according to " Fabian's method, with Al- " terations, Corrections or " Castrations, and Marginal " Notes, by Robert Record. " Lond. 1559. fol." Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 93. p. 65.

[1] About which I have inserted the following Note, out of the foresaid MS. of Sir Hans Sloane, in my Manuscript Collections, Vol. 93. p. 83. " The Pastyme of Peo- " ple, the Cronicles of divers " Realmys, and most speci- " ally of the Realme of Eng- " land, brevely compiled and " imprinted in Chepesyde at " the sygne of the Meare- " Mayd, next to Pollys gate, " *cum Privilegio.* The *Pro-* " *logus* hath at the top *Jo-* " *hannis Rastell.* It begins " in the Margin, *Eneas*, then " follows *Ascanius, Silvius,* " *&c.* William the Con- " querour, a woden Picture " of him, in full proportion, " and soe of all the Kings, " the Picture of Richard " the third being the last, " the word *Tyrannus* Ends. " The picture of the Crea- " tion. *Johannes Rastall* " *cum Privilegio Regali.* in " large folio.

[2] Sic me docuit amicus eruditus Timotheus Thomas, A. M. collegii Ædis Christi Oxoniæ Alumnus.

bellished with wooden Cuts) many of which (considering the time in which they were done) are very good. The Author was then living. The second Edition came out in 1587. in two Tomes also in Folio, with abundance of Additions by other hands, but without the wooden Cuts. This Omission was contrary to the Design and Intent of the Author, who was a curious, tho' illitterate, Man (having never received liberal Education[1]) and died before the Year 1582. Mr. Wood says[2] that it was towards the latter end of 1580. I have printed his Will, which was proved April 24. 1582. in the first Volume[3] of my Edition of *Camden's Elizabetha*, as it was communicated to me by the learned Thomas Palmer, of Fairfeild in Somersetshire, Esq. Hence it may appear, that the first (which is very scarce) and not the second Edition, contains the true genuine Work of Hollingshede.

Many things in Robert of Gloucester, that properly belong to the business of an Antiquary. In the Saxon times the Princes, & other great Personages, did not use to be buried at their Palaces, but at Religious Houses. Cos. am, in Wilt-

§. VI. Now to return to Robert of Gloucester, as he was an Antiquary, as well as an Historian, so here are interspers'd divers Remarks, that properly belong to the business of an Antiquary. After he hath given an account of some of the Wonders of Britain, such as our Antiquaries usually take notice of, he

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 62. p. 87. [2] Athen. Oxon. Vol. I. col. 270. [3] Præf. p. CXLIX.

refers

refers to a Book written particularly about the Marvels of Britain, which I take to have been much more copious, than either the Chapter upon that Subject in *Polychronicon*, or even the little anonymous Tract upon the same Subject, that I found inserted in an old Vellum MS. in Folio, that was lately given me by my learned Friend Richard Graves, Esq. In this Tract, (which I have publish'd in the Appendix[1]) the four Great Roman Ways are deservedly reckon'd among the Wonders of Britain, and the account of them, however short, agrees with the Scheme of them, that is given us (from a MS. in the Cottonian Library) in the Discourse about the four Great Roman Ways published in the Sixth Volume[2] of Leland's Itinerary. Robert of Gloucester's writing[3] Silchester in Hampshire Cylyceſtre confirms my opinion[4], that it was so called from the Flints, being no more than *silicum castra*. His Remarks upon many of our Religious Houses are pretty and usefull, and now and then he shews a particular Modesty on the occasion, in so much, that tho' it be certain, that Sir William de Mohun founded Bruton Abbey in Somersetshire, yet he expresses himself after such a manner, as if he only

shire very famous formerly. The Coffin lately found there belong'd to some fine Gentleman since the Conquest. The Knife, with which Edward the Martyr was kill'd, preserv'd at Caversham in the time of Robert of Gloucester. Three kinds of Churches formerly.

[1] Num. I. [2] Pag. 96. [3] Pag. 100, 166. [4] In Notis ad Alured. Beverlacensem, p. 154.

thought, and was not certain, that he was Founder. What he says[1] about Alfled, or Æthelfleda, the famous Queen, or Lady, of the Mercians being buried in St. Peter's Porch at Gloucester is exactly agreeable to the Saxon Annals, under the Year DCCCCXX. —— heo ȝeꝼoꝛ xii. nihtum æꝛ middan ſumeꝛa binnan Tamanþeoꝛðe. þẏ eahtoðan ȝeaꝛe þæſ þe heo Mẏꝛcna anþald mid ꝛiht hlaꝼoꝛd-dome healdende þæſ. ⁊ hiꝛe lic lið binnan Gleapceaſtꝛe. on þam eaſt-poꝛtice ſce. Petꝛeſ ciꝛecean. What can be a plainer Argument of so great a Lady's Humility, than her chosing to be buried in the Porch, and to lye in a place, that had been famous for the fine Nunnery, that was there, before it was destroyed by the Danes, as is noted not only by others, but particularly by William Malverne (the last[2] Lord Abbat of Gloucester) in a Piece never yet printed, which I shall therefore publish at the End of this Work[3]? Her affection to Religion induced her to fix upon Gloucester for the Place of her Funeral, rather than Tamworth, which was otherwise so very famous for a Palace, in which the Mercian Princes us'd to reside, and which she her self had restored to it's pristine Splendour and Magnificence, after it had been destroy'd by the Danes. But, it may be, it will be said, that she pitch'd upon

[1] Pag. 271. [2] Leland's Coll. Vol. VI. p. 214. [3] Appendix Num. II.

Glou-

Gloucester, because the Abbey Church there had been founded by her Husband and herself, rather than for any other reason. Without question that was a considerable Motive; but yet I am perswaded, that the celebrated Nunnery, that had been there in former times, was another very great one, as indeed it was customary, in those Times, even for other great Personages to be buried at Religious Houses, where they had inhabited and resided. In so much, that tho' Cosham, near Chippenham in Wiltshire, was so much resorted to by some of our Saxon Kings and other great Men, where was a Palace for their Reception and Entertainment, as there was after the Conquest a retiring House for the Earls of Cornwall, to whom the Mannour belong'd (one of which, *viz.* Edmund, obtain'd a Charter[1] for a Weekly Market to be held here every Friday, as his Father Richard, a younger Son of King John, had granted the Inhabitants several Privileges, which they still enjoy[2]) yet 'twas not a burying Place for these Great Men, not so much as for K. Ethelred, who was more than ordinarily delighted with it, and lay sick here in MXV. but recovering, he went to London, and dying the Year after on St. George's day[3],

[1] Cart. 13. E. 1. n. 39. Dugdale's Baronage, Tome 1. p. 765. [2] Notes at the Bottom of the Page of Gibson's Engl. Ed. of Camden's Brit. p. 87. [3] Chron. Sax. Gibs. p. 146, 148.

was buried [1] in St. Paul's Church in the North Isle beside the Quire. 'Tis true, indeed, there was a Stone Coffin [2], with humane Bones in it of a larger Size than usual, in the Skull whereof was a compleat Set of fine Teeth, found lately by Cosham, which may perswade some, perhaps, to think this was a Place of Burial for several of our Princes and Nobility; but, as I take it, this was a Coffin of some private fine Gentleman since the Conquest, different from the illustrious Persons I have been speaking of, and yet of a great Character for his Virtues, and the delicate Form of his Body. And here I must caution the Reader, not to take this Cosham to be the Kaversham, in the Church of which Place Robert of Gloucester tells [3] us the long Knife, that St. Edward the Martyr was kill'd with, was preserved in his time. For this was Caversham, commonly call'd Causham, & sometimes writ [4] Cowsham, a Village situated in Ox-

[1] Milles's Cat. of Honour, p. 28. Dugdale's Hist. of St. Paul's Cathedral, p. 95. Ed. 2d. [2] See the Glossary to this Work, voc. hyer. [3] Pag. 289. [4] See p. 128. of a Book, called, *The Connexion: being choice Collections of some principal Matters in King James his Reign.* Lond. 1681. 8vo. where the following Order occurrs, as I have entered it in one of my MSS. [Coll. Vol. 79. p. 75.]

" Anno Dom. 1621. An. Reg. Jac. 19.
" *An Order of the Privy Council.*
" Whitehall *January* 18. 1621.
" Present,

" *Lord Keeper.*	*Lord Digby.*
" *Lord Treasurer.*	*Lord Brook.*
" *L. President.*	*Mr. Treasurer.*

" *L. M.*

fordshire, but is not far from Reading in Berkshire. Not only the Church of this Causham (which is an Abbreviation, as Leland saith [1], for Causeiham) was eminent (for great Men resorted hither) but the fair old Chappel also of Stone, that [2] stood toward the North End of Causham Bridge, on the right Hand as we come from Reading. To the foresaid Remarks I must take the opportunity of adding, that in the Saxon times abundance of great and illustrious Lay Persons made it their dying Request, that they might be buried in Religious Houses. A Request, certainly, very reasonable, and by no means to be wondred at, since a great [3] Number of those Houses were Lay Foundations, and it was, therefore, very proper both

---

" *L. M. Hamilton.*
" *Earle Marshall.*
" " *L. Visc. Falkland.*
Mr. Secret. Calvert.
Mr. Chanc. Exchcq.
Master of the Rolls.

" Whereas his Majesty is " Graciously pleased, to en- " large & set at liberty the " Earl of *Somerset*" [Sir " *Robert Carr*] " and his " Lady," [the Lady *Frances* " *Howard*,] " now Prisoners " in the Tower of *London*; " and that, nevertheless, it is " thought fit, that both the " said Earl and his Lady be " confined to some conveni- " ent Place: It is therefore, " according to his Majes- " tie's Gracious Pleasure and " Command, Ordered, That " the Earl of *Somerset* and " his Lady, do repair either " to *Gruys* or *Cowsham*, the " Lord *Wallingford*'s Houses " in the County of *Oxon*, " and remain confined to one " or either of the said Houses, " and within three Miles com- " pass of either of the same, " untill further Order be " given by his Majesty."

[1] Itin. Vol. II. p. 5. [2] Leland ibid. [3] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 150.

for the Founders themselves, as well as for such as were, both at the time of the Foundation and afterwards, particular or special Benefactors, should be buried, if they desired it, in Places that themselves had rais'd, a thing agreeable to the most early Antiquity, as may appear from even the famous Egyptian Pyramids. 'Tis incredible to think, what advantage the burying of such great and devout Persons was to the respective Religious Houses, where they were so laid. These Houses (term'd Mynsters in Antiquity) were then esteem'd (and that justly too) to be the principal Mother Churches, and of them we are chiefly to understand these Words[1] in King Edgar's Laws, ⁊ man agyfe ylce ælc teoþunge to þæm ealdan mynstre ðe seo hyrnesse to hyrþ; i.e. *and let every one give his Tithes to the old Church, (Monasterie or Mynster) to which the district belongs.* Mr. Selden[2] translates these Words, ealdan mynstre ðe seo hyrnesse to hyrþ, *to the ancientest Church or Monasterie where he hears God's Service*, and yet Brompton, in his old Translation, hath[3], *& reddatur omnis decimatio ad matrem ecclesiam cui parochia adjacet*, as even Selden himself had before[4] observ'd. But then tho' these Words are *primarily* to be understood of Religious Houses (among which are to be reckoned what were afterwards

[1] Spelmanni Concil. Vol. I. p. 444. [2] Hist. of Tithes, p. 262. [3] Apud X. Script. col. 871. [4] Hist. of Tithes, p. 219.

called

called *Cathedral Churches)* yet they are *secundarily* to be understood also of other Churches, that were afterwards look'd upon likewise as Mother Churches, as having the right of Sepulture annex'd to them. Such inferior Mother Churches were founded generally by eminent Lay Persons, and the Parishes of such Churches were as extensive as the Founders Possessions, (at least as such Possessions as were styl'd Bocland or lands possess'd *optimo jure)* and 'twas in these Churches (when they became frequent) that the Founders then often desired to be buried, in allusion to, and in imitation of, the Practise of such Founders of, and Benefactors to, Religious Houses as desired to be buried in Monasteries. These inferior Mother Churches are mentioned in Edgar's Laws [1] by the Name of Churches that had Leȝeꞃſtope, or *place of Burial,* where is mention also of a third (which is the lowest) kind of Churches, those that had no Leȝeꞃſtope. The second kind of Churches I have spoke of had likewise (as well as the *principal* Mother Churches) right of Baptism; but wherever there was a Church that had neither *sepulturam* nor *baptisterium,* that was properly to be understood of the third kind, and such Churches of this third Class they styled often ꝼeldcyꞃican, or *Field Churches,* what we call now Chappels of Ease, among

[1] Spelmanni Conc. loc. cit.

which

which are to be reckon'd [1] Binsey, Sandford, and Wolvercote near to, and Holywell in the Suburbs of, Oxford, as well as multitudes besides, which had not anciently *sepulturam & baptisterium*, tho' they have that Privilege since.

Robert of Gloucester's account of the Conflict between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford, in the time of Henry III. very remarkable in all its Circumstances.

§. VII. But I shall leave all farther Descants upon the several Particulars in this Author immediately relating to Antiquities to the intelligent Reader's own Observation, unless it be that [2] concerning the great Conflict in the Year 1263. between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford. This Passage is very remarkable in all it's Circumstances, and for that reason Mr. Wood hath very justly, tho' not without divers Mistakes, inserted it [3] at large in his *History and Antiquities of the University of Oxford.* It seems Prince Edward, in his Journey towards the Marches of Wales, came by Oxford, but was hindered by the Townsmen (who shut the Gates against him) from coming into the Place, by reason of the Barons War, whereupon he went to King's Hall (being the fine Royal Palace, called The Beaumonts) situated in the West Suburbs, where he lay all Night. The next day he went away, and, after he was gone, the Gates were all open'd but Smithgate. This was the Gate, through which the Scho-

[1] Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubr. p. 756. [2] See p. 540.
[3] Lib. I. pag. 112.

lars

lars us'd to go into the pleasant Fields (particularly the fair open Green, now arable ground, the North Boundary whereof is to this Day call'd Green-Ditch) in which they were wont to exercise themselves at several kinds of Sports after Meals, and upon extraordinary occasions, but finding the Gate shut upon them, they were exceedingly enraged, and the more, because they had been before obstructed from seeing the Prince, a sight they were very desirous of, on purpose that they might the better express their Loyalty. They often intreated the Bayliffs to open the Gate, but finding it was in vain, they got it broke down, and afterwards carried it in triumph through the Beaumonts Fields to Pare well or Parewell, which was such a Grievance to the Townsmen, that they took an occasion to imprison many Scholars, and would have proceeded to the utmost Violence, had they not been overpowered by the Scholars, as they were in all Encounters, unless the Scholars were far outnumbered by the Townsmen's calling to their Assistance (a thing common with them) a parcel of Ruffians and illitterate Fellows out of the Country. John Stowe mentions this difference in the Folio Edition[1] of his Chronicle, under the Year 1264. and tho' he doth not refer us to Robert of Gloucester, yet I do not doubt but he took the Story from him, or, at least, from

[1] P. 193.

some

some body that had made use of him. Edward the kings ſonne, (ſaith he) after his returne from Paris, about Lent, tooke his journey toward the March, and paſſing by Oxford, the Burgeſſes ſhut vp their gates againſt him, whereby he was forced to lie at the Kings hall without the Towne till the next morrow, and then departed. The Scholliers of Oxford being ſhut within the Towne, brake vp the gate that leadeth toward Beaumont, for which deed the Maior ſent ſome of them to priſon: and not long after, while the Scholliers were at dinner, the Maior and Commons, with banners diſplayed, thought to haue ſpoyled the Clarkes ere they had beene aware, but being eſpyed, the ſcholliers ranne together, and with bowes and other weapons, ſlew and wounded the Burgeſſes and Commons, brake vp many houſes, ſpoyling the goods, and ſet the houſes of the Portriues (William Spicer and Geffrey Heucley) on fire, on the South ſide of the towne. Moreouer, becauſe the Maior (Nicholas Kingstone) was a Vintener, they brake vp the Vintrie, dranke the wines, and ſpoyled them, for the which fact the King cauſed the Clearkes and Scholliers to be baniſhed the Vniuerſitie. This Victory of the Scholars stuck

The Scholliers and Burgesses of Oxford the one ſpoyle the other.

Clarkes of Oxford baniſhed.

---

[1] *Lege* Hencley, so call'd from one of the *Hencseys* or *Hinckseys*, *viz.* either Laurence Hincksey, or North Hincksey, (oftentimes call'd Ferry Hincksey, and, from the vast quantity of Ivy that was formerly, before the present Church or Chappel was built, about the Church, Ivy Hincksey) or else South Hincksey, dedicated to St. John [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 121.] both situated in Berkshire (being Chappels of Ease to Cumnor, the Church of which is dedicated to St. Michael [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 119.]) but are near Oxford.

so much in the Townsmen's Stomacks, that it was one main reason of the Barbarity they shew'd the Scholars in the very great Conflict that afterwards fell out in the Reign of Edward the third, which indeed is much the biggest that ever happened between the two Bodies.

§. VIII. But tho' Mr. Wood hath published the beforementioned Passage, and refers to a MS. for it; yet since he hath not told us where this MS. is lodg'd (which, notwithstanding, I have at last found to be that in the Cottonian Library) I am of opinion, that he had it from second hand, either from Brian Twyne's, or Dr. Gerard Langbaine's Papers, which he had glean'd, and out of which, in a very great measure, he collected his Book. I have seen, among other things, two MSS. Catalogues of the Magistrates of the University of Oxford, drawn excellently well, (with references to the several Registers and Books made use of) one by Brian Twyne, and the other by Dr. Langbaine, and 'twas from these Catalogues that Mr. Wood compiled his Catalogue, in which much Reading is shew'd. 'Tis observable, that Mr. Wood does not tell us, what the foresaid Hare well or Harewell (mentioned in this Fragment)

Which tho' it be published by Mr. Wood, yet he seems to have had it from second hand. The Harewell, mentioned in that Account, is, probably, the same with Walton Well.

Walton Well the oldest Well of note about Oxford. St. Edward's Well by St. Clement's, older than the old Well from which Saint Crosse's Parish, in the Suburbs of Oxford, was called *Holywell*. The respect formerly paid to Wells, which occasioned Injunctions against the Worship of them.

ment) was. For my part, I take it to have been what we now call **Walton Well**, (so named from the old Village of **Walton**, now destroy'd [1]) which is on this Side of another old Well call'd **Aristotle's Well**, and sometimes **Bruman's Well**, which name of **Bruman** it had from one **Brumman** or **Bruman le rich** or **the rich**, who lived in the time of K. Hen. III. (when Robert of Gloucester flourished) or, as others say, about the time of K. Henry I [2]. As Brumman, or Bruman, was a very wealthy Man, so he had a great Estate hereabouts, was commonly called **Brumman the rich of Walton** [3], and was always very civil and obliging to the Scholars. In those times, what we now call **Walton Well** was styl'd **Harewell** or **Horewell** from it's Antiquity, (as **Harwell**, or **Harewell**, near Abbington in Berks was likewise so call'd upon the same account) **hare** or **hore**, as I have lately insinuated [4], signifying *old*, which Name it retained, among many, divers Years after. I take it to be the oldest Well of note about Oxford, where, however, there were formerly a great many famous Wells. **Holywell** cannot come at all in competition with it for its Antiquity. For the Church or

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 67. p. 14. Item Præf. nostr. ad Joan. Rossi Hist. regum Angliæ, p. VIII. [2] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 57. p. 124. [3] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. p. 20. [4] Videsis Præf. nostr. ad Hemingi Chartular. Eccl. Wig. §. XI.

Chap-

Chappel of Holywell is properly call'd St. Croſſe's (being dedicated to the Holy Cross, and built too in form of a Cross, tho' the North part be now down) and 'twas first call'd Holywell from the Well many Years after the Building of it, when the Water was known and fam'd to have a peculiar virtue for the Eyes, and was thence term'd *holy*. But tho' Holywell was so much celebrated, yet the Fame of St Edward's, or, as others [1], St. Edmund's, Well, without Bridgſet, or rather Bridghithe or Bridghythe [2], commonly, and indeed more anciently, call'd St. Clement's, by Oxford was far greater, in so much that there was a Resort of all sorts of People from all Parts to it, and the Water [3] of it was believed to be so effectual in curing divers Distempers, and thereupon held to be of so great Sanctity, that here they made Vows, and brought their Alms and Offerings. This was the Case also of abundance of other Wells throughout the Kingdom, which gave occasion to several Injunctions prohibiting such respect, as a Thing indecent and superstitious, and, among others, the Worship of this Well of St. Edward was particularly forbid by Oliver Sutton, Bishop of Lincoln, in the time of Edward the first. This Well-worship was call'd by our Saxon Ancestors Wilpeonþunge or

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. p. 26. [2] Ibid. p. 10. [3] Dr. Plot's Natural Hist. of Oxfordshire, chap. II. §. 70.

Wilpeon-

Wilpeorþunga, and is strictly forbidden in King Edgar's Canons and K. Cnute's Laws, as 'twas in a Council at London under Archbishop Anselm in the Year 1102. as is well noted by Mr. Somner[1], and some of our best Criticks observe, that what is translated *Will-worship* in Colossians[2] should be *Well-worship*. This Well of St. Edward is now quite stopt up, and hath been so for many Years, but it was in the Field about a Furlong S. S. West of St. Clement's Church, and I have heard some of the Ancients of Oxford talk of it, as many old People will likewise speak with great satisfaction of the old Well [call'd by them commonly Crow-well, i. e. *Cross-well*] of Holy-well, that was also stopt up, as a vast Number of others were, after the Injunctions came to be of force, and were put in Execution; tho' it must be acknowledg'd, that Crow-well (which was almost opposite to the Cross that is in the Wall of Magdalen College Grove, notwithstanding Dr. Plot insinuates[3], that it was the Well behind Holywell Church, in the Court before the Mannour House) was opened again some Years after it had been stop'd, and continued in great fame 'till the Siege of Oxford, particularly for it's good service to bad Eyes,

[1] Saxon Dict. voc. Wilpeorþunge. [2] Ch. II. v. 23. [3] Nat. Hist. of Oxfordsh. ch. X. §. 142.

which

which occasion'd these Verses to be put upon the Cover of it:

Let no man this Well despise,
It does no harm, but helps the Eyes.

Soon after the Siege, the Stones of it were carried by Mr. Cowdrey the Shoe-maker to the Well, now call'd, from the Person that lives at it, **Newton's Well**, that is on the East side of Holy-well Church. But notwithstanding all this, **Walton Well** (which, I think, was most of all frequented [1] in the time that the King's Palace, called **The Beaumonts**, and the Carmelite Friery at the said Palace flourished) was not concerned in these Prohibitions, because the Water was not esteem'd and look'd upon as holy. Neither was **Aristotle's Well** (which I take to be near as ancient a Well as that of **Walton**) included in the Prohibitions, being fam'd only for it's being frequented by Scholars, not for it's Sanctity, but for a House of Entertainment here built, to which they us'd to resort, especially on Ashwednesdays, when the Batchelours of Arts, that defend Aristotle in the Publick Disputations, are styl'd Aristotles, and formerly, after the hot Disputations in the Schools, they, as well as other Scholars, us'd to go into the Fields by this Well, which was their Place of Refreshment, and exercise themselves in another manner, not so proper

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 67. p. 16.

for them, which some Years agoe was put down.

Our Author's Poëtry agreeable to the Genius of his Age, and his regard to Truth in his Rhythms answers the Custom of the Pythagoræans and old Britains.

§. IX. I am here very sensible, that an Objection against Robert of Glocester will be started by several upon the score of his Poëtry, as if that were a very cogent Argument to make him neglected and despised. But he (and not Chaucer, as Dr. Thomas Fuller[1], and some others would have it,) is the Ennius of the English Nation, and he is, on that account, to be as much respected, as even Ennius himself was among the Romans, and I have good reason to think, that he will be so by Friends to our Antiquities, and our old History. 'Tis the Genius of the age that is to be regarded in such Pieces of Poëtry. The Poëtry of those times consisted of Rhythms both here and in other Countries, and the Poëts thought they had done their Parts well, if their Rhythms, however mean otherwise, related matter of Fact, and were agreeable to Truth. And truly this exactly corresponded with the Rules of the ancient Pythagoræans. For even Tully tells us, at the Beginning of the IVth. Book of his Tusculan Questions, that the Pythagoræans us'd to put their Precepts and other Things of mo-

[1] Church-History of Britain, l. VI. p. 268. tho' he had before told us, l. III. p. 4. that *he* [Rob. of Glouc.] *was counted the* Virgil *of his age, and the* Ennius *in ours.*

ment

ment (among which, to be sure, are to be reckon'd the famous Acts of their Ancestors) into Verse, and that it was usual with the old Romans, according to the Custom of the Pythagoræans, when they sat at Banquets, to recite the Virtues and Praises of Great Men in Verse, and to sing and play upon the Pipe upon such occasions, and thence, as I take it, even the old Britains, who followed the Pythagoræan Doctrines, addicted themselves so much to Verse, tho' as well the Pythagoræans, as Romans and Britains, took care, that no Verse should tend to the Injury of another, one of the Laws of the XII. Tables expressly forbidding any such Indecency, and some of our old Rhythms laying down Rules against any unbecoming Expressions in Poëtry, such as may conduce to Immorality; and in this, as well as his unaffected way of relating matter of Fact in Rhythm, our Author is to be commended, as a true Picture of Antiquity.

§. X. Since, therefore, Robert of Gloucester appears, on all accounts, to be so valuable an Author, what reason can be assign'd, that he hath been so much neglected, and that he was not long since published to the World? 'Tis probable the Obsoleteness of the Language might be the main reason, or, at least, 'tis likely, that some Persons of

He hath continued too long hid from the World. The value of the Harleyan MS. which is followed in the Edition, that we now set forth. The Language, as well as the Work, altered in the MS. of the Herald's Office, and that by one who lived in the time of Hen. VI.

Distinction, not pleased with several of his honest Relations of Things, might characterize him as an insignificant Writer, and prejudice the Readers so much against him, that they were not at all sollicitous about an Edition. Be this as it will, as I look upon him to be one of the first Rank in our old Historians, so I, many Years agoe, had thoughts of publishing him according to the Bodleian MS. to which I had then daily access. But finding afterwards, that there are much better Copies in the World, I laid aside my Design of publishing this Author, and did not resume it 'till above a Year agoe, when the Loan of a MS. that formerly belong'd to Sir Simonds D'Ewes, (whose MSS. the Earl of Oxford purchas'd) was procur'd for me out of the Harleyan Library by that most eminent Physician the learned Dr. Richard Mead, who is my very great Friend. It came to me, accompanied with another MS. of Robert of Gloucester, the Loan of which was obtain'd for me out of the Heralds Office by another great Friend, the learned John Bridges, Esq. who was at the trouble of transmitting both these MSS. to me. As soon as I saw the Harleyan MS. I presently concluded, that it was a very good one and authentick, and therefore I immediately transcrib'd it, and resolved to make it my Text. But then as to that of the Heralds Office, I found not only the Language of

Ro-

Robert of Gloucester to be altered throughout in it, but the Work quite changed in several respects, by having some Passages transposed, others omitted, and divers inserted that were never written by Robert of Gloucester, who was of different Principles from this Author. A great deal of Prose History in English (partly taken from Geffry of Monmouth, partly from William of Malmsbury, partly from Brute of England, *Polychronicon*, &c.) is intermix'd in this MS. with what is in Rhythm, but as the Substance of most of this is already published in Stowe (who had seen this MS.) and other Books, I have left out much the greatest part of it, and confin'd my self to the genuine Work of Robert of Gloucester, which, however, I have carefully compar'd with this MS. of the Heralds Office, and taken notice of what I thought proper, and have inserted my Observations from it (among which are to be reckon'd also those of the Prose part) at the bottom of the page, always subjoyning *Ar.* [i. e. *the MS. of the College of Arms*] to them. Who the Author was, that took such a liberty with Robert of Gloucester (a thing that hath happened to many other ancient Remains) I will not pretend, at present, to determine; but this is certain, that he both lived and wrote in the time of Hen. VI. as appears from this *Memorandum*, (written all [excepting ꝑ. cccc. xlviii.]

in red Letters, but in the same Hand with the Book) at the Beginning of the Work: A pe-tegreu, fro William Conquerour, of the Crowne of Engelonde, lynnyally deſcendyng, vn to kyng Henry the vi. in the end of thys boke lymned in Fygurs. Thys boke, with hys Antecedens and conſequens, was ful ended the vi. day offe Auguſt, the zere of oure lorde a M'.cccc.xlviii. and the yere of oure ſouerayn lorde kyng Harry the vi. after the conqueſt the xxvi.

Who, however, is pleased to conceal his Name, as he does also that of Robert of Gloucester. A Rhythmical Account of the Kings of England at the End of his MS. which is here likewise printed.

§. XI. Tho' this MS. of the Heralds Office (for the use of which I am in a particular manner obliged to my learned Friend John Anstis, Esq. Garter, principal King of Arms) be in several Places imperfect, and hath some of the Leaves transpos'd (as a few Leaves are also transpos'd in the Harleyan MS.) yet 'tis, as I judge, the very original Book. The Author, undoubtedly, took a great deal of pains in new modelling Robert of Gloucester, and in adapting every Thing to his own Scheme. He divers times introduceth the Rhythms by the Name of **old Rhythms**, but never so much as once mentions the Name of Robert of Gloucester, or pretends to discover what his own Name was. Mr. Weever had diligently perus'd this MS. and quotes it sometimes as if the whole were Robert of Gloucester's, a mistake that some great Men besides have

have been guilty of with respect to other Writers, as may plainly appear, as well from other Instances, as from what I observ'd lately with regard to Fordun's *Scotichronicon*. The Petegrew mentioned in the Note above-said is still to be seen at the end of the MS. together with the Limnings or Pictures (all but that of William Rufus and Henry I. which are cut out) of the Kings of England from William the Conquerour to Hen. VI. inclusively, and this additional Part is also cited by Weever, but in that he happens to distinguish rightly, making it, as it is, quite different from any Piece of Robert of Gloucester's Writings. The Pictures I have omitted, but the rest I have printed in my Appendix[1], and, I hope, I have thereby obliged those that have any respect for our Antiquities.

But these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester, as are likewise those in this MS. that relate to King Richard I.

§. XII. The Reader will perceive at first sight, that these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester. And indeed in this very MS. in the Body of the Book, is also a great Number of other Rhythms, that are also shorter than Robert's, I mean such as relate to Richard the First; (which nevertheless are erroneously ascrib'd by Dr. Fuller[2] to Robert of Gloucester:) but then I have quite

[1] Num. III. p. 43. where he gives us the following Rhythms, and

[2] Ch. Hist. l. III. in the Margin calls them Robert of Gloucester's:

omitted all these, partly because they are (in many respects) strangely Romantick, and partly because they are of the same kind with those that were printed by Wynkyn de Worde in the Year 1528. under the Title of **The Story of the noble Kynge Richard Cure de Lyon**, of which I never yet saw but one Copy, which is that in the Bodleian Library, that I formerly mentioned in a Letter about Geffry Chaucer that I writ in the Year 1709. to the before mentioned [1] ingenious Mr. Bagford, which Letter I shall insert at large in my Appendix [2], partly because (provided I may be allow'd to say this) it was much approved of by my late very honest and learned Friend Mr. John Urry, to whom some body had communicated it, and partly because it happened to be, upon several accounts, commended by some other Persons of distinction,

---

* *Jafes*, (saith Fuller) that is *Joppa* in Palestine.

King Richard wyth gud entent
To yat cite of * Jafes went
On morn he fent aftur Sir Robert Sakevile
Sir William Wateruile
Sir Hubart and Sir Robart of Turnham
Sir Bertram Brandes and John de St. John.

Which very Rhythms I find also in those about Richard I. in the MS. of the Heralds Office, where they are thus express'd:

Kyng Richard with good entent
To that cite of Jafes went.
On morwe he fent aftur Robert Sakeuile,
& Sire William the Wateruile,
Sire Hubert & Robert of Turnham,
Sire Bertram Braundis & John de Seynt Johan.

[1] §. III. [2] Num. IV.

to

to whom it was occasionally shew'd. Nor have I heard of but one more printed Copy of this Book about K. Richard (tho', without doubt, they were formerly common enough) and that is that in the Harleyan Library, which is much more clean and perfect than the Bodleian Copy, as I am assured by my ingenious Friend the Reverend Mr. Timothy Thomas, M. A. and Student of Christ Church, who takes notice [1], that the Title Page of this Book has a wooden Cut of a *Knight on horseback*, attended by a *Squire*, and these words on the top of the Page,

Kyng Rycharde cure dulyon:

that there then follows on the other side of the Leaf,

The prologue
Orde kynge of glorye
Suche grace and suche vyctory
Thou sendest to kynge Rycharde
That neuer was found cowarde
It is good to here Jestes
Of his prowesse and his conquestes
Many romayns men make newe
Of good knyghtes and of trewe
&c.

and [2] that at the End of the Book are these words:

---

[1] In his Letter to me Oct. 22. 1723. [2] So in his Letter to me June 20. 1723.

¶ *Thus*

¶ *Thus endeth the story of the noble kyge Rycharde cure de lyon. Imprinted at London by wynkyn de worde. The yere of oure lorde.* M. CCCCC *and.* XXVIII.

The Author of which Rhythms about Richard I. seems to have been Robert of Brunne.

§. XIII. Now altho' I will not pretend to discover the Author of the additional Rhythms about our Kings to Robert of Gloucester, yet (at present) I am of opinion, that those about Richard the first in the Body of the Book, as well as the printed ones, were written by Robert of Brunne, the same, I mean, that translated Robert Grosthead's Manuele pecche (or Manuel de Peche) out of French, of which there is a small Fol. MS. in the Harleyan Library on Parchment, wrote very near the Author's time, having two Columns on each page, as those Rhythms about Richard the first, in the MS. of the Heralds Office, are likewise in two Columns, contrary to what Robert of Gloucester's are. This MS. of Robert of Brunne's Translation begins with this Title in *Red letters:*

Here bygynneþ the boke þat men clepyn in frenshe manuele pecche þe whych boke made yn frenshe Roberd Grostest Byshop of lyncolne.

Adyr and ſone and holy goſte
þat art o god of myztes moſte
At þy wurſchyp ſhul we bygyn
To ſhame þe fend & ſhew oure ſynne

Synne

Synne to shew vs to frame
God to wurschyp þe fend to shame

Shameful synne ys god to lete
Al þat men do boþe smale & grete

þe grete withoutyn pryuyte
þat ben comune to me & the

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

This Author became famous very soon, even in the Year 1303. 31. Edw. I. (above thirty Years before he finished his Chronicle, a most rare Work, and known to very few of our Historians and Antiquaries, which was in the Year 1338.) as appears from the following Lines, which conclude the second Column of the first Page of the said MS. Translation of **Manuele pecche**, and were sent me [1], with what I have already said about this MS. by my before mentioned ingenious Friend Mr. Timothy Thomas, and he did it the more readily, not only because they have the *Author*'s (or rather *Translator*'s) Name, but because there are in them some other Circumstances, which may contribute to know him more perfectly.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .

To alle crystyn men undir sunne
And to gode men of brunne

[1] In a Letter dated Sept. 19. 1723.

And

And speciali alle be name
þe felaushepe of Sympryngham

Roberd of brunne gꝛeteþ zow
In al godenesse þat may to prow

Of brymwake yn kesteuene
Syxe mẏle besyde sympryngha̅ euene

ẏ dwelled yn the prẏorẏe
Fyftene zere yn cumpanye

In þe tyme of gode dane Jone
Of camelton þat now ẏs gone

In hys tyme was y þere ten zeres
And knew and herde of hys maneres

Syþyn with dane Jone of clyntone
Fyue wyntẏr wyþ hy̅ gan y wone

Dane felyp was mayster þat tyme
þat y began þys englysh ryme

þe zeres of grace fyl þan to be
A þousẏnd & þre hundred & þre

This Robert of Brunne the same with Stowe's Robert Brune. Stowe was certainly the Author of the Fragments, that I have printed in Heming. Stowe's Honesty, and the value of his Chronicle. A very remarkable Passage out of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, together with the same as it occurrs in Stowe.

§. XIV. This Robert of Brunne is the same with Robert Brune, that is quoted in the Margin of the Folio Ed. of Stowe's Annals under the Year 1266. in the Reign of King Henry III. But what Book 'twas that Stowe made use of there, he hath not been pleased to acquaint us. Neither, indeed, is either Brune or Brunne mentioned in the valuable Fragments of Stowe, that I reprinted lately at the End of Heming from a Copy communicated to me by my ingenious and curious Friend Mr. John Murray. I call these Fragment's Stowe's, because I find the

the Conjecture I made in my Dissertation about them, *viz.* not only that John Stowe was the Author of them, but that they belong'd to some short Chronicle, to which was prefix'd some Calendar, to be very just and true. For indeed they belong'd to Stowe's Summary or Abridgment of the Chronicles of England. For tho' I have not yet met with a Copy of this Summary with these Fragments, in which we have an Account of his Authors, yet in a Preface that he put to one Edition of his Summary, which ends in the Year 1573. he expressly tells us, that he was the Author of those Fragments. I never saw (that I remember) but one Copy of that Edition, and it was given me by my very learned Friend Mr. Baker of Cambridge. This Copy, tho' a little imperfect both at the Beginning and End, is a very great Curiosity (as indeed all Editions of the Summary are now Curiosities) and I esteem it the more, because I cannot learn, that this Preface is in any other edition. There is a Calendar at the Beginning, which confirms my Notion also as to that Point. For better satisfaction I shall reprint this Preface in my Appendix [1], as I should have done in Heming had it then been in my possession. The Reader will perceive by it the disingenuous dealing of Richard Grafton towards John Stowe, a Man tho' of no great Learning, yet of incredible Industry in collect-

[1] Num. V.

ing

ing old MSS. and in preserving other Antiquities, and so faithfull an Historian, that he hath been much esteem'd by Camden and our greatest men, in so much that the famous Sir Roger Lestrange, talking some Years before his Death with a very ingenious and learned Gentleman about our Historians, was pleas'd to say, *that it was always a wonder to him, that the very best that had penn'd our History in English should be a poor Taylour, honest John Stowe.* Sir Roger said *a Taylour,* because Stowe, as is reported [1], was bred a Capmaker (and so perhaps his Father Thomas Stowe was before him) and was of Merchant Taylours Company. The Trade of Capmaking was then much in fashion, Hats being not at that time much in request. But notwithstanding Stowe hath not declared what Book of Brune's it was to which he owed his Information, yet I find, that it was Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, before mentioned. For the very remarkable Verses, that Stowe hath printed (under the seventh Year of Edward I.) from Brune in pag. 201. of the said Fol. Ed. of his Annals, are thus express'd in the old MS. of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, that I have now before me, and belongs to the Inner Temple Library, being given with other MSS. to that Society by the last Will of William Petit, Esq. late Keeper of the

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. 62. p. 3.

Re-

Records in the Tower of London, one of whose Trustees being my learned Friend, before mentioned [1], John Anstis, Esq. 'tis by his means that I have had the Loan of it from that learned and honourable Society.

Edward did ſmyte rounde peny, halfpeny, ferthyng,
þe croice paſſed [2] paſſed'' þe bounde of alle þorghout þe ryng.
þe kynge's ſide ſalle be þe hede & his name writen.
þe croyce ſide what cite it was in coyned & ſmyten.
þe pouere man ne þe preſte þe peny prayſes no þing.
Men ayſt God þe leſt, þe ſecke him with a ferþing.
A þouſand & two hundred & fourſcore zeres mo,
On þis mone men wondred [3] ſtill whan it gan go.

The Words are somewhat different in Stowe, and for that reason I shall here annex them, by which means they may the more easily be compared together. Whereas (saith he) before this time [A. D. 1279.] the penny was wont to haue a double croſſe, with a creſt, in ſuch ſort, that the ſame might eaſily be broken in the middeſt, or into foure quarters, and ſo to be made into halfe pence or farthings: which order was taken in the yeare of Chriſt 1106. the 7. of H. the I. it was now ordained, that pence, halfe pence, and farthings ſhould be made round, whereupon was made theſe verſes following. First halfe pence and farthings round. Pierce Longtose.

Edward did smite round peny, halfe [4] peny farthing.
The crosse passes the bond of all throughout the ring: Robert Brune.

[1] §. XI. [2] Dele. [3] Sic, pro firſt. [4] There is a comma after *peny* in the 4to. Ed. 1592.

The

The Kings side was his head, and his name written,
The crosse side, what Citie it was in, coyned [1] or smitten.
To poore man, ne to Priest, the peny fraises nothing,
Men giue God aye the least, they feast him with a farthing:
A thousand two hundred, fourescore yeares [2] add mo.
On this money men wondred, when it first began to goe.

The old money (adds Stowe) was not forbidden to goe with the new: and beſides theſe monies there was coyned groates, containing four pence the peece.

Regist. of Bury. The pound of eſterling money at this time containing 12. ounces, to wit, fine ſiluer (ſuch as men take into foyle or leaues, & is commonly called ſiluer of Eutherom lane) 11. ounces, 2. eſterlings, and one feyling, and the other 17. d. ob. q. to be alay. Alſo the pound ought to wey of money, 20 s. 3. d. by accompt, ſo that no pound ought to be aboue 20. s. 4. d. nor leſſe then 20. s. 2. d. by account. The ounce to wey 20. d. The peny to wey 24. graines, &c.

The late learned Bishop Fleetwood hath reprinted the whole Passage from Stowe, to which he hath added many curious Particulars of his own, in pag. 44. of his excellent Book called *Chronicon Preciosum*, to which I shall refer the Reader.

Instead of the anonymous fabulous Rhythms upon Richard I. I have inserted the genuine ones of Robert of Gloucester, in a Continuation of the Harleyan MS. from the Cottonian Library.

§. XV. To what hath been said about my omitting the foresaid Rhythms (the Author of which, I believe, was Robert of Brunne) another reason may be added, and that is this, that in their stead I have published the true ge-

[1] *And* pro *or* in dicta Ed. [2] In qua Ed. *and* pro *add* habemus.

nuine

nuine ones upon that Prince of Robert of Gloucester himself, who left out whatever he thought Romantick, as we may gather from his own Words, and would therefore, without doubt, have pass'd by these, had they been in being in his time, which are so very fabulous as to be look'd upon only for their Antiquity, and as a Curiosity. I must confess, that these genuine Rhythms of Robert of Gloucester relating to Richard I. are wanting in the Harleyan MS. which ends in that Year of K. Stephen's Reign, in which the Empress Maud made her Escape from the Castle of Oxford, wherein she had been so long besieged by K. Stephen. But then they are extant in the MS. of the Cottonian Library, in which MS. the History is brought down to the latter End of K. Henry the Third's Reign, and 'tis from thence I have supply'd the Harleyan MS. the intire Continuation out of it being procur'd for me by my most generous Friend, before mentioned, the learned Dr. Mead, who, after he had got it transcrib'd wholly at his own Expenses, put it into the hands of another of my very good Friends the learned John Bridges, Esq. who is likewise mentioned above, and so it came safely to my hands.

The Harleyan MS. perfect, tho' it comes nothing near so low as that of the Cottonian Library. One Leaf, at least, is wanting in the Cottonian MS.

§. XVI. Notwithstanding the Harleyan MS. breaks off so early, yet since it ends about the middle of a Page, and with a full Line, 'tis justly look'd upon by Criticks as a perfect Book. So that, in all likelyhood, the Author carried on the Work at first no farther, but after some time resumed it again, and brought it down to his own time. The Harleyan MS. seems to have been written in the Reign of K. Edward the Third, but the Cottonian one is judg'd to be about 50. Years older than the Harleyan. The Harleyan MS. agrees, (abating some Variations in the Language) so far as it goes, with the Cottonian one, and yet, without doubt, they were transcrib'd from different Copies, one from the Work as it was first finish'd by the Author, the other from a MS. that was compleated after the Author set about it again after some Intermission. The Cottonian MS. ends in the Year 1270. and so there wants but two Years to compleat Hen. the Third's Reign, who died Nov. 16. 1272. The Author undoubtedly finished that Reign, and 'tis agreed upon by such as have seen and considered it, that the Cottonian MS. which ends at the bottom of a Page, wants one Leaf, if not more, to fill up that Reign. And this, I think, is likewise confirm'd from some MSS. of Robert of Gloucester (whereof one is that in the Bodleian Library) which

which tho' they want all K. Henry the Third's Reign, ending the History with that of King John, yet they have the following Verses, in which a reason (tho' a very poor one) is given for omitting the Author's Account of the Battle of Lewis and Evesham in those MSS.

Henry his sone come aftir, & his londe þan nome,
And fifti zeer & fire helde his kyndome,
And also twenty daies, and ded was I wis,
And buried at Westmenstre, þer his bodi zit is.
Ther were in his tyme two Batailes in londe,
At Lewes and at Euesham, as I understonde,
That were þayre longe, & zit ne ben forzete nouzt.
Ther fore in this boke ne ben thei nouzt wrouzt.
Of grace twelve hundred, & two and seuenty zeer,
Dede was the kynge Henry, as I seide zow eer.

Edward his sone than was, man of gret pris,
At Westmenstre crowned, stronge kynge & wis,
That of Walsche londe clenliche al owte
He wan the Signorie, were thei never so prowte [1].

§. XVII. *Our Author, therefore, having brought his History to the End of the Reign of Henry the III. and being about to write that of Edw. I. was (as it seems to me) prevented from going farther by Death, but in what Year it was of*

Our Author seems to have dyed in the Beginning of Edw. the First's Reign. Himself gives an express Testimony of the Time in which he flourished.

[1] E Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 58. p. 75. & Vol. 61. p. 232, 234. uti etiam è schedula quadam, mihi donata ab amicissimo ornatissimoque Juvene Jacobo West, A. B. è Collegio Balliolensi, qui meam in gratiam eandem perquam benevole è Codice MS. exscripsit. Hanc autem schedulam ad calcem Vol. 97. Collectaneorum nostrorum inserui.

that King's Reign it doth not appear, tho', I think, it must have been after the sixth, because in pag. 224. he mentions K. Arthur's fair Tombe, in the middle of the Quire, before the high Altar at Glastonbury, which Tombe was so rais'd in the Year 1278. or the sixth Year of Edw. I. by order of that King. The chief Characteristick, that himself hath given of the time in which he flourish'd, is that about the Battle of Evesham in the Year 1265. when he tells us, that the day, on which it happened, was very dismal and dark, and that himself, to his great Fear and Astonishment, was an Eye-witness of this dreadfull dark time.

Suich was (saith he [1]) þe morþre of Einesham (uor bataile non it nas)
& þer wiþ Jesu Crist wel uuele [i. unele] ipaied was,
As he sitewede bitokninge gristice & gode,
As it uel of him sulue, þo he deide on þe rode,
þat þoru al þe middelerd derk hede þei was inou.
Illo þe wule þe gode men at Euesham me slou,
As in þe Norþ West a derk weder þer aros,
Sodeinliche suart inou, þat mani man agros,
& ouer calle it þozte al þut lond, þat me mizte unneþe isi.
Gristoker weder þan it was ne mizte an erþe be.
An uetwe dropes of reine þer uelle grete inou.
þis tokninge uel in þis lond, þo me þis men slou,
Mor þretti mile þanne. þis isei Roberd,
þat uerst þis boc made, & was wel sore aferd.

[1] Pag. 560.

§. XVIII.

§. XVIII. This being so very clear and manifest a Testimony of the time, when our Historian lived, what reason can be thought of, that it should be overlook'd by the unknown Writer of some Remarks (sent me by the learned John Bridges, Esq.) at the bottom of the first Page of the Cottonian MS. touching the Age of Robert of Gloucester, especially since he pretended to draw his Proofs from the Author himself? One that undertakes such a Task should read every Passage over deliberately, and examine and sift them with the utmost care and nicety. But it seems this Writer rely'd more upon an interpolated MS. in the hands of the famous Mr. Thomas Allen of Gloucester Hall, than he did upon the genuine Work of the Author, and by virtue of that he brings Robert of Gloucester down to the latter End of Edward the Second, whereas he had no such Grounds to go upon in the genuine Book. "I "have got copied" (saith Mr. Bridges[1]) "half "a sheet[2] out of the Cottonian MS. *viz.* The "remarks, at the bottom of the first page, in "an unknown hand, touching the age of the "Author, and his proofs collected from Rob. "of Glocester himself, and also giving an ac- "count of two Fragments, which are inserted

Which, however, is pass'd over by one who endeavour'd to settle his Age from proofs extracted from his Chronicle.

[1] In his Letter to me Mar. 12. $172\frac{2}{3}$. [2] See it printed in the Appendix, Num. VI.

" in bits of Paper in the 71st *fol.* b. and 75. out
" of a Copy in the hands of one Tho. Allen of
" Oxford, which, as he says, extended no far-
" ther than to the Reign of K. Stephen, for
" which reason we at first imagin'd it to be the
" same with my Ld. Harley's, but upon looking
" for the said inserted passages we find them
" both wanting. The said remarks are in a hand
" of about 100. Years standing. His first proof of
" the age of Robert is from a passage in K. Ar-
" thur, where he speaks of the finding that
" King's bones at Glastonbury, from whence,
" he says, 'tis plain, that the Author liv'd after
" the time of Edw. I. whereas the Coffin with
" the Inscription, and that King's bones were
" discover'd, according to Leland, in the time of
" Hen. II [1]. of which you will be a much better
" Judge. His second proof is from one of the
" inserted passages, where 'tis said, that Seg-
" brit, or Sebert, King of the East Saxons, the
" Founder of Westminster Abbey, was buried
" there 706. Years ago; and he dying in the
" Year 617. brings the age of the Author to
" 1323. or the latter end of Edw. II. The third
" proof from *fol.* 98. b. is plainly a mistake, by
" taking Edw. the Confessor, there mention'd,
" for Edw. II. The Title in the Cotton MS.
" is in a hand very like Camden's thus, *Historia*
" *Regum Angliæ ad Henricum tertium à Rob. Glo-*

[1] A. D. 1185.

cestrensi,

" *cestrensi, qui eodem tempore floruit,* but the La-
" tin is not elegant enough for him, in my
" opinion."

Our Author rightly observes the vast Disproportion that there was between the pious Acts of K. Edw. the Confessor, and the first K. Edward after the Conquest. Interpolations are to be look'd upon as Redundancies, not as Perfections, in old MSS.

§. XIX. Thus my excellently learned Friend, (who dyed just as I was putting the finishing stroke to this Work,) from whom I must humbly beg leave to dissent with respect to the last Proof, the Words being, as I conceive, to be understood not of Edward the Confessor, but of the first King Edward after the Conquest, in whose Reign Robert of Gloucester dyed. He justly acknowledg'd this King Edward to be a good Prince, but then as justly observes, that there was a vast Disproportion between K. Edward the Confessor and him, there being no Comparison to be made of the one with the other, if their Acts of Piety, Charity, Munificence and Hospitality be duly considered. But then whereas the Remarker observes [1], that several Leaves, relating to the History of Mellitus, to the Eucharist, and to Cedwall are wanting after *fol.* 71. in the Cottonian MS. this is certainly a mistake in him, and there is no doubt but the MS. is perfect there, and of much better Authority, than if they had been inserted. Interpolations (such as these are) are always to be look'd upon as Redundancies in any old Authors, and the MSS.

[1] See in the Appendix, pag. 610.

therefore, that are without them, are by no means deficient. Had I thought otherwise, I might have multiplied them from the MS. of the Heralds Office, where so much of this nature occurrs, as I could also have strangely inlarg'd Fordun's genuine Chronicle, when I set him out lately, had I judg'd it proper for me to blend and confound the Interpolations and the authentick Work together, as they are done in some MSS.

Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Small-Coal Man, seems to have had a MS. of Robert of Gloucester. The learned Mr. Thomas Allen had two MSS. of him, one of which came to the Bodleian Library, the other to some unknown Hands.

§. XX. When I first saw by the anonymous Remarks, that the Harleyan and Mr. Allen's MSS. notwithstanding their coming down to the same Period of time, were different, I began to be of opinion, that Mr. Allen's might have been the same, that was sometime in the Hands of the late Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Musical Small-Coal Man, which is thus mentioned in the first Part of the Auction Catalogue [1] of his Books: *A Poëm of the Kings of Britain from Gurguyn Son of K. Belinus down to Henry* II. Tho' there be no Name to that Poëm in the Catalogue, yet I take it to be Robert of Gloucester's; but then that which makes me now think it to be different from Mr. Allen's is, it's not beginning so early as his did. So that perhaps this Copy of Mr. Allen came into some private Hands in

[1] Pag. 34. num. 14. of the MSS. in Folio.

France,

France, and I fear, that it is now quite lost. That which gives ground to this Suspicion is, the Fate of much the greatest Part of Sir Kenelm Digby's admirable Library, which, after Sir Kenelm's Death, fell into some such private Hands in France, and 'tis certain, that his Library consisted, in a very great measure, of Books, that had belong'd to Mr. Allen. 'Tis true, Sir Kenelm gave a good number of the MSS. Mr. Allen had left him, to the Bodleian Library, not long after Mr. Allen's Death, and there is now among them a MS. of Robert of Gloucester, being the same that I have spoke of at the Beginning [1] of this Preface, and was us'd by Mr. Selden when he was writing his History of Tithes [2]; but then this MS. (which comes to the End of K. John) is different from that referr'd to by the Remarker, and therefore will not at all invalidate what I have said about it's being lost in France. Yet if, after all, it will not be allow'd, that it was among those Books of his that were dispos'd of in France, it is probable it came to some other Person in England than Sir Kenelm. For Mr. Wood observes, that many of Mr. Allen's MSS. did not come to Sir Kenelm, but some to Mr. Richard James, and others to Sir Tho. Aylesbury.

[1] §. I. [2] Videsis Historiam dictam Decimarum, p. 206. & Auctorum Catalogum sub finem ejusd. in quo opere citat etiam Codicem Roberti nostri in Bibliotheca Cott.

" Soon

"Soon after" [Mr. Allen's Death, which happen'd on Sept. 30. 1632.] "the chief part of "his" [Mr. Allen's] "Library of incomparable "MSS." (saith Mr. Wood [1]) "coming into the "hands of Sir *Kenelm Digby*, as the owner be- "fore had appointed, they were the next year "given by him to the *Bodleian* or publick Li- "brary, where they yet remain. Some of them "had before, and about the time of *Allen*'s "death, been got from him by *Rich. James* of "*C. C.* Coll. for the *Cottonian* Library, and others "came into the hands of Sir *Tho. Aylesbury*, "Master of the *Requests*, but where those are "now, in truth I cannot tell.

Mr. Selden and Mr. Wood had a right Notion of the Age of our Author, who ought to be reckon'd among the Oxford Writers.

§. XXI. But tho' the Remarker was not so lucky as to adjust the Age of Robert of Gloucester, yet Mr. Selden, by distinguishing the spurious Chronicle from that which is genuine, very readily found it out, and accordingly in his Notes on Eadmer [2], and in his great work *de Synedriis veterum Ebræorum* [3], places him under Edw. I. about which time he hath placed him also in his *Titles of Honour* [4], and in his Preface [5] to Eadmer; (in which Preface he hath given us the Passage [something differing from the same as it is printed in his *Jani Anglorum facies altera*] about William the Conqueror's Sur-

[1] Athen. Oxon. Vol. I. col. 493. [2] Pag. 169. [3] Lib. I. cap. 10. p. 167. Ed. Amst. 1679 4to. [4] Ed. fol. 1631. p. 600. [5] P. IIII.

vey)

vey) well knowing, that, notwithstanding a Leaf or two is wanting, in all likelyhood, in the Cottonian MS. he finished the Reign of Hen. III. in which Reign, from the Passage above transcrib'd, he plainly understood that he flourished, and that, carrying the Work no farther, he could not survive long after, at least not long enough to write the Glories of the Reign of Edw. I. Mr. Selden began very early to be acquainted with him, and no body hath done him more honour. He look'd upon him as a very valuable Historian, and, therefore, hath occasionally quoted him in several Places of his other Works, (particularly many times in his *Notes and Illustrations on the first Part of Drayton's Poly-olbion*) as well as in his *Jani Anglorum facies altera*. Mr. Wood also had a right notion of his Age, but then he hath one Observation, that I have not met with elsewhere, and that is, that he was personally present at Oxford, when the Fray, I have spoke of [1], happened between the Scholars and the Townsmen in MCCLXIII. *Hæc mihi Inquisitio quædam* (saith that Author [2]) *super eâ re facta succincte exhibuit, cui nec repugnant Poëtæ* [3], *ibi tum præsentis, carmina; quæ quamvis & succo careant & colore, cùm ex novitate tamen delectationem nonnullam afferre possint, subjungi forte mereantur.* What authority

[1] §. VII. [2] Hist. & Antiq. Univ. Oxon. l. I. p. 111. [3] *Rob. Glocestrensis* in Hist. metrica MS. fol. 152. b. 153. a.

Mr.

Mr. Wood had for this does not appear, tho', I suppose, he found it either in Brian Twyne or Dr. Gerard Langbaine. But whatever that authority was, I do not doubt but he went upon very good and sure grounds, and I shall, for that reason, reckon Robert of Gloucester not only as an Oxford Writer, but as actually present in that University at the very time of that famous Scuffle.

Our Author seems to have resided in Oxford in an old House on the West Side of Stockwell Street.

§. XXII. It is said by several (and among others by Dr. Thomas Fuller [1]) that he was a Monk of Gloucester. Nor do I know (at present) of any good reason to think otherwise. It is very likely, therefore, that as a Monk he was sent hither by some of the Directors of the great Abbey of Gloucester, to take care of the Youth here, that they had under their care. In so

[1] "ROBERT *of* GLOUCESTER, *so called, because a* "Monk *thereof. He is* "*omitted* (*whereat I wonder*) "*both by* Bale *and* Pits, *except disguised under another* Name, *and what I can.* "*not conjecture; they speak* "truly, *who term him a* "Rhimer, *whilest such speak* "courteously, *who call him a* "Poet. *Indeed such his* "Language, *that he is* dumb "*in effect to the Readers of* "*our age without an* Interpreter, *and such a one will* "*hardly be procured.* Antiquaries (*amongst whom* "*Mr.* Selden) *more value him* "*for his* History *than* Poetry, *his* lines *being neither* "strong *nor* smooth, *but* "*sometimes* sharp, *as may* "*appear by this* Tetrastick, "*closing with a pinch at the* "*paunch of the* Monks, *which* "*coming from the* Pen *of a* "Monk *is the more remarkable.*

* Cells or Portions.
† Ruler or Governor, *sed quære.*

"In the Citie of *Bangor* a great Hous tho was,
"And ther vndyr vii * Cellens and ther of ther † Nas
"That c.c.c. Moncks hadde othur mo
"And alle by hure travayle lyvede; loke now if they do so.

"*He*

much, that I am apt to think, that, upon that score, he resided in an old House, where Monks [1] used to study, on the West Part of **Stockwell-street**, in the same Place where Gloucester College (afterwards styl'd Gloucester Hall, and at length Worcester College, on the West Side of which the Monks of Gloucester had a Mill [2]) was since founded in the Year 1283 [3]. or, as others [4] say, in 1281. by John Giffard Baron of Brimsfield, the same that was so famous for his Military Skill in the time of Hen. III. and

"*He flourished some* Four "hundred years *since under* "*King* Henry *the* second, "*and may be presumed to* "*have continued till the be-* "*ginning of King* John, "1200". Fuller's Worthies of England, p. 358. in Gloucestershire. Dr. Fuller did well to put in the Margin, *sed quære*, his Interpretation of nas being as wrong, as that of the Author of an Essay about the old English Poëts and Poëtry, printed in *the Muses Mercury*, which I have mentioned in my Glossary, under the word non. These Rhythms are extant also in p. 61. of the Introduction to Weever's *Ancient Funeral Monuments*, where Weever likewise, by his marginal explication (*seuen cels, or seuen portions, which had euery one a seuerall head or ruler ouer them*) seems to have been equally ignorant of the true signification of the word nas. By comparing these Rhythms with the genuine Robert of Gloucester, they will immediately appear to be corrupted. Nas signifies *was not*. The meaning of the Passage therefore is, *and there was not one of those Cells, but what had three hundred or more monks.*

[1] *Domus monachorum studentium in* Stockwell-Gate *Oxon.* Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. p. 8. [2] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 62. pag. 116, 117. [3] Hist. & Antiq. Univ. Oxon. l. II. p. 338, 380. Reyn. Apostol. Bened. in Angl. Tr. 3. p. 53. Monast. Angl. Tom. I. p. 540. b. Dugdale's Baron. Tome I. p. 500. Tanner's Notitia Monastica, p. 184. [4] See Dr. Leonard Hutten's Antiquities of Oxford, p. 324. published by me at the End of *Textus Roffensis.*

is

is mentioned, for that reason, towards the End of this History. Nor will it seem strange, that any Monks of Gloucester should be here before the Foundation of any such College, if it be considered, that they were extremely desirous of having their Youth educated in Academical Learning, and that this gave occasion, in good measure, to the said John Giffard to build that College in this Place, which he had observed his Neighbours, the Monks of Gloucester, to take so much delight in, and he was very willing to free them from hiring any Tenements, and from being at other Charges for the Education of their young Men, for the future.

The strange Mistake of Mr. Weever, with regard to the Age of Robert of Gloucester.

§. XXIII. Among others, that were conversant with the Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, was John Weever, a person right famous for his very usefull Book of ancient Funeral Monuments, where he hath published many Passages of this Chronicle, but with so little skill, that he not only confounds the spurious with the genuine Robert of Gloucester, but even ascribes the Prose part also to him. In pag. 60. of his Introduction, or Prefatory Discourse, he calls him Robert the Monk of Gloucester, and speaks of him as a Writer about the Year 1231, or the 15th. of Hen. III. And in the Book pag. 458, 459. brings him as low as Edw. I. in which he is right enough, provided he had not attributed

ted that to Robert of Gloucester which is none of his. But then he is quite out, when, in pag. 589. he brings him as low as Edw. II. and there transcribes a Passage in Prose, and calls it his, when it was really written by one, that lived in the time of Hen. VI. as the rest of the Prose was. 'Tis very strange, that so diligent a Man as Mr. Weever, should not see his Mistake, especially when he had the use of the very MS. that now belongs to the Heralds Office.

§. XXIV. As I find, that the true Sirname of Robert of Brunne was Manning (for he calls himself in one Place [1] of his Chronicle Robert Mannyng of Brunne, now *Bourne* a Town in Lincolnshire where was a Monastery) so I wish also, that I could discover the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester. I have endeavour'd to do this, but as yet in vain. His Name does not at all occur, either in an ancient or modern Hand, in the Harleyan MS. Nor does it so much as once appear (that I know of) in the Text of the Cottonian MS. except in the Passage I have transcribed, where, however, we have no Sirname of any kind. Indeed I have before observed [2], that, at the beginning of that MS. the History is ascribed to Robert of Gloucester in a modern Hand, and 'tis by this Name that he is called by Antiquaries and Historians,

Robert of Brunne's true Sirname was Manning. But the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester does not occur.

[1] See in the Glossary to this Work, p. 706. [2] See §. XVIII.

storians, who, without all dispute, had good Authority for it, tho' it does not appear, that any of them had met with his true Sirname, which, I suppose, came to be disus'd after his Fame was spread for his skill in History, just as that of Robert Manning's dwindled also, when he was once celebrated. Nor did Manning seem so desirous of being called by his true Sirname as by that of Brunne, that so Robert of Brunne might look as great as Robert of Gloucester. And that this was very great may appear from hence, that tho' many [1] Robert of Gloucesters are met with in old Registers, yet

---

[1] "One *Magister Rob. de Glocestria* was one of the Clerks or Chaplains to *John de Oxon.* and *John Grey*, Bishops of *Norwich*, and is frequently met with as Witness to their Charters from 1176. to 1204.—Bp. *Kennet* from some Register of *Bury* saith, that he was an Archdeacon in the Church of *Norwich*, about *A.D.* 1219. but this I have not yet found my self. Perhaps he was the same with the *Mr. Rob. de Gloucestr.* nominated to the Archdeaconry of *Stafford*, during the vacancy of the See of *Lichfield* (Pat. 14. Joannis m. 3. n. 2.) or with him who was Chancelor and Prebendary of *Chichester*, and died 7. *Hen.* III. (Rot. *Claus.* ejusd. anni.)—By the Institution Rolls of *Hugh Willis*, Bp. of *Lincoln*, it appears, that one *Mr. Rob. de Glovernia* was Instituted *A.D.* 1229. to the Church of *Teinton* (Archid. Oxon.)

"Another *Rob. de Glocestria* was Official to *Godfrey* Bp. of *Worcester A.D.* 1300. (Angl. Sacr. I. Annales Wigorn.) perhaps the same who was Chancelor to *Rob. Winchelse* 1304. Reg. Winch.) and to *Walter Reynolds* 1318. Archbishops of *Canterbury* (Reg. Henr. prioris Cantuar.)——

"There was one of the name Prebendary of St. *Decuman* and Canon of *Wells*, who died *A.D.* 1321. (Registr. Johannis Drokensford.)

"Another Rector of S. *Ann's Aldersgate* 1358, (Newcourt.)

"And

(as far as I can learn) they were all eclips'd by the Historian, the Acts of all of them put together being not equal to what he hath done by compiling this Work. I have already noted, that neither the Name of Robert of Gloucester, nor that of the new Modeller of the History, is any where to be seen in the MS. of the Heralds Office. But the Work being discovered to be originally this Author's, on the Back side of the Book (which is of a late Binding in rough Leather) is put in golden Capital Letters,

ROBERT *
·OF·
GLOCESTER.

§. XXV. It must be confess'd, that in one part of this MS. at the very bottom, just on the Brink of a Page, are written these Words, in an old Hand (as ancient as, tho' a little different from, that of the Book:) *Hic incipit Robertus Moille.* When I first saw these Words, I thought *Moille* had been the true Sirname of

The name of Robert Moille inserted at random, as it seems, in the MS. of the Heralds Office. That MS. concludes with some Verses that are not in Caxton.

"And in *Lib. Epist. Acad.* "*Oxon. F.* Ep. 23. Letters testimonial for *Robert Glowcester*, A.M. but this was after the year 1400.

"Many other Secular "Clerks of both Names have "occurr'd to me since 1320. "none of whom probably "was our Historian."

Hæc, meam in gratiam è Collectaneis suis à seipso descripta, cum amicissimo Bakero Cantabrigiensi (qui perquam lubenter transmisit) communicavit vir eruditissimus Thomas Tannerus, Cancellarius Norwicensis.

Robert of Gloucester, but the Words being written on a Page, where no new matter begins, and it being in a Prose part of the Book, and that too in the Story of the Saxon Times, and there being not the least reference to any Thing in the Volume, I take them as put down at random, and not to belong, in the least, to the Author. And this is all I have to say with respect to this MS. unless it be, that, after the Reign of Henry the Third, the History goes on in Prose (being the same, abating some Alterations, as usually happens in MSS. of this kind, with Caxton's Chronicle, which John Stowe [1] is pleased to style a fabulous book, compiled by a nameless Author, but printed by William Caxton, and therefore called Caxton's Chronicle) to the famous Battle of Halidowne Hill, in the Year 1332. which was the sixth Year of K. Edw. the Third's Reign, in which the English got such an intire Victory of the Scots, and slew such a vast number of them, that, the Father of the Scottish Historians, John Fordun thought it too lamentable [2] a Subject, to enter into the particulars of it. In relation to this Battle there are some Verses in this MS. that are not in Caxton, for which reason I shall here publish them, advertizing at the same time, that, tho', perhaps, formerly there were other Leaves (for there are the Remains of

[1] Annals, p. 307. Ed. fol. [2] Scotichronicon, p. 1022.

one,

one, that had been cut out, now plainly to be seen in it) in which, probably, the History had been carried somewhat farther, yet, at present, these Verses are the very last part of the History, and are brought in thus: —— and þan þe Englyſſhe mynſtrelle beryn hure tabrys, & blowyng hure trompys, and pypers pypendyn loude, and made gret ſhoute vppon þe Scottes, & þan hadde þe Englyſſhe bachelerys eche of hem two whynges of archers, þe whyche at þe aſſemble orpȳdly drawyn hure bowes, and ſo þey ſmot þe Scottes, þat þey felle to grounde by many houſandys, and anone þe Scottes by gonne to fle fro þe Englyſſhemen, for to haue hure lyues. But whan þe knabys, þat were byhynde þe Scottes, to kepe hure horſs, ſawe þe diſcomfitour, þey prikyd awey hure maiſtrys hors, to kepe hem ſelf fro perile. And þan þe Englyſſhemen toke many of þe Scottyſſhe hors, and þey priked after þe Scottes, and ſlow hem doune rȳghte, and ſo men myghte ſe þe worþy and noble kyng Edward of Engelond, and his folk, how manfully þey chaſtyde þe Scottes.

¶ There þan men myghte ſe,
Many a Scott ſwiftly fle,
And þe Englyſſhemen after prikynge,
Wiþ ſharp ſwerdys þe Scottes ſtykynge.
& þer hure banerys weryn founde
Al diſplayd lyeng on grounde.
And þay lay ſprad on blood,
As þey fought on þe flood,
That þe Englyſſhemen drent ſhold be,
For þat þey hoppyde to fle.

For ſo þey hoppyde to ſpede,
Seyng þe flood þat was on Twede.
For þe Engliſſhemen myghte not fle,
But yf adrent þey ſhold be.
& þan þerto loþ þey were,
For þey þoughte noughte in ſuche fere,
But þey kept hem on londe,
So þat þe Scottes myghte noughte ſtonde.
For þey were fillyd to grounde,
Many a þouſand in þat ſtounde.
& þe Engliſſhemen purſywid hem ſo,
Forȝt the flood was al a go;
And þus þe Scottes diſcomfytyd were
In lytil tyme wiþ gret fere.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

This Work is a great Curiosity. The Reproach in neglecting the black Letter.

§. XXVI. I have now finished what I had to say (and, I fear, I have writ too much) by way of Preface about Robert of Gloucester. He is certainly a great Curiosity, and I do not doubt, but he will be esteem'd as such. As the Acts of the Apostles, that I published from Archbishop Laud's MS. is the first intire Book, that was ever printed in England in Capital Letters, so this Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester is the very first intire Book, that was ever printed in this Kingdom (it may be, in the whole World) in the manner I have done it, that is, in the black Letter,

ter, with a mixture of some Saxon Characters, which is the very Garb that was in vogue in the Author's time. The Saxon Characters, that are intermix'd, are ȝ or ȝ, (which some represent by ȝ,) þ or tȳ (the top of which in many MSS. among which are to be reckon'd those of this Author, is made a little too short, *viz.* p, just like the Saxon double ƿ) p or ƿ (which, however, is but here and there) and ẏ or ỿ. I am very sensible, that the Obsoleteness of the Language will deterr many from Reading this very usefull Historian; but to such, as shall be pleased to make themselves acquainted with him (in order to which the Glossary, I have drawn up and subjoyn'd, may be of some service) he will appear very pleasant, entertaining and diverting, and they will value him the more, as he comes out in his primitive Dress. As it is a Reproach to us, that the Saxon Language should be so forgot, as to have but few (comparatively speaking) that are able to read it; so 'tis a greater Reproach, that the black Letter, which was the Character so much in use in our Grandfathers days, should be now (as it were) disus'd and rejected, especially when we know, the best Editions of our English Bible and Common Prayer (to say nothing of other Books) are printed in it.

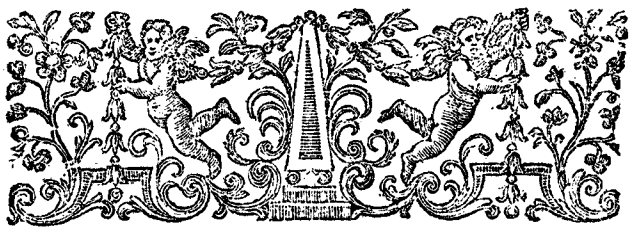
Oxford April 14.
1724.

[In the present Edition, for the convenience of the Reader, the Roman Character has been adopted.]

Advertisement.

THE first Payment for this Work to Subscribers was one Guinea the large, and half a Guinea the small, Paper. The second Payment is to be the same with the first.

The Publisher is now printing (from a MS. in the Inner-Temple Library) **Peter Langtoft's Chronicle of England** *(as illustrated and improv'd by Robert of Brunne) from the Death of Cadwalader to the end of K. Edward the First's Reign.* To which will be added, besides a Glossary and other curious Papers, (1) *A Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by King Hen. the Eighth's order and for his use.* (2) *An Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen (near Bautre) in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke, Master of that Hospital.* The Price of this Work (which will make two Volumes in 8vo. and was never before printed) will be two Guineas the large, and one Guinea the small, Paper; whereof half is to be paid at the time of Subscribing, and the rest when the Copies are delivered. Subscriptions are taken in either by the Publisher at Edmund-Hall, or by John Rance at the THEATER Printing House, in Oxford.



[1]ROBERT of GLOUCESTER's CHRONICLE.

ENGELOND [2] ys a wel god lond, ich wene of eche lond best,
Y set in þe ende of þe world, as al in þe West.
þe see goþ hym al a boute, he stont as an yle.
Here fon heo durre þe lasse doute, but hit be þorw gyle
Of [3] fol of þe selue lond, as me haþ y seye wyle.
From Souþ to Norþ he ys long eizte hondred myle:
And [4] foure hondred myle brod from Est to West to wende,
A mydde þo lond as yt be, and nozt as by þe on ende.
Plente me may in Engelond of alle gode y se,
Bute folc yt for gulte oþer zeres þe worse be.
For Engelond ys ful ynow of fruyt and of tren,
Of wodes and of parkes, þat ioye yt ys to sen.
Of foules and of bestes of wylde and tame al so.
Of salt fysch and eche fresch, and fayre ryueres þer to.
Of welles swete and colde ynow, of lesen and of mede.
Of seluer or and of gold, of tyn and of lede.

---

[1] *Adjeci.* [2] *Vide Camdeni* Remaines concerning Brittaine, | *pag.* 7. *Ed. Lond.* 1629. [3] *I. e.* folc. [4] Two *Ar.*

Of stel, of yrn and of bras, of god corn gret won.
Of whyte and of wolle god, betere ne may be non.
Wateres he haþ eke gode y now, ac[1] at "be fore alle oþer þre
Out of the lond in to þe see, armes as þei be.
Ware by þe schippes mowe come fro þe se and wende,
And brynge on lond god y now, a boute in eche ende.
Seuerne and Temese, [2]Homber ýt is þe þridde.
And þenne is as wo seiþ þe pure lond a midde.
Homber bryngeþ by Norþ muche god and wyde,
Seuerne by West[3] Souþ," Temese by þe Est syde.
So þat of god y now, þat in oþer londes ys,
þer by comeþ to Engelond, þat no defaute nýs.
Yles þer beþ mony on a boute Engelonde.
Ac þer beþ to fore alle oþere þre ich vnderstonde:
The yle of Man þat me clepuþ, by twene vs and Yrlonde;
þe grete yle of [4]Orkeneye bi ȝonde Scotlonde.
þe þridde ys, toward Normandye, þe yle of Wyȝt býSouþe.
þre þe beste ýles þese beþ and [5] mest couþe.
þe firste lordes and maystres, þat in Engelond were,
þese chef townes heo lette in Engolonde rere.
London and Euerwik, Lyncolne and Leycestre;
Colchestre and Canterbury, Bristow and Wircestre.
Chichestre and Grauntebrigge, and þanne Cirencestre;
Dorchestre and Wyncestre, and seþþe Gloucestre.
And oþer grete tounes, þat þo were in Walis.
þis was þo in Engolond [6] Brytones were y wys.

---

[1] *Deest in Ar.* [2] And Humber is the þrydde *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Orcades *Ar.* [5] Most of name couþe *Ar.* [6] þat Brutones *Ar.*

En-

Engolond haþ i be y nome and [1] i worred y lome.
First þoru grete lordes þe emperoures of Rome,
þat foȝte and wonne Engelond, and þat lond nome.
Seþþe þoru [2] Picardes and Scottes, þat to Engelond come,
þat worrede and destruiode, ac al clene ne wonne it noȝt.
Seþþe þoru Englische and Saxones, þat hider were y brouȝt
þoru Brutones forto helpe hem, and seþþe hem ouercome
þe Brytones, þat hem hyder brouȝte, & þat lond hem bi nome.
Seþþe haþ Engelond y be [3] y werred y lome
Of þe folc of Denemark, [4] þat beþ noȝt ȝet wel y some,
þat ofte wonne Engelond, and hulde yt bỳ maystrie.
þe fyfte tyme won Engelond þo folc of Normandie,
þat a mong vs woneþ ȝet, and schulleþ euer mo:
We schul here aftur in þis boke telle of al this wo.
Brytones were þe firste folc þat to Engelond come.
Foure kynges heo maden þo in þis kyndome.
þe kyng of West sex, & of Kent, & of Norþomber þe þridde,
And þe kyng of þe March, þat was here amidde.
þe Saxones and þe Englische þo heo hadden al an honde,
Fyue and þritti schiren heo maden in Engelonde.
Souþsex and Soþerei, Kent and Estsex,
Barkschire and Hamptschire, and þenne Myddelsex,
Dorsete and Wiltschire, and Somersete al so.
Deneschire and Cornewayle, and Gloucestre þer to.
Schropschire, and of Wircestre, and of Herford.
Chestre schire and [5] Warwil, Derbỳ and Stafford.

---

[1] Y wonne *pro* i worred *in Ar.* [2] Pictes *Ar.* [3] Y wer-red and y nome *Ar.* [4] þat were nought welcome *Ar.* [5] *Sic.*

Lyn-

Lyncolne ant Hontyndone, and of Bedeford.
Bockyngham and Norþamptoun, and of [1]Oxenfoþ.
Norþfolc and Soþfolc, and Grauntebrigge al so.
Hertfort & Leycestre, and Nothyngam þer to.
Euerwik and Cardoel, and Norþomburlonde.
þese schires wiþ oute Walis beþ alle in Engolonde.
Seuentene bischopriches in Engelond beþ also.
Cardoil, and Duram, and Euerwik þer to.
Of Elỳ and of Cauntarbury, of Norþwiche, of Rouchestre,
Of London, of Salusbury, of Chichestre, of Wynchestre,
Of Lyncolne, and of Chestre, and of Wircestre,
Of Herford, and of Baþe, and al so of Excestre.
þenne þer beþ in Walis þre wiþ oute more,
Scynt Dauid, and Landaf, and seþþe Bangore.
Of Euerwik and Canterbury beþ erchbischopes two.
Duram beþ and Cardoil vnder Euerwik y do.
And alle þe oþer of Engolond, and al so of Walis,
Under þe erchbischop beþ of Canterbury y wis.
þe Saxones in heore power þo heo were so riue,
Sene kynges heo maden in Engelonde, and seþen bute fyue.
þe kyng of Norþomberlond, and of Est Angle al so;
Of Kent, and of West Sex, and of þe March þer to.
þe kyng of þe March þilke tyme hadde wel þe beste,
Muche del of Engolond, þe on half al bi Weste.
Wircestre schire, and Warwik, and also of Gloucestre,
þat ys nez al þe bischop riche of Wircestre.
He hadde eke þer to Chesturschire, and Derbyschire also,
And Stafford schire, þat beþ alle in on bischopriche y do,

[1] *L.* Oxenford.

In

In þe bischop riche of Chestre; and ȝet he hadde þer to
Schropschire som, and half Warwik schire al so.
þis kyng hadde eke Herfortschire, þat on bischopriche is;
Ac Schropschire naþ haluendel to þilke bischopriche i wis.
And som of Gloucestre schire, and of Warwik schire al so.
ȝet hadde þe kyng of þe March wel more lond þer to,
Northamptschire, & Bokyngham, and þe schire of Oxenfort;
Leycetre, and Lyncolne, and þe schire of Hertfort;
þat is al on bischopriche, þat of Lyncolne ys,
þat wule was at Dorchestre bi syde Oxenfort iwis.
ȝet hadde þe kyng of þe March Notyngham schire þer to,
In þe bischop riche of Euerwik, ac þo nas hit noȝt so.
And al Walis ȝet þer to, þat a gret lond ys:
Al þis was þenne y cleped the March of Walis.
For þat lond þat bi twene Homber & the water of Temese y wis
Ich wene in þe bischop riche of Lyncolne ys.
And þe bischop riche of Lyncolne, and bi West al þat lond,
þe kyng som tyme of þe March hadde al in hys hond.
þe kyng of West sex hadde þo al Wilt schire y wys,
And Dorsete and Barkschire, þat o bischopriche is.
þe bischopriche of Salesbury, & al Souþsex, he hadde also,
þe welde & al þe bischopriche of Chichestre þer to.
And Souþampschire & Soþereÿ, þat on bischop riche ys.
þe bischopriche of Wynchestre, þat ȝet ys þere y wys.
And Somersete, þat to Welles þike tyme drow,
And now ys þe bischop riche of Baþe, ȝe wyteþ wel y now.
Seþþe hadde þe kyng of West sex al Denene schire ý wys,
And Cornewayle, þat in þe bischopriche of Exetre ys.

þe kyng of Kent was þo kyng of al þo lond of Kent,
þer were two bischopes, & ȝet nys it noȝt y went.
þe bischopriche of Canterbury, þat of Engelond ys hext,
And þe bischopriche of Roucestre, þat in the West syde is next,
þe kyng of Est Angle kyng was of Northfolc,
þe bischopriche of Northwych, and al so of Soþfolc.
And of þe bischopriche of Ely, þat þe yle of Ely ys,
And of al Cambrugge schire, þat þerto falleþ y wys.
þe kyng of Northumburlonde kyng was ich vnderstonde
Of al þo lond bi ȝonde Homber anon in to Scotlonde.
þese fyue kynges were þo, ac bute on now þer nys.
For þe kyng of West sex al þe oþer wan y wys,
And was seþþe al one kyng, as oure kyng now ys.
Here afturward in þis bok me schal here al *þis*.
In [1] þe contre of Canterbury mest plente of fysch ys.
And mest [2] chase a boute Salesburi of wylde bestes y wys.
At London schippes mest, & wyn at Wyncestre.
At Herford schep & orf, & fruyt at Wircestre.
Sope a boute Couyntre, yrn at Gloucestre.
Metel, [3] as led & tyn, in þe contre of Excestre.
Euerwik of fairest wode, Lyncolne of fayrest men,
Grantebrugge and Hontyndone mest plente of dup fen.
Ely of fairest [4] place, of fairest siȝte Roucestre.
Euene aȝeyn Fraunce stonde þe contre of Chichestre,
Norwiche aȝeyn Denemarc, Chestre aȝeyn Yrlond,
Duram aȝeyn Norwei, as ich vnderstonde.

---

[1] *Vide* Camden's Remaines, *p.* 8. [2] Chalke at Saresbu. ry, & wild bestes y wys *Ar.* [3] And *pro* as *in Ar.* [4] Plate *Ar.*

þre

þe wondres þer beþ in Engolond, none more y not.
þat water of Baþe ys þat on, þat euer ys yliche hot.
[1]And fersch & euere springe, ne be chele no so gret.
Suche baþes þer beþ fele in þe clos & in þe stret."
Upon þe pleyn of Salesbury þat oþer wonder ys,
þat [2]Stonhyngel ys y clepud, no more wonder nys.
þe stones stondeþ þer so grete, no more ne mowe be,
Euene vp ryȝt & swyþe hye, þat wonder it is to se:
And oþer liggeþ hye aboue, þat a mon may be of a ferd,
þat vche mon wondre maý how heo were first a rered.
For noþer gyn, ny monne's strengþe, yt þynkeþ, ne myȝte yt do.
Telle me schal here afturward of þis wondres boþe two,
And how heo were first y mad. þe þridde wonder ys
Up þe hul of þe pek. Norþ wynd þere y wys
Out of the erþe ofte comeþ, of holes as yt were,
And bloweþ vp of þilke holes, so þat yt wolde a rere
And bere vp grete cloþes, ȝef heo were þer ney,
And blowe hem here and þere vpon þe lofte on heý.
Fayre [3]weyes monyon þer beþ in Engolonde,
Ac foure mest of alle þer beþ ich vnderstonde,
þat þe olde kynges mad, wer þoru me may wende
From þe on ende of Engelond uorþ to þe oþer ende.
From þe Souþ tilleþ in to þe Norþ [4]Eningestret;
And from þe Est in to þe West Ikenildestrete.

---

[1] *Desunt in Ar.* [2] Stonhenge *Ar.* [3] *Vide Dugdalii* Antiquities of Warwickshire, *p.* 6. & *Ductorem nostrum Historicum, Vol. II. p.* 77. [4] Ermingstreet *vulgo.* *At in Ar.* lyne *pro* Eningestret *habemus. Sic enim illic:*

Lyne me clepeth eke thulke wey, he goth thorgh Glouceter,
And thorgh Circetre euene also,

From Douere in to Chestre tilleþ Watlingestrete,
From Souþ Est in to Norþ West, and þat ys som del grete.
þe ferþe is mest of alle, þat tilleþ from Tottenais,
From þe on ende Cornewayle anon to Catenays,
Fro þe Norþ Est in to Souþ West in to Engelonde's ende:
Fosse me clepuþ þike wey, þat by mony god toun doþ wende,
So clene [1] lond ys Engolond, and so pur with outen ore,
þat þe fairest men of þe world þer inne beþ y bore.
[2] So clene, and fair, & purwyt, among oþer men heo beþ,
þat me knoweþ hem in eche lond bi syȝte, where me hem seþ.
So clene al so is þat lond, & monne's blod so pur,
þat þe gret vnel comeþ not þer, þat me clepuþ þo [3] holy fur,
þat [4] for" freteþ monnes lymes, ryȝt as heo were [5] brende.
Ac men of France in þilke vnel [6] me syþ sone a mende,
ȝef heo ben brouȝt in to Engolond: war þorw me may wyte,
þat Engelond ys lond best, as yt is y write.

---

also, and thorgh Wynchestre. *Verum his de viis videsis tractatum egregium, (ab Amico doctissimo Rogero Galeo scriptum, & à nobis in VI. Volumine Itinerarii Lelandi editum,) cui titulus,* "An Essay towards the Recovery of the Courses of the four great Roman ways," *ubi (p. 106.) fragmentum Roberti nostri de iisdem, ad fidem Codicis Digbeiani, exstat.*

[1] A lond *Ar.* [2] So clene, so whyte, so fayr of hew, among *Ar.* [3] Wilde fuyr *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] For brende *Ar.* [6] Ofte me sykþ amende *Ar.*

FRO þe by gynnyng of þe world, to þe tyme þat now is,
Sene ages þer habbeþ y be, as sene tyme y wys.
þe firste age & tyme was from oure firste fader Adam
To Noe, & seþþe þo oþer from Noe to Abraham.
þe þridde was from Habraham forte Moyses com,
þe ferthe fro Moyses to Dauid kyndom.
þe fyfþe was from Dauid to þe transmigracion
Of Babilonye, & þe sixþe to þe incarnacion,
þat is, forte God was y bore. þe sene was & ys
From oure Lorde's burþe time to þe worlde's ende y wys.
[1]þo Adam was first y mad, & hys of spryng wex wyde,
Heo by gonne at þe on ende of þe world, al in þe Est syde.
Seþþe it wex wyde a boute, fro lond to londe,
So þat in þe þridde age it wes er it come to Engelonde.
For in þe tyme bi twene Abraham & Moyses it was,
þat men come to Engolond. ich wol telle ȝou þat cas.

A Batayle þer was while in þe contre of Rome,
þe meste þat euer was, as me haþ herd y lome:
þe bataile of Troie, þat laste fele ȝer.
Mony was þe gode body, þat y slawe was þer.
For þer nas knyȝt in monylonde, ny stalewarde man,
þat in þe o syde þer was; & al for a[2] wommon,

---

[1] After þat Adam maked was his ofspryng wax wyde, At on eynde of þe worlde hit gan in þe Est syde *Ar.*

[2] Womman *Ar.*

þat Elyne was y clepud, þis bataile first bi gan.
An hey mon þer was by fore, þat me clepude Dardan.
Of hym com þe gode Bruyt, þat was þe firste man
þat lord was in Engelond, as y ȝou telle can.
Dardan bi get Troye, þat god mon was & wys.
Troie bi get Priamus, & al so Anchis.
þese were in þis batail of mest myȝt and mayn.
Anchis bi get Eneas, and Eneas Ascayn.
Ascayn bi get Silui, of whom þe Brut com.
For Eneas aftur þe bataile Ascayn ys sone nom,
And Silui Ascaine's sone, & oþer þat þer were,
In to þe lond of Lumbardy wende, & wonede forþ þere.
þo Silui hadde bi gete a child, fayn he wolde y wyte,
What mon þat child schulde be, þat he hadde y gete.
A clerk þoru enchantement hym bi gan to telle,
[1]þat þe schulde first fader and moder quelle:
And seþþe he schulde mony lond ouer passe and wende,
And mony bataile ouer come, and seþþe, at þe ende,
To a noble lond he scholde come, & þere al lord be,
And kynges come of hys blod, & þat me schulde se.
[2]þat Eneas bi gan hys of spryng to Lumbardie first brynge
þre þousant & sixe & tuenti ȝer fro þo worlde's bi gynnynge.
þo þe clerk hadde y seid hys enchaunterye,
þer fore Silui hym let sle. ac þat was lytel maistrie.

---

[1] þat þat childe sholde furst *Ar.* [2] þre þousend yer and foure skor fram þe worlde's gynnynge Was, byfore þat Eneas hys tem to Itaille þus gan brynge. þo þis clerk hadde y sed al hys enchaunterye, Siluius let hym sle. litel was þat maistrye. *Ar.*

For

For hit com ner þe later, as he hadde y seyd.
For [1] in trauayl of hys beryng hys moder was first ded.
þo þis child was y bore, me lette hym clepe [2] Bruyt.
First lord he was in Engolond, of wham me spekeþ [3] ȝet.
þe child wex & wel þrof, as þe clerk seyde er.
Seþþe þo yt hadde þe elde of fyftene ȝer,
As he wolde schete an hert, al a ȝeyn hys wille
To deþe he schet ys owne fader, þat he lay þer stille.
Hit hym for þouȝte sore y now, ac noþeles ȝet he was
Out of þat lond ydriue for þat deolful cas.
In to þe lond of Grece he wende, [4] & þo wonede he þere
Of þe kynde of Priamus mony men, þat þor were,
þat wer þer of hys nexte blode, þat were þer in seruage.
Here elderne þer by fore were y nome in ostage
Fram þe bataile of Troie, in wreche as it were,
For þe grete slauȝt and wo, þat here kynde dude þere.
[5] þe Bruyt among hem com, to such prowes he drow,
þat [6] al þe kyn, þat hym say, hadde of him joye ynow.
So þat at þe laste, þo he [7] in stat was,
And þem þouȝte, þat ys pere in þe world nas,
þe folc of þat ilke blode aboutein hym drowe faste,
þat he scholde ys owne kynde of þat seruage caste.
[8] Heo comen alle a bouten hym, so þat þe Brut y sey,
þat heo were of gret power, & noble folc & hey,

[1] In trauail as he was bore, his moder was þo deed *Ar. è regione vero (in margine) manu recentiori*, his mother dyed in childe bede. [2] Brut *Ar.* [3] Yut *Ar.* [4] And þenne fond he þere *Ar.* [5] þo þat Brut *Ar.* [6] Al his kyn, þat wisten hit, þer of had ioye y now *Ar.* [7] Manne's stat *Ar.* [8] Hy come al a bouten hym, & whanne hem alle he sey,

Heo ȝarkeden hem to gedere, þat a fair ost yt was.
To þe kyng of Grece he sende, þat hatte Pandras,
þat heo scholde so noble folc, þat of so gret blod come,
Out of seruage lete, and out of þraldome,
[1] Or hym ne schulde not wondrỳ, þaỳ heo dude here myȝt
With here bodies, þat aȝte be so free, for to wynne here ryȝt.
Þo kynge hadde in hys þoȝt gret [2] bysmar of þis kyng.
Bellum. He [3] ȝarkede is ost anon, to grounde hem to bryng.
þis Brut a ȝeyn hym with ys ost wel wyssyche drowe.
[4] Heo smyton þer a batayle hard and strong ynow.
þe prowes þat þe Brute dude no tonge no telle ne maỳ,
Monỳ was þe gode body þat hym self slou þat daỳ.
What halt yt longe to telle? Hys fon he ouercom,
Capcio regis. And Pandras, þe stronge kyng, as [5] pryson he nom.
þis kyng þo he was y nome, here wille dude anon,
[6] And broȝte hem out of þraldom, þo he say non oþer won.
He by gan to loue Brut so muche, for ys faire cheiance,
þat he wyllede, mest of alle þynge, to hym enlyance.
" Brut," he seyde, " þou art now þe beste body þat ys.
" For þe noble kyn, of wom þou art, & for þi prowes y wis,
" Ych obligi me to þe, and my kyndom al so.
" A doȝter ich haue of gret prys, & noble & god al so,
" Y ȝeue here þe to þi wyf, &, ȝef þou wolt by leue here,
" þe þridde del [7] my kyndom y ȝeue þe to be my fere.

Hỳm þoughte he hadde power y now of noble folk & hey. He gaderede hem alle to gedere faste, a fayr oste þer was *Ar.*

[1] Oþer hym ne sholde nought wondry, þough hy, for hure ryht, Wiþ hure bodies make hem fre dude þer to hure myght *Ar.* Skorne *Ar.* [3] Ordeyned *Ar.* [4] Hy *Ar.* [5] Prisoner *Ar.* [6] þo he non oþer bote y sey, he yaff hem hure fredom *Ar.* [7] Of my *Ar.*

" And

" And ȝef þou nylt not here be, ac wolt ȝet fonde more,
" Gold & seluer ich wol þe ȝeue, & y now of eche store:
" And take [1] þe my doȝter: for mon þou art y wys,
" To wynne ȝet a kyndom, wel beter þan myn ys.
þis kyng & þe Brut were at on, þat to wyf he tok
Hys doȝter Innogen, ac hys lond he for sok. Sponsacio Innogen.
[2] þe kyng tok Brut ys owne body, in ostage as yt were,
For te hit were to gedere y broȝt al þat [3] he wolde a rere.
He lette sende hys messageres in to al Grece wel wyde,
And [4] lette fulle corn, and oyl, & wyn, by [5] iche syde.
[6] Me chargede þre hondret schippes, & foure & twenti þer to,
þer wyþ, & mid al oþer god þat myȝt þer inne do.
þo þis schippes ȝare were, and ful of [7] ruche gode,
And þis mayde y spoused was of so [8] riche blode;
þe kyng de lyuerede þat folk out of seruage, Recessus Bruti.
And Brut de liuerede þe kyng out of hys ostage,
And nom hys leue fayre of hym, and þonkede hym all gode,
And nom with hym al þat folk, þat he fond þer of hys blod,
And hys wyf Innogen, and to schip wende,
[9] Heo nuste toward wuche lond, but as God hem sende.
þe deol þat made Innogen, no tonge ne telle ne may.
Heo cryede and wep with sorwe y now, & ofte y swone lay.
[10] þo ho wende from al hire kyn, & from al þing þat heo knew,
And nuste on erþe whiderward, bute as þe wynd hem blew,
And wiste þat heo ne schulde neuer a geyn com ny go,
Ne se fader, ny oþer kyn, lord! þat hire was wo?

[1] To þe my doughter, for noble þou ert and wys, *Ar.* [2] þe kyng to Brut his body toke, *Ar.* [3] Hy *Ar.* [4] Het *Ar.* [5] Euery *Ar.* [6] He *Ar.* [7] Eche *Ar.* [8] Heygh *Ar.* [9] þey *Ar.* [10] When sheo wende *Ar.*

Brut hire cluppede and cussede, & comfortede hire y now,
[1] þat he ne myȝte hire herte change, þat heo to sore ne drow.
Twey dayes [2] heo wende in þe se fro the lond of Grece,
[3] So þat heo comen to an yle, þat me clepuþ Leogece.
þider [4] heo gonne ryue, and Brut sende vp þere
þre hondred men y armed wel, to loke wat lond yt were.
þis men wende a boute wyde, & mon fonde [5] heo non,
Bute faire contre & wylde bestes mony on.
A temple [6] heo fonde fair y now, & a mawmed a midde,
[7] þat ofte tolde wonder gret, & wat þing mon bi tidde.
þis men of þis wylde bestes caȝte & schete y nowe,
And to a store hem of mete faste to schip drowe.
[8] Of þe mamet heo tolden Brut, þat heo fonden þere,
And he nom with hym tuelue men þe beste þat with hym were,
And a clerk þat kouþe enchantement, & to þis temple drowe,
And offrede to þis mamet, and [9] honourede hym ynowe,
[10] And" [11] forte wyte in what stude hys wonyng were.
þo he hadde hys bone y do, he fel on slepe ryȝt þere.
Hym þouȝte þe ymage in hys slep tolde hym hys cheance.
" Brut," he saide, " passe norþe al þe lond of France
" West, toward þike stude as þe sonne draweþ aȝen eue.
" þer þou schalt fynden a place [12] god in to byleue.

---

[1] He ne myghte hure sorwe slake nought, to sorwe so heo drow *Ar. omisso* þat. [2] He saileyde *Ar.* [3] Fort he come to *Ar.* [4] þey *Ar.* [5] Hy *Ar.* [6] Hy *Ar.* [7] þat Dyane godesce cleped was, and tolde ofte what bi tydde *Ar.* [8] Of þat godesce hy tolde Brut, þat hy *Ar.* [9] Worsheped *Ar.* [10] *Omittit Ar.* [11] Forto *Ar.* [12] Good and fair inne to byleue *Ar.*

" An

" An ẏle god & riche y nowe, þe se goth al a boute:
" Wule þat lond was ẏ fulled with [1] geandes strong & proude.
" And now yt ys as a wildernesse, for no mon ther inne nys.
" To þe it wole be god and riche, & to alle þyne y wys.
" And yt worþ an oþer Troie to þe, and so god,
" þat þer schul kynges come & springe of þi blod.
þo Brut a wok of hys slep, & al þis vnder stod,
Hys men he tolde al þis cas with wel [2] bliþe mod.
Heo ȝarkeden hem & wenden uorþ, þe wynd was god y noȝ,
So þat toward þe West here schippes euene drowȝ.
So þat [3] with þritty dayes to Affric heo come,
[4] And arst heo wende vp on þe lond, & fette hem prey y lome,
And foȝte & slowe muche folk, for no mon hem at stod.
From Affric þei wente uorþ with the wynd þat was god.
So þat heo fonden in a stude here kynrede bi cas
[5] Of noble mon Hercules, þat wyle of Troie was.
Corineus hatte here souereyn, þat so strong was of honde,
þat hym ne myȝte no mon ne geant at stonde.
þo þis folc to gadere com, and Brut Corineus fond
þo strengest mon & þe meste þat hym þoȝte in eny lond,
[6] Heo a coyntede hym a non, and bi comen frendes gode,
Boþe for here prowes, and for heo were of on blode.
þo þis company was strong, & more þan hit was er,
Al in on company heo wenden uorþ þer
In þe see with god wynd, so þat at þe laste
In to þe on ende of Gasycone þe wynd here schippes caste.

---

[1] Geauntz ferce & proute *Ar.* [2] Joyful *Ar.* [3] Byþynne *Ar.* [4] And þer hy wende eft a londe, and hure preye nome *Ar.* [5] Of þe noble *Ar.* [6] Hy a queyntede *Ar.*

Corineus þis stronge mon to hondred men with hym nom,
And wende [1] on lond to honty þo he to lond com,
[2] Forte porchase hem mete, and þe kyng Goffare
(þat was kyng of þe lond) þo he was ware,
þat such folk was y armed (as me seyde) & ryuen vp hys lond,
And nuste wat folk it was, to hem he sende hys sonde,
To wyte, weþer [3] he wold pes, oþer [3] heo nolde non.
þe messageres [4] þei wenden uorþ metten hem ech on.
Corineus with hys company as heo dude honte þere,
Heo aschede at Corineus, how heo so hardi were,
To honte vp þe kynge's lond, bute he leue hem ȝeue.
Corineus saide, þat he nolde nomon asche leue,
To [5] honto and to wynne hys mete, & habbe solas & game.
þe maister of þe messageres ([6] Imberd was ys name)
[7] Bende ys bowe & schette a non to Corineus to gronde.
Corineus tok hys bowe of hym, & smot hym a wonde
A bouen on þe scolle with ys owne bowe a non,
þat þe scolle to breke in peses mony on.
Hys felawes þo heo say þis bi gonne to fle echon,
And tolde þe kyng fore how the game was al igon.
þe kyng [8] made hym wroȝ y now, & no wonder yt was,
þat strange men in hys owne londe dude hym such trespas,
þat a sailede ys lond, and to robbery drowe,
And robbede ys bestes and ys game, and hys men slowe.

---

[1] Up to hunty *Ar.* [2] Forto *Ar.* [3] Hy *Ar.* [4] As hy wende forþ mette hem *Ar.* [5] *L.* honte. [6] Hymbert *Ar.* [7] Bende his bowe to shete hym, & Corneus in þat stounde. Bynam Hymbert his bowe anon, & ryght hym one wounde Right euene vpon þe skulle *Ar.* [8] Hym made wroþ ynow, *Ar.*

He

He wende with al ys power, and sailede hem a non. Bellum.
And Brut & Corineus [1] prest were, and here men echon;
And smyten a batail so strong, þat no tonge telle may
þat folk, þat þer was y slawe on eyþer side þat day.
Corineus ys [2] swert sone brac, so strong he smot & faste.
For no swerd myȝte with ys dunt none lengur laste.
Mid hym he hadde a stronge axe, þat mony mon broȝte to deþe,
So strong & so gret, þat an oþer hit scholde hebbe vn neþe.
Corineus þer with harde smot & sturede [3] hym a boute,
And made his wey bi eiþer syde, and percede þe route.
Mid þre hondred knyȝtes a duk, þat het Siward,
A sailede Corineus hymself [4] a forward.
He smot Corineus harde y noȝ, þat he hit sore felde,
And ȝet he hente þe stroc muche del vp on þe schelde.
Corineus was þo somdel wroþ, ys axe on hey he drow,
And smot hym vpon þe hed mid god ernest y now,
[5] And for clef al þat hed, & the bodi a non to gronde.
þo myȝte Siward segge, þat he hadde ys [6] is " pere y fonde.
þo Corineus [7] was alles wroþ, so grete strokes he ȝaf,
þat þe body of eche þat he smot or þe hed he to clef,"
Oþer he smot of þe [8] arm, or þe hond, or þe heued:
No lym þat he smot [9] mid þe bodi bi leued.
Amty place he made a boute, [10] & folc fleu hym faste.
A wonder maister [11] he was on, þat hem so kowþe a gaste.

[1] A redy were, to meten hem echon *Ar.* [2] Sword *Ar.* [3] Hym swyþe aboute *Ar.* [4] Al a voreward *Ar.* [5] He for cleuede al þat heued, his body fel to grounde *Ar.* [6] *Redundat.* [7] Was forsoþ so wroþ, þat such duntes he yaf, þat euery þat he hitte aright, his deþ forsoþ he haþ *Ar.* [8] Eren *Ar.* [9] Was wiþ *Ar.* [10] þe folk fleygh fulfaste *Ar.* [11] þere he was, þat hem *Ar.*

So faste he slow of þis men, and to gronde caste,
þat þe kyng with a fewe men hymself flew at þe laste.
þo þe batail was y do, Brut and þis Corineus
A storede hem a bout of richesse and chateus,
Of corn, of wyn, of alle god, & to schippe faste drowe,
And brende þe contre, and þe folc faste slowe.
þo heo hadde al bare imad þe contre al aboute,
And [1] heo wel y stored, of noþing þei were in doute;
Heo wende to schip anon, & euene gonne drýue
To þe contrei of Toures, & þere þei gonne a riue.
A fair place heo cheson hem, & þere heo gonne a rere
Walles wyde and strong ynow, casteles as hit were,
And a storede hit wel y now, & here god þer inne bere,
For to a bide þe kyng, ȝef he wolde a sayle hom þere.
þe kyng Goffar þiderward gret power and ost nom
Of France and of oþer londes, and toward Toures come.
þo [2] heo seye þe grete walles, casteles as it were,
Ou! he seide, þe grete despit, þat y se to me here,
þat [3] þis file and komelynges casteles leteþ rere
Op on my lond baldeliche, as me for to a fere.
Ne doþ heo me schame ynoȝ. how myȝte heo do more?
Bute y be þer of a wreke, ý schal dye for sore.
For Gode's loue, staleworþe men, armeþ ȝou faste,
To sle þese komlynges, and here casteles a doun caste.
þis folc hem armede anon, and baneres gonne rere,
And departede here ost in twolf partyes þere.

---

[1] Hem self *pro* heo *in Ar.* [2] He *Ar.* [3] þese foule kemelynges *Ar.*

Brut

Brut ordeynede ys ost, and sette hem wyslyche,
And with god herte a ȝeyn þe folc wende baldeliche.
þere heo smyton a batail, harde and strong ynow,
And þis folc of Troie of þe Frensche faste slow,
ȝe two þousand and mo in a lytul stonde,
So þat þe Frenche were neȝ y brouȝt to gronde.
And naþeles here [1] ferd wax faste a boute wyde, Bellum.
For heo hadde suche þritti men, as were on þe [2] oþer.
For here power and here ost wax euere so faste,
þat þis gode folk of Troie ouer come were at þe laste,
And flow into here casteles, þo heo nadde oþer won.
þe ost withoute of France bi segede hem a non,
And bi lai hem so faste, þat neȝ to gronde hem broȝte.
So þat Brut and Corineus an quoyntyse hem by þoȝte,
[3] þat þis Corineus bi nyȝt wende out with gret route
At a posterne stilleliche, þat heo nuste it not with oute.
A morwe Brut with inne with ys ost out drowe,
And smot with þis Frensche men batayle strong y now.
þere were mony þousand [4] slawe in a stonde.
Brut hadde a [5] neueu, þat mony broȝte to gronde.
For he slow mid his power, and [6] broȝte to schame,
Six hondred, as me seiþ, [7] Tourus was ys name.
At þo last he was hym self y slawe, þer was deol y nowȝ.
þo þe batail was ney y do, Corineus uorþ hym drowȝ,
With six þousant noble men, out of an wode þere,
And com vp þis Frenssche men, þo heo al weri were,

1 Ost *Ar.* 2 *Adde*, syde. 3 þat þis Corneus sholde out wende by nyghte wiþ *Ar.* 4 A slawe in a litel stounde *Ar.* 5 Cosyn *Ar.* 6 Broughte eke to *Ar.* 7 Tours *Ar.*

And

And slow hem to gronde al for noȝt, so þat at þe laste,
Heo, þat myȝte of scape, bi gone to fle faste:
And heo of Troye siwede with oute eny feyntyse,
For wen þe strengþe faileþ, me mot take quoyntyse.
[1]þe Brut and Corineus hadde here wylle of þis þing,
Heo lette here men, þat were y slawe, faire on erþe bryng.
And Tours þe gode knyȝt, þat so muche folc er slowȝ,
Brut lette brynge on erþe with honoure y nowȝ,
And lette a fair tabernacle in honour of hym rere,
And fair hous al abouten hym, & bi gan þe cite þere,
þat noble cite was and ys, and for Tours þat þer lay
þe cite me clepede Tours, as me doþ ȝet to þis day.

BRUT & Corineus þo he hade here wille in al þe londe,
He [2]wende & saide al a boute, for noþing myȝte hem atstonde.
Heo chargede here schippes faste and wel with alle gode,
And wende uorþ with god wynd & wel dryuyng flode;
And driue euer West ward, so þat in god pais
Heo come here to Engolond to [3]hauene of Tottenais,
To þe on ende of Engolond, as in þe West Souþe,
[4]A lute bi fore Cornewail, as is an hauene's mouþe.
þis was þre þousant, and foure score, and þre ȝer
From þat þo world was first mad, þat [5]þat " heo ariuede þer.

---

[1] þo *Ar.* [2] Wende a boute & preyede faste, ne myght hem nought astonde *Ar.* [3] þe hauene *Ar.* [4] A lyte by Norþe Cornewaille, in Deueneshire hit is couþ. Hit was þre þousand *Ar.* [5] *Redundat.*

And

And er God were y bore euene yt was al so
[1] Ellene hondred ȝer and þritti ȝer and two.
þus com to Engelond þe firste men y wis,
þat euere wonede in Engelond, þat were Brut & hys.
þo Brut and his men þus come first a londe,
Heo wende a boute wyde þe [2] contreis forto fonde.
Gret plente heo fonde of fissch, as heo wente, by þe weye,
Of wodes and of riuers, as is in þe contreȳ.
Lond heo fonde god y now to tilie, and alle god,
So þat [3] to bi leue þer here herte fel and stod.
[4] Heo fonden a vewe geandes, for broide men as yt were. Gigantes.
In to Cornewaile heo driue hem, in to olde diches þere.
Heo howsede and bulde faste, and erede and sewe,
So þat in lutel while gode cornes hem grew.
Corn & fruyt hem wex ynow, & fisch ynow þei fonde,
And of flesch, so þat heo were riche y now in astonde.
Bruyt bad Corineus forto chese of eche contre ywis,
Wuch hym were leuest to habbe to hym and to hys. Corineus elegit Cornubiam.
Cornewaile hym likede best, þerfore he ches þere
To hym and to hys ospryng, [5] & for þer geandes were."
For he willede to fyȝte with geandes, & do hem schame.
þat londe he clepude Cornewaile, aftur hys owne name,
Cornewaile aftur Corineus, and in þis maner y wys
Corineus bi wan Cornewaile, to hym and to hys.

---

1 Eneleuene hundred hit was, & þrytty yer þer to (*omisso* two) *in Ar.* 2 Contrey *Ar.* 3 þer to byleue hure hertes wel stood *Ar.* 4 Geauntes a fewe hy fonde her, vnmete men as hit were *Ar.* 5 þe Geauntes to a fere *Ar.*

Brut

Brut huld to hym Engelond, he ne durste [1] hym not playne,
And aftur Brut ys owne [2] nome he clepede hit Breteyne.
Brytones me clepude alle men þat were of Engelond,
As me clepede hem longe seþþe [3] for to now late ich vnder-
stonde."

Gogmagog. GOGGOMAGOG was a geand swiþe grete and strong.
A boute four & twenti fet me seiþ he was long.
A gret ok he wolde [4] breide a doun, as it a smal ȝerde were,
And bere forth in his hond, [5] þat folc forte a fere.
He com with twenti geandes, and a sailede Brut faste.
Brut with ys power slow þis geandes at þe laste,
Alle bute Gogmagog, for hym ne slow he noȝt;
For he schulde with Corineus wrastele he hadde y þouȝt.
[6] So þat Corineus and he to gedere were y broȝt,
Luctacio. þe wrastolyng bi twene hem was som del toȝt.
þer was mony a strong breid, so þat ribbes þre
þe geant brek of Corineus, as me myȝte þer y se.
In þe riȝt syd two, and in þe lift syde on.
þo was Corineus somdel wroþ. he sterede hym a non,
And gripte þis geant, and to an hey roche hym drow,
þat stod a boue þe see an hey, & þer a doun hym [7] slow.
So þat he was al to raced pecemel in a stonde,
Eche lym from oþer, among þe roches, er he com to gronde.

---

[1] Hym no þyng playne *Ar.*
[2] Name *Ar.* [3] Fort Saxones gonne hit fonde *Ar.*
[4] Braye a doun Ar. alto a fere *Ar.* [5] þe folk
[6] þo *Ar.*
[7] Flough *Ar.*

þat

þat Corineus was al one lord of Cornewaile þo.
Wan þe geandes were alle y slawe, þat þer bi leuede no mo,
Brut wende forþ into Engolond, and aspiede vp and doun
For to seche an ese place, to make an heued toun.
He com and fond al vp Temese a place fair y now,
In god contre & plenteus, þat is herte muche to droȝ,
þat [1] þe [/] schippes miȝte from eche lond bryng [2] to [/] god ywis.
þer he rerede hys heued toun, þat London i clepud is:
Ac so ne clepude he yt noȝt, bute þe Newe Troie.
þer habbeþ kynges and moni oþer ofte y be in ioie.
Brut þis noble prince sones hadde þre
By hys wyf Innogen, noble men and fre:
Locryn, and Kamber, and Albanak al so.
At þe laste dyede Brut, þo al þis was y do,
Aftur þat he com to Engelond in þo four & twentiþe ȝer.
Y buryed he was at London, þat he lette first rere.
þis lond was deled a þre among þre sones y wys,
Bi West Seuerne Kamber hadde, and so al Walis.
Albanak bi ȝonde Homber: ac Locryn hadde best
Al out that lond bi twene hem, fro þe Est to þe West:
For þat he was eldeste, me lokede hym best by riȝt.
þese were as þre kynges, and men of muche myȝte.
þe kyng of Hungri [3] seþþe com, Homber was ys name,
In to Scotlond to werre, and do Albanak schame,
And werrede vp hym faste, and at the laste hym sloȝ.
þo Locryn herde þis, sort he wes y noȝ.
Aftur hys broþer Camber hasteliche he sende,
And boþe with gret ost to ward the kyng wende.

Incepcio Londini.

Obitus Bruti.

Bellum.

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] *Suþ Ar.*

He

He smyte a batail strong ynow (ne strengor myȝte be)
So þat Homber kyng of Hungri [1] seþþe bi gan to fle
In to a gret water þer, & a dreynt hym self with schame;
þar fore me clepude þat Water þo Homber, aftur hys name,
As me deþ ȝet, and euer more wole, for þe cas
þat Homber, kyng of Hungri, þer ynne a dreynt was.
þo Locryn hadde al his wille, he a storede wel ys lond
Mid Homber kynge's god, þat [2] me of hys fond.
þo fond [3] he þre damyseles, gent and fair ynowȝ,
þat Homber with hym broȝte, to þe on ys herte drow,
þat was of hem cheuenteyn, and þe kynge's doȝter was
Of Germanie, as hym þouȝte, in þe World hire pere nas,
So whit, ne of such colour, ny in eche maner so gent.
Kyng Locryne's herte was al clene vp hire y went,
And tok hire forþ with hym mid gret honour y nowȝ,
And þoȝte hire to spouse, so ys herte to hire droȝ.
Ac Corineus, duk of Cornewaile, [4] wroȝ y now was
Toward kyng Locryn, þo he herde þis cas.
For he hadde hym a forward hys doȝter habbe to wyue,
Hys gret axe he nom in hys hond, & to hym [5] hyede bi lyue.
His axe þo he to hym com, so grisliche he schok & faste,
þat þe kyng quakede & ys men, so sore heo were a gaste.
" Sei (he seide) Locryn, wat þenkestow for to do?
" þenkestow me Corineus to bi traye so?
" Hast þou for ȝete þe gret wo, and þe mony harde wonde,
" þat ich habbe y þoled for þi fader, & [6] þe [7] mony luþer stonde,

---

[1] Sone *Ar.* [2] He *Ar.* [3] Men *pro* he *in Ar.* [4] Wroth *Ar.* [5] ẏede as blyue *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] Wicked *Ar.*

" For

" For to wynne hym lond & ȝou, and þou hast now forsake
" My doȝter, þat schulde be þi wif, & to a kemelyng take?
" þou ne schalt (bi hym þat made [1] me) of scapie so lyȝte,
" þe while þer ys in my ryȝt hond enỳ strengþe & myȝte;
" And while y may þer wyt myn hond axe vp drawe,
" Wher with ich habbe geandes mony on y slawe.
He bi gan to schake ys axe, for to smyte anon,
Ac knyȝtes criede, & ȝede bi twene hem mony on.
So þat þo kyng Locryn vnder fong wel fayn
And spousede [2] hys doȝter, that hette Guendoleyn, Sponsacio filiæ Corinei.
And [3] dude al his wille, (for he lokede so [4] rowe,)
More for eye þan for loue, (mony mon seruęþ howe)
And noȝt for þan þat oþer maide he louede more y now,
Astrild hire name was, and more to hire he drow.
He made hire vnder erþe a wonyng coynteliche,
And huld hire þer to his wylle longe priuiliche,
And drow to hire wan he wolde, þat no mon yt nuste,
Bute it were eny priue mon, þat hys priuite al wyste.
Whan he wolde to hire go, to hys mayne he seyde,
þat he wolde to his Godes his ofryng lede,
[5] And þat he hadde, to honoure hem, a priue stude þere,
To sacrifise to his Goddes, þat moni war nere.
Segge he wolde eke al so to þe Quene ys spouse,
" And noþeles such sacrifise y ne kepte not at myn howse?"

[1] Me) a scapy *Ar.* [2] Corneus *pro hys in Ar.* [3] Dude tho al Corneus wille, *Ar.* [4] Rough *Ar.* [5] And that he hadde made a vow, to do a sacrifice Priueliche to his God, as he gan hym deuyse. Segge he wolde right al thus to his owene spouse, " Thes wiues " suche sacrifice loueth at hure " owene house." So longe *Ar.*

So

So longe he dude ys sacrifise, and pleide such game,
þat he hadde a dozter, [1] Auerne was hire name.
And þe Quene hadde al so in [2] sposhed bi gete
A sone, þat hette Madan, as it is [3] y writon.
[4] Sone so þe quene fader Corineus was ded,
þe kyng hadde þer aftur wel sone y nome red.
He for sok is wyf al out, and Astrild made quene.
He ne dradde nozt þo [5] that handaxe, as it was y sene.
þo wende þe quene forþ to Cornewail a non,
And [6] zonge staleworþe men gederede mony on.
[7] þat poer al þat was hire fader, & also of Engelonde,
So þat heo hadde sone gret power on honde,
And grot ost made and strong, and vp the kyng sette,
[8] And þe kyng al so a zeyn hire, so þat heo hem mette,
And a batail vp Stour smite strong y now,
And þere þe quene folk þe kyng Locryn slow,
And muche of his folk eke bute hem þat flowe.
So þat [9] a luþer beuerage to here bi hoþe þei browe.
þo kyng myzte segge er þe while he was aliue,
þat in a luther time he striuede with his wyue.
zef alle [10] luþer holers were y serued so,
Me schulde fynde þe les such spouse bruche do.
Ellene hundred zer þis kyng was þus bi fore
And [11] eyzte zer y slawe er God were y bore.

[1] Sabrene *Ar.* & *in marg.* *(à manu recenti)* Sabrine. [2] Sponshed *Ar.* [3] Y write *Ar.* [4] So sone so the quene's *Ar.* [5] The *pro* þat *in Ar.* [6] ỳonge *Ar.* [7] Al the power that was hure fadere's, and muche of Engelonde, *Ar.* [8] The kyng also a yenst hure, so hy to gederes mette, *Ar.* [9] A foul beuereche to hure byhoue they brough *Ar.* [10] Foule holoyers *Ar.* [11] XVIII. *Ar.*

þo

þo was þis sturne wommon Guendolyn þe quene
Kyng y mad in þis maner, for heo was som del kene.
Astrilde hire bedsuster (hire lorde's concubine)
And hire dozter [1] Auerne heo let nime atte fine,
And drenche boþe two in þe water of Seuerne.
And for yt was hire lorde's dozter þat mayde [2] Auerne,
And for honour of hire lord, and for heo was of hys kynde,
Heo wolde þat hire name euer more in mynde,
And lette clepe þat water aftur [3] Auerne,
And seþþe þorz diuerse tonge me clepede hit Seuerne,
And deþ a letre þer to, and no more y wys.
In þis manner þike water Seuerne y clepud is.
Guendolyn was kyng fiftene zer þo.
And hire lord was kyng bi fore hire ten zer, & no mo.
[4] And Madan here sone fourti zer, þilke tyme þat Samuel þe prophete wardede þat folk of Israel. Samuel.
Meynpris, Madane's sone, kyng was tuenti zer,
[5] þe kyng Saul was of Ysrael kyng, and non er. Saul.
þis was (as me may in bok rede and se)
Ar God were bore a þousand zer, and fourscore & þre.
[6] Ebran, Meynprise's sone, sixti zer was kyng.
He made þe toun of Euerwik, þat strong ys in alle þyng,

---

[1] Sabrene *Ar.* [2] Sabrene, *Ar.* [3] Sabrene, *Ar.* [4] Madan hure sone kyng was tho fourty yer ech del, In prophete's tyme Samuel that wardede Israel *Ar.* [5] Whan that Saul of Israel was kyng, *Ar.* [6] Ebrac, Mempris is sone, sixty yer was kyng. He bygan Ebrac wik atte bigynnyng. And suth me clepeth Euerwike this ilke toun y wis, And York also, thorgh light speche, y hote also hit is. After þis kyngus name his name hit

And, aftur his name Ebran, Euerwik clepede it wel,
David rex. þat tyme Dauid was kyng in Yrael.
Brut ys sone þrottene kyng was, and no mo.
And [1] Leir kyng [2] fyue and twenti ȝer Brutesone was þo.
And he rerde þo town of Leycetre, & nempnede yt owne name,
Salomon. þo þat Salamon þe wyse (mon of gret fame)
Kyng was of [3] Irael, þat kyng Dauid sone was,
þat made þe temple of Jerusalem, such temple ner nas,
[4] Leile's sone þritti ȝer kyng was [5] and fyue// al so.
He rerde first Canterburi, and Wynchestre þer to.
[6] Baþulf his sone aftur hym kyng was twenti ȝer.
He bi gan þe toun of Baþe, and [7] þo hote baþes [8] þer
In þe veynes of þe water, as yt doþ vp walle.
He lette close [9] fuyr in metal quoynteliche withalle,
þat as [10] þo water comeþ þer bi þer it cacheþ hete,
þat metal ys now y turned into roches grete,
þat beþ euer y liche [11] hoto, & þo water þer of al so.
And eke þoru enchauntement yt was first y do.
For þe kyng Baþulf, þat yt made, gret enchanter was.
And þat hym myȝte [12] seþþe rewe, ich wol telle þat cas.
For þat me schulde ys chauntement y se,
He lette hym make wyngon, an hey for to fle.

---

hym by fel. This was whan Dauid kyng regned in Israel. Brut grenshild, his sone, aftur hym tho Regned her in Engelond xxx. yer and mo *Ar.*

[1] Leil *Ar.* [2] xv. yer *Ar.* [3] Israel *Ar.* [4] Lo his sone *Ar. scd* Rudhudibras *dicitur aliis.* [5] *Omittit Ar.* [6] Bladuþ *Ar.* [7] þe *Ar.* [8] *Potest etiam ita distingui, ut periodus post* þer, *comma vero post* walle, *ponatur.* [9] Fure and metal *Ar.* [10] þe *Ar.* [11] Hote *Ar.* [12] Suth *Ar.*

And

And þo he was y flowe an hey, & ne cowþe not a liȝte,
A doun mid so gret eir to þe erþe he fel and piȝte,
þat al to peses he to rof, þat beter hym hadde ybe
Haue bi leued þer doune, þan y lerned for to fle.
[1] þis þilke tyme þat þe prophete Elye — Tempus Ely.
In [2] Irael prophete was, and [3] in oure Lord bi gan to crie,
þat þer ne schulde þre ȝer [4] ny six moneþes þer to
[5] No reyn no come on erþe, and yt bi fel al so.

AFTUR kyng [6] Baþulf, Leir ys sone was kyng,
And regned [7] sixti ȝer wel þoru alle þyng.
Up þe water of [8] Soure a cite of gret fame
He [9] endede, & clepede yt Leicestre, aftur ys owne name.
þre doȝtren þis kyng hadde, þe eldeste [10] Gornorille,
þe mydmost hatte Regan, þe [11] ȝongost Cordeille.
þe fader hem louede alle ynoȝ, ac þe [11] ȝongost mest:
For heo was best and fairest, & to hautenesse drow lest.
þo þe kyng to elde com, alle þre he broȝte
Hys doȝtren to fore hym, to wyte of here þouȝte.
For he þoȝte hys kyndom [12] dele among hem þre,
[13] And lete hem þer with spousi wel whare he myȝte bi se.
To þe eldest he seide first, "Doȝter ich bidde þe
"Sey me al clene þin herte, how muche þou louest me."
"Myn heye Godes," quoþ þis mayde, "to wytnesse I take echon,
"þat y loue more in myn herte þi leue bodi one,

[1] This was in thulke tyme *Ar.* [2] Israel *Ar.* [3] On *Ar.* [4] Ne *Ar.* [5] Reyn non in erthe come, and aftur hit fel so *Ar.* [6] Bladuth *Ar.* [7] xxx. ȝer *Ar.* [8] Sore *Ar.* [9] Rerde, and clepede *Ar.* [10] Gonorille, *Ar.* [11] Yongeste *Ar.* [12] To dele *Ar.* [13] And eke forto wedde hem wel wher he myghte by se *Ar.*

" þan myn soule and my lyf, þat in my bodi ys.
þo fader was þo glad y now whan he herde þis.
" My leue dozter," he seide þo, " for [1] þou hast in loue y do.
" Myn olde lyf by fore þis, and bi fore þi soule al so.
" Ych wol þe marie wel with þe þridde part of my londe
" To þe noblest bacheler, þat þyn herte wol to stonde.
þo oþer dozter he aschede þo þat same askyng.
" Sire," quod heo, " [2] bi hye Godes, Lordes of alle þyng,
" Y loue more þi leue lyf þan al þat in þe world ys.
" And þei al þe world were myn, & al þe richesse ywys,
" Al and eke myn owne lyf leuer ich hadde lese,
" þan þi lyf, þat me is so lef, zef y myzte chese.
þe fader was þo glad y now, and bad hire vnderstonde,
To whom heo wolde y maried be with þe þride del ys londe.
þe [3] zongost he askedo þo as he hadde þo oþer y do.
Heo [4] no kouþe of no fikelyng, and ne onswerede not so.
" Sire," heo seyde, " y leue not þat my sustren al soþ seide.
" Ac for me my self, ich wol soþ segge of þis dede.
" Ych the loue [5] as þe mon that my fader ys,
" And euer habbe y [6] loued as my fader, & euer wole y wys.
" And zef þou wolt zet þer vppe more asche & wyte of me,
" Al þe ende of loue & þe grond ich wol segge þe.
" As muche as þou hast, [7] as muche þou art worþ y wys,
" And [8] as muche ich loue þe: þo ende of loue ys þis.

---

[1] Though hast thi loue y do In myn old lyf to fore thyn, & to fore thi soule also *Ar.* [2] By the heyghe God, Lord *Ar.* [3] Yongeste *Ar.*

[1] Ne couthe of no flateryng, & aunswered nought so *Ar.* [5] As a man *Ar.* [6] The *addit Ar.* So muche *Ar.* [8] Sō *Ar.*

þe

þe kyng was þo wroþ y now, for heo seide al þat soþ.
For he seide, " þou ne louest me noȝt as þi sostren doþ,
" Ac despisest me in myn olde liue, þou ne schalt neuer ywis
" Part habbe of my kyndom, ne of lond þat myn ys.
" Ac þyn sustren schulle habbe al, for here herte ys kynde,
" And þou for þyn vnkyndenesse be out of al my mynde.
" [1] Ac y ne segge noȝt for þan, ȝef y mai to mariage þe vrynge,
" þat y ne wol with oute lond with som lytel þinge."
" For þou art my doȝter, & ich habbe more þan þi sostren boþe
" Y loued þe one, & þou ȝeldest now my loue wroþe.
þer aftur euene a two he delede hys kyndom, Particio regni.
And ȝef hys twei doȝtren half, & half hym self nom.
And þe eldest doȝter mid hire del he ȝaf with oute faile
þe kyng of Scotlond, and þe oþer þe [2] kyng of Cornewale, Maritacio filiarum.
To haue half ys lond myd hem at þe bi gynnyng,
And seþþe al ys kyndom aftur ys endyng.
And þe gode Cordeille vn maried was [3] so.
For heo [4] nolde fikele, as hire sustren hadde y do.
Ac [5] God þouȝte on hire for hire trewnesse.
For þe kyng of France herde telle of hire godnesse,
And bad hire fader graunt hym þe gode Cordeille.
þe kyng send word a ȝeyn, þat it was ys wille:

[1] Ac nought for than, with oute lond, with some litele thynge Ich wole the to some god man to mariage brynge. *Ar. Non dico tamen, cum filia mea sis, quin te alicui externo, si illum fortuna obtulerit, utcunque maritem. Illud autem affirmo, quod nunquam eo honore, quo sorores tuas, te maritabo. Quippe cum te plusquam ceteras huc usque dilexerim, tu vero me minus quam ceteræ diligas.* Galfredus Mon. [2] Erl *Ar.* [3] þo *Ar.* Couthe flatery nought, as *Ar.* [5] Almyghty *addit Ar.*

Ac he nolde with hire ȝeue tresour, nẏ lond.
For ys two oþer doȝtren hadde it al on hond.
þo þe kyng of France herde þis, he answerede þer to,
þat he hadde hym self lond y now, and tresour al so.
Ne þat he ne kepte bute hire one, withoute oþer þing,
þat heo myȝte som eyres bi twene hem forþ brynge.
So þat at þe laste þis maide y spoused was
To þis kyng of France, as God ȝaf þat cas.
þo þis kyng Leir eldore was, heo bi gan to loþe,
For he so longe liuede, hys leue doȝtren boþe.
Here lordes heo entisede, [1] to gedere to holde faste,
And wynne al þis lond to hem, & here fader out caste.
Spoliacio reg. þis twei kynges nome here ost, and endede þis dede,
And bi nome þis olde mon ys lond, as here wyues bede:
Ac þe kyng of Scotlond, for rewþe and [2] kundede,
Hym nom to hym in to his hows, a ȝeyn ys wyue's rede,
Sixti knyȝtes with honour to fynde hym al ys lyf,
As wo seyþ, for ys kyndom, & for honour of ys wyf.
With inne two ȝer þer aftur it þouȝte þe luþer quene,
þat [3] hire hadde to muche, & wolde to muche spene.
Heo made, þat of [4] sixti knyȝtes hire lord with droȝ,
And made hym holde to þritti, & þat was hire þoȝte ynoȝ.
þis Leir was a schamed þo, & in wraþþe at þe ende
To hys oþer doȝter, þe quene of Cornewail, he gan wende,
And playnede of þe vnkynde dede of hys doȝter [5] Gornorille,
And wende þere amendement to habbe aftur ys owne wille.

---

[1] To holde to gedre faste *Ar.* [2] Manhede, Tok hym hom in to his hous, *Ar.* [3] Hure fader hadde so moche, and to moche wolde spene *Ar.* [4] xxx. knyhtus hure lord hym withdrough *Ar.* [5] Gonorille, *Ar.*

þilke

þilke doȝter hym to fonge with honour, as he wende,
Ac heo was al ful of hym er [1] þe ȝere's ende.
For heo entisede hire lord þo, þat ys knyȝtes echone
For cost by nýme hym alle, bute a [2] fyue men one,
[3] Wuche so it were to serue hym, & þat was y nowe.
þo þis seli mon þis herde, to sorwe ys herte drowe.
He nuste to weþer doȝter beter truste þo,
And noþeles he wende aȝeyn to þe oþer with muche wo,
And hopede for to fynde of here beter [4] meuske & grace.
And heo swor bi hire hye Godes anon in þe place,
þat he ne schulde mid hire be, bute it [5] one were,
And on knyȝt with oute mo, þe while he hym wel bere.
[6] And askede, wad sorwe hym were, wan he nadde hym self no god,
To wylne so gret cost, and be of so gret mod?"
þis word dude much sorwe þis seli olde kyng,
þat atwytede hym & ys stat, þat he nadde hym self noþing.
þat word brak neȝ ys herte, & longe he yt vnderstod,
þat ys child at wiste ys pouerte, þat hadde al is god.
[7] Neuer kyng ny quene glad, when heo hym seye,
Ac to þe joiful day hopede, that heo myȝte dye.
He bi leuede, as he nede moste, forþ mid on knyȝt,
And þe quene ys doȝter alle wo hym dude boþe day & nyȝt.

[1] þre *pro* þe *in Ar.* [2] x. *Ar.* [3] That were bileft to seruy hym, and that hure thoughte y noughe *Ar.* [4] Mylce *Ar.* [5] Onliche were, With o knyght, with oute mo, *Ar.* [6] And seyde, what sholde an old man be so heghe of mod, And an [*f.* in] ydel, and in wast, spende so muche good? *Ar.* [7] Ther nas ther nother kyng ne quene glade, whan hy hym seȳ, But lokede euer after his deth, whan he sholde dey *Ar.*

So þat he moste [1] for fyn myseise awei at þe ende.
þe oþer doȝter he hadde a sayed, þat he ne durste to hire wynde.
þe quene of France þe þridde hym þoȝ mid vn ryȝt
He misdude hire, þat he ne durste come in hire syȝt.
Ac at þe laste þo he sei, þat he moste nede at þe ende
For pore miseise, (for fare leuer he hadde wende,
And bidde ys mete, ȝef he schulde, in a strange lond,
þan þer he hymself kyng was, & such þing hadde on honde)
At þe laste in sorwe ynow in to þe see he wende,
To do ys beste yn meseise were so God hym sende.
In þo schip as oþer prynces in gret pruyde he [2] bi hulde,
And he nadde mid hym bute twei men, [3] hym þoȝte ys herte feld;
He þoȝte on þe noblei, þat he hadde in y be:
Planctus He wep, þe terus roune doun, þat deol it was to se.
[4] Mid ȝoxing & mid gret wop þus bi gan ys mone.
" Alas! alas! þe luþur ; wate, þat fylest me þus one,
" þat þus clene me bryngust a doun, wyder schal y be broȝt?
" For more sorwe yt doþ me, when it comeþ in my thoȝt
" þe noblei þat ich habbe y had, þat ich was wond to wynde
" Mid so mony hondred knyȝtes a boute in eche [7] ende,
" And casteles nyme & tounes, & myn fon brynge to gronde,
" þan do al þe miseise, þat ich in i bonde.
" Leue doȝter Cordeille, to soþe þou seidest me,
" þat as muche as ych hadde y was worþ, þei y ne leuede þe.

---

[1] For mysaise (*omisso* fyn) *in Ar.* [2] Bi held *Ar.* [3] Alas! his herte was cheld *Ar.* [4] With wepynge & wailynge thus he made his mone:- " Alas! though lethur desteny, whi leuest though me thus al one? *Ar.* [5] *i. e.* fate. [6] Of the *Ar.* [7] Eynde *Ar.*

" þo

" þo wyle ich oȝt hadde ich was worþ, & now it ys al a gon.
" Mi childeren, þat ich ȝef my god, beþ myne meste fon.
" For my god heo louede me, & now he habbeþ euery del,
" He nul not ȝeue me of myn owne mid god herte a mel.
" A wey! doȝter Cordeille, wyder schal ich now fle?
" So muche ich habbe þe [1] mys do, þat y ne dar þe y se.
" Mid wuche bodi dar y come in þi siȝt ene,
" þat bi nom þe myn frenschipe for þi soþnesse al clene?
[2] þis men mowe here ensample nime, to late here sones wyue,
And ȝeue hem vp here lond al bi here lyue.
For wel may a symple [3] Francoleyn in mysese hym so bringe
Of lutel lond, wan þer fel such of a kyng.
þo þis kyng hadde go a boute in such sorwful cas, Mandavit filiæ.
At þe last he com to Caric, þere ys doȝter was.
He bi leuede with oute þe toun, & in wel gret fere.
He sende þe quene ys doȝter word, muche is [4] antres were,
And þat pur miseise hym þider drof, & defaut of bi liue:
And bed hire, for þe loue of God, hire wraþþe hym for ȝeue.
þe quene þo heo herde þis, nei yswounyng was.
"Alas!" heo seyde, "ys my fader y broȝt in such deolful cas?"
" Mid how moný knyȝtes ys he come?" þe oþer aȝeyn seyde,
" Ma dame, bute mid o mon, & ȝet þilke in [5] feble wede."
" Alas!" quoþ þe quene þenne, " ys it now mid hym so?
" Nymeþ anon tresour y nowȝ, þat he haþ nede to,

---

[1] A gilt *pro* mys do *in Ar.*
[2] These sample men moughe y se, to lete hure children wyue, *Ar.*
[3] Man *pro* Francoleyn *in Ar.*
[4] Auntres *Ar.*
[5] Simple wede *Ar.*

" [1] And

" [1] And cloþeþ hym myd þe best cloþ, þat ȝe mowe y se,
" And fourti knyȝtes mid hym, þat of hys siwte be;
" And doþ hem alle wel an horse, as a kyng bi comeþ to,
" And whan [2] no defaute nys, þat al þis nys wel y do,
" Sendeþ my lord word & me, þat my fader in londe ys.
Wat halt it to telle longe? Y do wes al þis.
þo kyng Leir arayed was, & men hem worde sende,
þe kyng & þe quene faire y now aȝeyn þe oþer kyng wende,
And with gret honour hym fongon, þo he to hem com,
[3] And token hym to ys owne wille al clene the kyndom.
þis was, lo! þe gode doȝter, þat nolde fikele noȝt.
Ofte þing þat is fikeled to worse ende ys broȝt.
Reditus Angliæ. þe kyng of France aftur folc wide aboute sende,
To a wreke hym of þe luþer men, þat ys frend so schende:
[4] þo he hadde power y now, þe kyng Leir he nom
And þe quene ys doȝter, & to þis lond com.
Mony kynde men of þis lond with kyng Leir huld also,
For þe vnkynde suikedom þat his doȝtren hadde y do.
So þat of France & of þis lond poer he hadde y now.
Toward hys fon with hem alle with god herte he drow,
And ouer com þis false [5] kynges & here wyues also,
[6] And a ȝeyn in his kyndom mid gret honour y do.

---

[1] Bad hym clothe in the beste, that he myghte bȳse, And XL. knyghtes with hym of his suyt to be; *Ar.* [2] No faute ther nys, and al is wel y do, *Ar.* [3] *Dederuntque ei potestatem totius Galliæ, donec eum in pristinam dignitatem restaurassent.* Galfridus Mon. [4] *Quo facto, duxit secum Leyr filiam suam, & collecta multitudine ivit in Britanniam.* Galfr. Mon. [5] Lordes *Ar.* [6] Leir in his kynedom a ye with honour was y do *Ar.*

Cor-

Cordeille ys leue dozter eir of al ys lond
Aftur ys day he made, [1] þo þat he so kynde fond.
By þis tale me may iyse, þat men trewest we seþ,
And best me may to hem truste, þat of lest wordes [2] boþ.
With inne þre zer þe kyng of France dyede & þe kyng Leyr, Obitus regis.
[3] And Cordeille þe kyndom fong as þe ryzt eyr,
And lette hire fadur burie with gret prude & honour
At Leicetre, þat he made hym self be side þe water of Sour.
þis gode quene Cordoille as kyng and quene þo
[4] Bi leuede hire in þis lond fyue zer, and no mo,
Er hire twei suster sones, stalworþe men þat were,
[5] Hennin and Morgan, werre [6] hire" gonne a rere,
And hadden despit, þat wommon kyng schulde [7] be,
[8] And naþeles wyþ alle ryzte hij were ner þan heo.
Heo gederede vp here aunte here ost aboute wyde,
And destruyde hire londes eyþer in his syde.
So þat at þe laste to [9] baile heo come.
þere þe quene here aunte in bataile heo nome, Capcio reginæ.
And dude in strong prison, and þe kyndom
Delden bi twene hem, and eyþer ys part nom.

[1] So kynde he hure fonde *Ar.* [2] *L.* beþ. [3] Cordille aftur hym auenge Brutayne as ryght heir *Ar.* [4] *Cum ergo Cordeilla regnum per quinquennium pacifice tractasset, cœperunt eam inquietare duo filii sororum suarum Marganus & Cunedagius, quæ Maglauro & Hennino ducibus conjugatæ fuerant. Ambo juvenes præclaræ probitatis formam habebant, quorum alterum, videlicet Marganum, Maglaurus generavit, Cunedagium vero Henninus.* Galfr. Mon. [5] Hemỳn *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] Beo *Ar.* [8] And also by ryght hy were fortherer than heo. Hy gaderede to gedere hure ost aboute by eche side, And destrude her and ther bothe in eche side *Ar.* [9] Bataille *Ar.*

Morgan

Morgan kyng of Scotlond, as heo dele kouþe,
Hadde al þat lond bi Norþ, and [1] þe oþer bi Souþe.
With inne two ȝer þer aftur somme to Morgan come,
And, for he of þe elder soster was, bed hym nyme gome;
And seide hym it was gret despit, þat þer wer in þis lond
Guerra. Twei kynges, wan ryȝt was, þat he it hadde al on hond.
þis kyng was enticed so, þat he nom atte laste
Ys ost, and vp hys cosyn bi gan to werri faste,
And bi gan to þrenne & quelle, & atte laste y wys
þe oþer bi gan to turne a ȝeyn, and drof hym in to Walis.
And þer heo smyte a batail in þe Souþ half of þe londe,
And þer was Morgan y slawe, þat longe [2] was vnderstonde.
þe stude, þat he was at y slawe, me clepuþ ȝet Morgan,
And euere wole aftur hym, for he was so worþi man.
Cunedag was þo al one kyng, & þe kyndom to hym nom,
And nobliche [3] þre and" þritti ȝer held þe kyndom.
þe twey holy prophetes were Osee and Ysaie
þilke time in [4] Irael, and dude here prophecie.
Incepcio Romæ. Romulus and Remus þe twei breþeren y wys
Bi gonne þo first Rome, þat noble cite ys.
Four hundred ȝer it was, and [5] fourti euene al so,
Aftur þe batail of Troie, þat al þis was ydo.
And Rome was fyue hundred ȝer þus y mad bi fore.
And þre and fyfty ȝer eke, er God were y bore.
Aftur þis kyng Cunedag hys [6] sone, that hatte Riual,
Kyng was mad aftur hym, a wys mon þorȝ out al.

---

[1] Hemen *pro* þe oþer *in Ar.* [2] Is *pro* was *in Ar.* [3] *De-sunt Ar.* [4] Israel *Ar.* [5] Four-tyne also, *Ar.* [6] Brothur *Ar.*

Aftur

Aftur hym Gurgust ys sone, and seþþe anoþer Sisille,
And mony on [1] seþþe afturwar, of wam mote be stille.
So þat atte laste Gurguont was kyng,
Stalworþe mon and hardy, and wys þorȝ alle þyng.
Muche þing, þat ys eldore loren þorw feyntyse,
þoru strengþe he wann seþþe a ȝeyn, & þoru ys koyntise.
þe kyng of Denemark [2] ber eche ȝer with lawe
Truage to Engelond, and bi gan hym to wyþ drawe.
þe kyng Gurguont hym porueyede of power y now,
And þer wyþ in gode schippes to Denemark he drow,
And þe kyng of Denemark in bataile he sloȝ,
And wan a ȝeyn þe truage þat [3] he held with woȝ.

As þe kyng Guorguont fro Denemark wende a ȝe
Hider toward Engolond, he mette in þe see
þritti schipful of men. and of wymmen also,
Of children, and of oþer god þat heo hadden with hem y do.
þe kyng askede, wad heo were? þei were a drad ful sore.
þe maister fel a doun on kne, & criede mercy & ore.
" Lord," he seyde, " we beþ men wyde y driue aboute
" From contrey to contrei, þat we mown nower route.
" Of þe kynde of Egypt oure firste more com.
" [4] For þo folc of Irael Moyses with hym nom,
" And ladde hem out of Egypt bi þe [5] liuerede see,
" And þe kyng a drente & alle hys, þat [6] he ne com neuer a ȝe:

---

[1] Suth afterward, of wham we mote be stille *Ar.* [2] That bar ech yer with lawe Truage to Brutayne, gan hit tho with drawe *Ar.* [3] At heold with wrough *Ar.* [4] For tho that folk of Israel *Ar.* [5] Rede *Ar.* [6] They *Ar.*

" Among

" Among hem, þat bi leuede o liue, stryf me myȝte se,
" Wuche mest maistres were, & hoo schulde lord be:
" So þat heo, þat maistres were, hadde wel gret onde
" To þe kyn þat we come of, & dryue hem out of londe,
" For drede þat heo ne schulde noȝt here maistres be.
" þus heo were y dryue a wei, & nuste wyder to [1] tee.
" Heo duden hem forþ in to þe se, & by mony a lond wende.
" [2] Se þat God in to Spayne atten ende [3] hom sende.
" þer heo bi leuede, & wox, & al þat of hem come
" Forto now þis oþer day, þat we myȝte not be y some.
" [4] For þe kunde folk of þe lond hadde to ows onde,
" And, þat we to grete maistres nere, drive ous out of þe londe.
" Oþer half ȝer we habbeþ nowe y went with oute reste
" In the grete see of occean, forto seche vr beste,
" þat owre lyf ys vs loþ, & we nuste war bi leue;
" þer fore we wolde bidde þe, þat þou vs sum place ȝeue
" þat amty were in þi lond, ware þou woldest by þenche,
" [5] þat we myȝte of swynke oure mete, & libbe by oure swynke.

Prima gens in Ybernia.

þe kyng hem nolde graunte noþing of þis lond,
Ac he sende hem by god condyt in to Yrlond,
þat al amty was of men, & no mon ne wonede þere,
And þese were þe firste men þat in Yrlond were.
A þousant ȝer yt was and two, þat y do was al þis,
Aftur þat [6] folc of Irsrael of Egypt wende i wis.
Fyf hundred ȝer and [7] tuenti it was eke bi fore,
Er þan oure Lord Jhesu Cryst on erþe was y bore.

---

[1] Fle *Ar.* [2] So *Ar.* [3] Hem *Ar.* [4] Therfore the vnnekynde folk *Ar.* [5] That we moughe oure liflode, as othur doth, byswýnke *Ar.* [6] The folk of Israel *Ar.* [7] Nyne *pro* tuenti *in Ar.*

[1] Hit

[1] Hit bi fel þer afturward swyþe longe ynow Picti.
Out of þe lond of Scitie oþer folk þider droȝ.
For into þe grete see of occean a gret companye
Of Pycars wende som tyme out of [2] Scisie.
From lond to lond wyde [3] he gonne wende,
So þat atte laste heo come to Yrlonde's Norþ ende,
A geyn þe lond of Scotlond, & [4] þo folk þat heo fonden þere
Of [5] þis eldore kunde, Scottes y clepud were.
þe [6] Picardes bede þe Scottes an ende of here lond
To ȝeue hem, forto libbe by with swynk of here hond.
þe Scottes seide, þat þat lond nolde not y now be
To hem boþe to lyue [7] bi, as heo myȝte y se.
Ac þat heo myȝte ofte y se, in cler weder, þere
Est ward, as þe sonne a ros, a lond as yt were.
Mury & fair yt þoȝte y now, & þat heo þider wende,
To wonye & to lyue þer, & þat heo hem word sende,
ȝef any mon hem greuede, & þat heo wolde, heo seyde,
Warde hem from alle men, þat hem bi tidde no drede.
[8] þis Picardes þenne wende forþ Estward euer faste.
To þe Norþ ende of Engelond heo comen at þe laste.
þat ende heo fonden al bare. heo bi leuede þere,
And swonke & tilede here lyflode, & al maistres were.
[9] Heo fonden hem sustynance y now, and [10] lyueden þus forþ Missio post mulieres.
þe Brytones in [11] þo Souþhalf, and heo in þe Norþ.

[1] ¶ The comynge of Pittes, that some clepeth Pikerdys, *Ar. in margine.* [2] Sithie *Ar. cum* i. Nauerne *(ab ead. manu) supra lin.* [3] Hij *Ar.* [4] The *Ar.* [5] The eldere *Ar.* [6] Pictes *Ar.* [7] By, by aught that hij couthe se *Ar.* [8] Thes Pictes *Ar.* [9] Hij wonne hem *Ar.* [10] Lyuede so forth *Ar.* [11] The *Ar.*

[1] Pycars fonden ese ynow, and defaut none,
To libbe in plente y now, bute of wymmen one.
For þer ner none among hem. þer fore to Yrlond
Heo sende to Scottes þat þer were, þat heo schulde hem vnderstonde
And lene hem wymmen, þat heo myȝte here [2] ofþryng eche so."
For þyng þat [3] woneþ, & noþing wexeþ, [4] sone it ys ydo."
Scottes hem sende wymmen in þis forme þere,
þat wan a child were y bore, and me in doute were,
[5] Who were þo fader, þat me schulde name & eritage
Boþe habbe in þe moder half, for drede of out rage,
Laste yt ȝeode out of kynde þorȝ child mỳs bi gete.
For me may bet soþnesse of þe moder þen of þe fader wyte.
In þis maner [6] Picars with Scottes [7] myngen here blod,
So þat yt siwede þe wymmen, when me oȝt mysvnderstod.
And when mon withouten eyr of hym to deþe were ybroȝt,
Hys moder kun was ys eir, & ys fader kun ryȝt noȝt.
And for þe moderes Scottes were, [8] so forþ yt ys bi come,
þat [9] Scottes name ys al a boue, & [10] Picars al bi nome.
[11] þus Scottes among Pycars come out of Yrlond,
And [12] þat lond me clepuþ aftur hem seþþe Scotlonde.

---

[1] Thes Pictes *Ar.* [2] Ospring forth brynge *Ar.* [3] Waneth *Ar.* [4] Hath sone an endynge *Ar.* [5] Who the childe's fader were, the name and heritage Of his moder hit sholde bere, for drede of outrage, Lest the name yede oute of kỳnde thurgh mysby yityng. Of the moder half rather than in the fadre's me may haue knowyng *Ar.* [6] Thes Pictes *Ar.* [7] Medlede blod *Ar.* [8] So fer forth hit is y come, *Ar.* [9] The Scottes *Ar.* [10] Pictes *Ar.* [11] The Scottes myd the Pictes *Ar.* [12] The *pro* that *in Ar.*

Yrlond

YRLOND ys [1] aler yle best with oute Engelonde.
þe see goþ al abouten hym eke as ich vnderstonde.
More he ys þan Engolond, & in [2] þo Souþ half he ys
[3] Bradder & more of ynow þan in þe Norþ ende y wys.
Aȝeyn þe lond of Spayne he stond in þe [4] Norþ syde ryȝt.
Selde snowe þer inne [5] liþ, & nameliche þre nyȝt.
So euene [6] hot þat lond ys, þat men durre [7] selde
Here orf in howse awynter brynge out of þe felde.
Lese lasteþ þer al þe wynter. Bute hyt þo more wonder be,
Selde me schal in þe lond eny foule wormes se.
For nedres ny oþer wormes ne mow þer be noȝt.
And ȝef he beþ þider [8] bi cas" from oþer [9] londes y broȝt,
Heo dyeþ þorȝ smel of þe lond, oþer þorȝ towchyng y wys.
Eche gras þat þer inne wexeþ a ȝeyn venym yt ys.
For men, þat ben venymed, þorȝ grases of Yrlond
Y dronke he beþ y clansed sone, þoru Gode's sonde.
Hony & mylk þer ys muche. mony folk & bolde.
þis ys þe stat of Yrlond, as iche habbe y tolde.

AFTUR kyng Gurguont, kynges mony on
þer were here in Engelond, me may not telle echon.
A boute a four hundred ȝer aftur hym þer com
A kyng, þat was Lud y clepud, þat wel hult þe kyndom. Lud.

[1] Al ther Ile best, ontake Engelonde *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] Bradder a gret del than in the Northside ywys *Ar.* [4] Northwest ryght *Ar.* [5] Lith, nameliche but thre nyght *Ar.* [6] A tempre *pro* hot *in Ar.* [7] But seylde Hure bestes an house *Ar.* [8] By happe *Ar.* [9] Lond *Ar.*

Grete townes in Engelond he amendede y nowe.
And London [1] aller most, for þer to hys herte drowe.
[2] þat folk he hett of þe town so noble bold þer rere,
þat in al Engelond so noble a cite nere.
Walles he lette make a boute & ȝates vp & doun,
And aftur Lud, þat was hys name, he clepude yt Lude's toun.
þe hexte ȝate of þe toun, [3] þa ȝet stond þere and is,
He lette yt clepe Lude's gate, aftur ys owne name ywis.
He let hym, þo he was ded, burye at þilke ȝate.
þer fore ȝet aftur hym me clepoþ hit Lodegate.
þe town me clepuþ Lude's town, þat ys wyde cowþ:
And now me clepeþ it London, þat ys lyȝter in þe mouþ.
And Newe Troie hit hette er, [4] ac þus yt is a go
þat Londone he ys now y cleped, and worþ euermo.

ENGELOND haþ i be with strengþe y wonne y lome,
And first, as ich telle can, þorþ þe emperoures of Rome.
Aftur kyng Lud þer was kyng ys broþer Cassibel,
þat noble Prince was y now, & þat lond gouernede wel.
Julius. Julý þe emperour of Rome by his day com,
And muche del of þe world bi Est to hys power nom.
[5] Seþþe he drow hym Westward, & werrede in mony londe,
And wan lond [6] aftur oþer, hym ne myȝte non at stonde.
þo he hadde y wonne France, þe see he wende ney,
[7] And bi huld Westward, and som del of Engelond y sey.

[1] Alther *Ar.* [2] He het in thulke toune the folk suche buldynge a rere, *Ar.* [3] That yut stant *Ar.* [4] Ac nough hit is so ago, That Londone is hit cleped, *Ar.* [5] And tho he *Ar.* [6] Aftur lond, ne myghte hym no man astonde *Ar.* [7] And as he lokede Westward, Engelond he seygh *Ar.*

He

He askede, wat lond yt were, & wat folk þer inne was ?
Me seide hym þat it was Bretayne, ne betur lond nas,
And þat þe folk was of þe kynde of Troie, & of þe Brut y come.
" [1] þenne beþ heo, quoþ þe emperour, of þe kynde of Rome.
" For, aftur þe batail of Troie, þe noble mon Eneas
" [2] To Lumbardye com, and oure firste fader was.
" And Brut al so com of hym, þat seþþe hys fader slowȝ,
" And þer fore was þenne y dryue, & to þilke lond drowȝ.
" þanne we beþ of on kynde, [3] ac, bute ich þer to lye,
" A ȝen kynde he beþ a ȝeyn vs, as of chiual rye.
" For þer of ne mowe heo konne nozt, y not how he myȝte,
" To be by hem self in an hurne as þe rof with oute syȝte.
" For nozt we schulleþ hem ouercome, ac naþeles as þe hende
" We schul hem warne of oure þozt, er we to hem wende.

[1] *Cumque nomen regni didicisset & populi, dixit, Hercle ex eadem prosapia nos Romani & Brittones orti sumus, quia ex Trojana gente processimus. Nobis Æneas post destructionem Trojæ primus pater fuit. Illis autem Brutus, quem Silvius Ascanii, filii Æneæ, filius progenuit. Sed, nisi fallor, valde degenerati sunt à nobis. Nec quid sit militia noverunt, cum infra oceanum extra orbem commaneant. Leviter cogendi erunt tributum nobis dare, & continuum obsequium Romanæ dignitati parare. Prius tamen mandandum est eis, ut inaccessi à Romano populo & intacti vectigal reddant, ut ceteræ etiam gentes subjectionem senatui faciant, ne nos, ipsorum cognatorum nostrorum sanguinem fundentes, antiquam nobilitatem Priami patris nostri offendamus* Galfridus Mon. [2] To Itaille com, that is now Rome, and oure auncetre was *Ar.* [3] And ich can a spie, Hit were a ye kýnde to be a yenst vs, as of chiualrie. For ther on ne mowe hij konne nought, y not how hii myghte, To be in an herne by hem self, ther with oute fighte *Ar.*

þe emperoure's messingeres to Engelond hire come,
þat þe kyng abowe ys herte [1] to þe noble stude of Rome,
And alle oþer kynges dude, and ys ryȝt seruage
Dude to þe hye emperour, and sende hym hys truage,
And hys lond huld of hym, and dude hym homage,
Laste þe hye emperour for his outrage
Come and destruye al hys lond; & ȝet þat worse were,
[2] þe blod schedde of ys owne kynde, & defoule yt so þere.
And þe olde heynesse of Priamus werrede so,
Of was kynde heo come echon, & þat were hym loþ to do.
For þer [3] schulde in al [4] þo world no lond be for bore.
þis was cuene sixti ȝer er God were y bore.

Mandatum regis.

þe kyng [5] sende þis word a ȝeyn a non for þis tyþing:
" Cassibel, kyng of Breyteyne, to July sendeþ gretyng.
" Wonder it ys, Sire emperour, [6] þat noble gentrise
" þat is so noble & eke y fuld with so fyl couetyse,
" þat [7] worde's nobleye hast so muche, of eche mon mest,
" þat for couetise art y come so fer fro þe Est,
" To wilne oure lutel god, þat God vs wolde sende
" þat beþ hire bi oure self, as at þe worlde's ende:

---

[1] To the cite of Rome, As alle othur kynges dude, in hys ryght seruage, And his lond holde of hym, & dude hym homage, Lest the heigh· *Ar.* [2] To shede his owene kynde blod & defouled there; And take hede of Priame's prude, that werrede so. Of his kynde hij come echon, & that hij were loth do *Ar.* [3] Ne sholde *Ar.* [4] The *Ar.* [5] Hym sende word a ye, tho he hurde this tydynge: *Ar.* [6] Of thy gret gentrise, That though so foule anetherest hit with thy couetyse, That wordles welth hast so muche, of alle men mest, That for couetyse ert y come so fer fram the Est *Ar.* [7] *L.* worlde's.

" [1] And

" [1] And þou nart one y payed oure tresour to nyme at ene,
" Bute þou þer aftur vs binyme oure franchise al clene,
" To brynge vs so fre as we beþ in to [2] fyl seruage,
" þat we bere þe and þyne euermore truage.
" Gret wrong þou woldest don vs, wen of on kynde
" We beþ y come ȝe & we, as þou hast þi self in mynde.
" þenne aȝte yt be y nowȝ, wen we beþ of on blod,
" Loue & frenschipe aske vs, ȝef þou þe wel vnderstod,
" Thaw þou ne askedest [3] þer vppe þralhed euermo.
" Sikerliche we ne konne noȝt of þralhed ne of wo.
" So muche we habbeþ euer y be in [4] franchise ȝet her to,
" þat þei oure owne Godes wolde in þralhede vs do,
" Fonde we wolde a ȝeyn hem [5] our franchise withstonde.
" þei þou þer fore, Sire emperour, grete power habbe on honde,
" Wyte [6] to soþe, þat we wolleþ for oure franchise fygte,
" And for our lond, raþer þen [7] we lesed with vn ryȝt.
þis was eke four hundred ȝer, and four score, & þrottene,
Aftur þat þe borȝ of Rome first was mad iche wene.
þo þe emperour herde þis, to schippes he wende faste, Julius venit Angliam.
And al hys power forþ with hym, and sailes vp caste.
þei entrede in at Temse mouþ, and þer heo gonne a riue.
þo Cassibel herde þis, [8] he ȝarkede hym bi lyue.
Now hadde kyng Lud, ys broþer, ȝonge sones twei,
Androge and Tennant, þat þo ȝonge were beye,

[1] And þat though nert nought onliche apayd *Ar.* [2] Gret *Ar.* [3] Eke ther to thraldom euere mo. For on thraldom konne we nought, ne of such other wo *Ar.* [4] Franchise hider to. For theygh that the Godes hem self wolde in to thraldom vs do *Ar.* [5] For oure *Ar.* [6] For soth *Ar.* [7] We wol leue hit with vnryghte *Ar.* [8] He greithed hym as blyue *Ar.*

þo here fader dyede to holde þe kyndom.
[1] þer fore þer to Cassibel al þat lond nom.
Ac þo nolde not Cassibel, þat heo schulde allyng faile.
Tennant þe ȝonger he made erl of Cornewale,
And Androge erle of Kent, & ȝaf hym London þer to.
Boþe heo were noble men þo þis dede was y do.
þe kyng hadde [2] eke a broþer, Nenny was hys name,
Strong knyȝt and hardi, and mon of gret fame.
þe kynge's chef conseleres þese þre were of þis þing.
Alle heo come to Canterburi at þe bi gynnyng.
þere þe kyng & ys power such conseil to gedere nome,
To kepe þe emperoure's folc er [3] heo to fer income.
For ȝef þei hadde eny þing y wonne of castel or of ton̄,
Wel þe worse it wolde be to brynge hem þer don.
[4] þo kyng wente toward þe se mid fair ost ynowȝ,
[5] And as þe emperour hadde y piȝt ys pauelon he drowȝ.
þo [6] he hadde y ordeyned here ost in eyþer syde,
[7] þo batail heo smyton stronȝ ynowȝ, þat cowþ was ful wyde.
Bellum. Myd arwen & myd quareles so muche folk [8] first// me slow,
[9] And seþþe with speres smyton a doun, þat deol was ynow.
þo heo were þorȝ out y mengd with swerdes & with mace,
Myd axe & mid aules, so muche folk in þat place

---

[1] þerfore Cassibelan this lond to hym nom, And also he nolde, that eny thyng these children sholde faille *Ar.* [2] Eke a nothur brothur *Ar.* [3] Hij to bataille come *Ar.* [4] The *Ar.* [5] And toward themperoure's tente euene he hym drough *Ar.* [6] Hij *Ar.* [7] An *pro* tho *in Ar.* [8] *Deest Ar.* [9] And with swerd and with speres, that deol hit was y nough *Ar.*

Me-

Me slow, þat al þe erþe a boute stod [1] as in flode
Er þe bataile were y do al of red blode.
Nenny þe kynge's broþer and þe erl of Kent al so,
Mid al here power of Kent, & myd þe Londreis þer to,
[2] Awatede hem to þilke ost, þat þe emperour inne was.
So þat [3] Nennyn þe emperour bi cas,
Anon he willede in herte with so hey mon to fyȝte.
He asailede hym & drow ys swerd, & smot with al ys myȝt.
Ac þe emperour mid his [4] scheld þo strok hente ynow,
And drow hys swerd [5] an hey, & to þe gronde faste slow,
And smot Nennyn þorȝ þe helm [6] somdel toward þe brayn.
And sc̄þþe toward þilke stude he smot with more mayne,
To haue y cloue [7] hym″ al þat hed, ac [8] Nennyn ys scheld nom,
And dude by twene, þat þe strok so depe þer inne [9] ne″ com,
þat þe emperour ne myȝte yt out drawe with al ys mayn.
[10] Nennyn caste [11] caste″ ys owne swerd anon a wey wel fayn,
And [12] nom þet swerd to hym, þat so noble was & riche. Lucracio gladii.
For þer nes in al þe world swerd hym yliche.
For þer nas non þer with y wonded, þat euer keuer myȝte.
þer fore yt was rede deþ y cleped and mid ryȝte.
þo [13] Nennyn hadde þat gode swerd, a boute he smot to gronde.
Ech mon þat he þer with smot, he ȝef deþe's wonde.

---

[1] Al on a flode *Ar.* [2] Ordeyned hem *Ar.* [3] Neny than Emperour y segh as fel by cas, *Ar.* [4] Swerd thane strok *Ar.* [5] Anon, and to grounde slough. He smot Neny *Ar.* [6] Almost in to the brayne *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] Neny *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] Neny *Ar.* [11] *Redundat.* [12] Nam to hym themperoure's swerd, that *Ar.* [13] Neny *Ar.*

þe Romaynes laie soue a doun, he made emtý place.
Victoria Brytonum. And þe Brytones a ryse faste, so þat, þorw Gode's grace,
Heo hadde þe maistry of þe feld. [1] þo Romaynes flowe [2] bi lyue,
Ac mony was þe moder child þat arst was broȝt of lyue.
þe emperour and ys power to schip flowe faste,
And to France flow aȝeyn, somdel þei were agaste.
Here folc heo loren in þe se þorȝ tempest monyon,
[3] Wat in batayle wat in se, & heore horses ney echon.
Cassibel was glad y now þo he hadde þe maystrie.
[4] Fayre he þonkede ys gode folc, and of gret corteysie
Of ȝiftes [5] delde among hem euer as heo were.
So þat joye and [6] murþe y now among hem was þere.
Ac þer was among hem deol ynow for [7] Nennyn y broȝt,
þat þe emperour þe wonde ȝef, þat he ne myȝt hele noȝt.
He lai for [8] pyned in þe wonde, and to deþe drowȝ,
And dyede þe [9] fyfþe day myd sorwe & deol y nowȝ.
Atte Norþ ȝate of London heo buryode þis gode knyȝt,
And buryede with hym in hys chest þat swerd þat was so bryȝt,
þat he wan of þe emperour with honour y nowȝ,
þat rede deþ was y clepud, war wyþ he hym slowȝ.
Y buried it was forþ with hym, as in tokenynge
Of ys prowes, þat he yt wan of on so heý a kynge.

---

[1] þe *Ar.* [2] Blyue *Ar.* [3] Many in bataille & many in see, and hure hors euerichon *Ar.* [4] Faire gan to thonke his folk, and dude hem courtasie *Ar.* [5] He delde a mong hem euere as worthy were *Ar.* [6] Blisse *Ar.* [7] Neny *Ar.* [8] Pynynge *Ar.* [9] Fiftenethe *Ar.*

Cassibel

Cassibel þe gode kyng hym gan euer vnderstonde,
þat þe emperour þouȝte ȝet werre in hys londe.
þe fyf townes of þe fyf portes he lette walle aboute,
And so gode knyȝtes dude þer, þat he nadde þer no doute.
[1] Stakes of yrn mony on he pyȝte in Temese gronde,
A boue scharpe & kene ynow, bi neþe grete & ronde,
þat, ȝef þer eny schippes come er me y war were,
Heo schulde piche hem þoru out & a drenche hem so þere.
Here was coyntyse ynow, he lette al so a rere
[2] Vp þe water strong hows, þat heo vn warned nere.
And of þe ȝonge folk of þe lond þer inne dude y nowe,
To be prest to kepe here fon, wen þei [3] to hem drowe.

JULIUS [4] þe emperour with strong power y nowȝ, Reditus Julii.
Two ȝer aftur þe bataile, to Engelond a ȝeyn drow,
And þouȝte sle al þat folk, & wynne þis kyndom,
[5] Ac he caste þer of ambes, as þo he to londe com.
For as þis schippes with gret eir come toward londe
In Temse, as þei al þe world ne schulde hem at stonde,
þe pȳkes smyte hem þoru out, or þei wyste wat yt were,
And daschte and a dreynte fourty schippes þere.
And a þousant gode knyȝtes þer inne were adreynt,
[6] And al here atyl and tresour was al so a seynt.

---

[1] Piles he pighte manyon vpon Themese grounde *Ar.* [2] Upon Themese toures stronge, that hij vnwarned nere *Ar.* [3] To londe droughe *Ar.* [4] The seconde comynge of Julius *Ar. in margine.* [5] And forto do this ilke dede, gret people with hym he nom. And as hure shipes *Ar.* [6] And hure catel and tresour *Ar.*

And

And so heo myȝte lerne, wuch Brytones were.
Betere hem hadde be at Rome, þan y osted þere.
þe emperour with drow hym þo, and by an oþer ende
To londe he com[1] wroȝ y now, þis lond forto schende.
And kyng Cassibel y sei so muche folk y lore,
And adreynt of hys fon, glad he was þer fore.
And naþeles he was sori, and made gret mone
Of hem þat of scapede, þat heo nadde be dreynt echone.
þo þe Romaynes were y come to þe lond at þe laste,
Bellum. Cassibel with ys power a ȝeyn hem sette faste.
Heo smyton batail strong y now, þer was y do gret wo,
And mony slawe on eyþer half, ac of þe Romaynes mo.
For þe Brytones wox faste, þe Romaynes by neþe were.
þo þe emperour say, þat ys fare nas noȝt þere,
Mid lute folk, þat hym was bi leued, to schip he goþ faste.
Hyt were men of a god lond þat[2] hem so kouþe agaste.
þe kyng Cassibel anon for joye made ys heste,
þat alle þe knyȝtes of hys lond come to ys feste,
To London at a certeyn day, and here wyues al so,
Here sacrifise to here Godes, as ryȝt was, to do.
Numerus animalium. Fourti[3] þousant of roþeren he lette quelle þer to,
And of fatte weþeres an hundred þousand al so.
Of wilde bestes he lette þritti þousant quelle.
þe wylde foules & þe tame ne myȝte nomon telle.
þo þis fest ȝare was, þat folk first in here wyse
To heore Godes as heo wolde dude here sacrifise.

---

[1] Wroth *Ar.* [2] Hem so wel a gaste *Ar.* [3] Thousend oxen he let kulle ther to *Ar.*

þer aftur þe sete to heore mete with so gret noblei echon,
þat me nuste þer bi fore so noble [1] fest non.
Aftur mete, as ryzt was, þe menstrales zeode aboute,
And knyztes and [2] sweynes in carole gret route.
So þat þe kynge's neuew, and þe erle's neuew of Kent,
þat twei zonge bacheleres noble were and gent,
[3] In þis noble companye strif bi gonne arere,
So þat þe erle's neuew þat oþer slowz ryzt þere.
þo was al þe court anyed, as þei moste nede,
þe kyng ferde eke for wraþþe as he wolde wede.
[4] Androge he sende word, þat he ys neuew toke
And brozte hym forþ [5] forte fonge þat þe court hym wolde loke.
Androge was a drad [6] for he uuste þe kynge's wille,
And loþ [7] he hadde ys neuew to honge or spille.
þe kyng he sende word a zeyn, þat he hadde ys franchise
In ys owne court, forto loke domes and asise,
And þat, zef ys neuew hadde mys do, in hys owne court he scholde
Onswere to eche mon, [8] þat to hym siwe wolde.
þo [9] þis kyng herde þis, þat he ne myzt bi ryzt lawe
Juge hym, þat ys neuew brozte of ys lyf dawe,
He greyþede ys ost [10] faste vp þe erl of Kent,
To brynge ys neuew with strengþe [11] to stonde to juggement.

Occisio nepotis regis.

Contencio regis & Androgei.

---

[1] A feste *Ar.* [2] Ladyes *pro sweynes in Ar.* [3] As they *pleide atte chesse, stryf they gonne arere Ar.* [4] To Androge erl he sende word, *Ar.* [5] Forto a vonge *Ar.* [6] Tho he wuste *Ar.* [7] Hym was that his cosyn hange sholde or spylle *Ar.* [8] That hym folwe wolde *Ar.* [9] The *pro* þis *in Ar.* [10] Swythe anon vpon the *Ar.* [11] To fonge juggement *Ar.*

Oþer

Oþer mid fuyr or mid swerd bryng he wolde al out,
Hym to noȝt and al ys [1] þing, ner he ner so prout.
þis erl bi grete lordes to þis kyng ofte sende,
þat he schulde for Gode's loue ys wylle [2] som del amende,
And þat he for ys neuew wolde, for to a baty stryf,
Do hey amendement, sawue lyme and lyf.
þo þer nas non oþer wey, bute stonde al out to dome,
þe erl of an oþer wey bi þouȝte [3] bi þouȝte" hym ylome.
And as he and ys conseil stable conseil nome,
Litteræ missæ imperatori. þese letres sende to July þe emperour of Rome.
" To July þe emperour of Rome Androge, erl of Kent,
" Gretyng and stable loue, aftur wraþþe, [4] send.
" Sire, wyte to soþe, þat sore of [5] þinket yt me,
" þat ich habbe for oure kynge's loue y holde aȝeyn þe,
" þat [6] my power nadde y be, þou haddest hym ouer come.
" Ac for he haþ now þe maistry, such pruyd hym haþ y nome,
" þat now me, þoru wam he haþ of [7] þe maistrie,
" Dryue he wolde out of ys lond myd gret vilenye.
" Ich habbe y holde hym in hys lond, & my mede þer of ys,
" þat he wol me dryue of ys lond vndeserued ywis.
" For oure Godes y take witnesse, þat oþer gult non þer nys,
" Bote þat i nelle my neuew, þat a lytel dude amys,
" Bi take hym to juggement, to honge oþer to drawe,
" [8] Ich wole, saue lym & lyf, brynge hym [9] to" eche lawe.
" þer fore ich bidde, þat ich mowe my stat holde þorȝ þe,
" And þat þou [10] vp hym Bretayne mowe wynne þorȝ me.

[1] Men *pro* þing *in Ar.* [2] Somwhat amende *Ar.* [3] *Dele.* [4] Sent *Ar.* [5] Thynketh *Ar.* [6] Yf my *Ar.* [7] The the *Ar.* [8] Ac ich wolde, *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] Of hym *Ar.*

And

" And ne þenche þou, Sire, noþing, þat ich treson þenche.
" For siker [1] þis þe soþe wei, withouten eny wrenche.
" [2] And God wole, þat men ofte in wraþþe & in sore,
" þat after here grete wraþþe here loue be þe more.
þo þe [3] emperou herde þis, he ne tryste not wel her to,
With oute siker ostage, such þing to do.
þe erl þritti noble men, þat were of ys blod, Ostages.
Sende hym and ys owne sone, þat were ostages god.
Siker [4] was þo þe emperour, he ne leuede noȝt by hynde,
Ac com here to Engolond mid þe nexte wynde.
þe kyng [5] þe while London by segede faste, Adventus Julii.
And destryede þe erle's lond, & ys [6] contreis a doun caste.
Ac þo he herde, þat þe Romaynes y come were in hys londe,
To hem he wende hastyliche, & lette London stonde.
[7] þo he com ney Canterbury, in a valei þere by syde
He sey þe emperoure's ost ysprad a boute wyde.
þe emperour first [8] in ys half, & he hym self al so,
Ordeynede first here [9] ost, þe bataile forte do. Paracio belli.
Ac mid fyf þousand hors [10] ywrye, as it was bi speke,
þe erl of Kent was in [11] a wode, hym forte a wreke.
þer of nas not þe kyng war, ac with oute faile
Myd god herte he wende forþ to smyte þis bataile.

[1] This is the *Ar.* [2] And ofte hit falleth, that men, that buth in wrathe and in sore, After hure grete wrathe, hure loue wexeth the more *Ar.* [3] *L.* emperour. [4] The thirde comynge of Julie Emperour *Ar. in marg.* [5] Thulke while *Ar.* [6] Courtes *Ar.* [7] *Ut igitur vallem prope Dorobernium intravit, aspexit in eadem Romanorum exercitum castra & tentoria ponentem* Galfr. Mon. [8] On his half, and the kyng on his also, *Ar.* [9] Ostes, the bataile for to do *Ar.* [10] Y heled, as *Ar.* [11] A wode, forto be a wreke *Ar.*

By

By twene þe see and Canterbury þis bataile was,
Neuer ich wene more [1] slaȝt in so lute wyle nas.
þat folk fel doun for wonded & y slawe in eyþer syde
[2] Ac þikke as leues doþ of tren a ȝeyn wyntre's tyde.
Ac þo [3] þat folk of þis lond neyȝ hadde þe maistrye,
Com þe erl of Kent mid ys ost þorȝ ys tricherie
Al fresch bi hynde þe Britones, alas! þikke stonde.
Fugit Cassibellanus. So þat þis lond was y broȝt þorȝ þis treson to gronde.
Ac þe kyng and somme of ys defendede hem so faste,
þat heo for hem alle o liue a scapede atte laste,
And nolde hem ȝelde for no þing, ac among here fon þere
Of scape vp an hey [4] hul, as mony roches were,
And þer heo cudde here prowes, & kepte hem þere an heyȝ
With stones, þat nomon ne durste come hem neyȝ.
Ow! lord þe noble folk, [5] þat ys of þis londe,
Wan heo þe emperour of Rome, þat no lond ne myȝte of stonde,
In bataile and al ys ost ouer come tuey,
And euer wolde, as ich wene, nadde ybe tricherie.
þer fore ich wene, þat þis lond neuer y wonne nere,
Bute yt þorȝ treson of þe folk of þe selue lond were.
þo þe emperoure ne myȝte þe kyng myd strengþe ouer come,
þat hul he kepte for to he hadde myd hongur hym y nome.
Atte laste [6] þe kyng was y brouȝt to gronde
Rex mittit comiti. [7] For honger for defaut of mete, alas! þilke stonde.

---

[1] Slaught *Ar.* [2] *L.* as. [3] The folk *Ar.* [4] Hulle, ther many roches were, *Ar.* [5] That was on this londe, *Ar.* [6] Tho the kyng was al y brought *Ar.* [7] Thurgh hunger *Ar.*

And

And he sei wel, þat he moste nede for honger dye,
Or ȝelde hym to þe emperour, as al ys men seye,
And þe emperoure's prison he dradde eke ful sore,
þer fore þe erl of Kent he by souȝte milce and ore,
þat he hadde rewþe of hym, [1] and for ys genterise
Made ys pes with þe emperour with oute feỳntỳse,
And þat þe kynde blod of þis lond, of wham [2] heo boþe,
Nere þoru hym y broȝt to schame, & þat he toke þer of gome.
And þat ȝef he hadde oȝt misdo aȝeyn hym myd wowȝ,
þat he yt wolde amendy aȝeyn hym wel y now.
þo Androge herde þis, som del he was in þoȝt.
"þe prynce," he seide, "oþer kyng nỳs to preyse noȝt,
"þat in tyme of werre as a lomb ys boþe meke & mylde,
"And in tyme of pes as a lyon boþe cruel & wylde.
"Mi Goddes of heuene and of erþe, wat segge now ȝe?
"My lord bi secheþ now my grace, þat myȝte er [3] hoto me.
"Mid þe emperour and mid me pes he secheþ to drawe:
"And we boþe of hym bi fore pees wilnede wel fawe.
"þer fore he schulde hym habbe y þoȝt, þat þorȝ me he was aboue,
"And þorȝ me he myȝt haue come a doun, & y kud [4] me loue.
"For yt ys to [5] eche prince y wis and kyng vilenye,
"To de foule ys knyȝtes, þoru wam he haþ maystrie.
"For þe maistry nys not a kynge's, ne be he neuer so god,
"Ac knyȝtes, þat vnder hỳm fyȝteþ, & schedeþ here blod.

---

[1] And of his gentrise *Ar.*
[2] *Deest vox. Nam* hii both come *in Ar.*
[3] Hote *Ar.*
[4] My loue *Ar.*
[5] Ech a kyng or prince vilanye *Ar.*

And

" And naþeles ich wol fonden, to brynge hym of ys sore.
" For ich habbe of hym wreche ynow, wen he bi seche þ myn ore.
þe erl wende [1] to emperour, & [2] set a doun on kne:
" Sire," he seide, " al þi wille þou hast þou myȝt y se
" Of þe kyng, þat ys myn vncle, he ys at þi wille.
" Haue merci of hym ich bidde, & let hym noȝt a spille.
" What woldest þou more of hym, bute þat he þe truage bere?
þe emperour was stille, & ne ȝef hym non onswere.
" Sire emperour," quoþ þe erl þo, " [3] ne be ȝe noȝt so bolde.
" Understond, þat forward ich habbe al þe y holde,
" To brynge þe kyng bi neþe þe, & þat þou wonne ys londe.
" Wat schulde ich þe more do, nast þou al þis in þin honde?
" Nolde God, þat y suffrede my lord, þat is and was,
(" [4] þat bid me for ȝefnesse, & to amende hys trespas)
" þat he in þyne bendes come, [5] God yt schyld me.
" For þou [6] ne schalt [7] so lyȝtliche hym nyme, y segge þe.
" Wyle ich libbe for ich wole in eche maner fonde,
" To helpe my lord & myn vncle, bute þou me vnderstonde.
þo þe emperour herde þis, he by gan hym by þenche,
And hys wraþþe toward þe kyng, for drede of þe erl, quenche.
[8] þo emperour & þe kyng in þis forme a cordede were,
þat þe kyng of þis lond to þe emperour bere

---

1 The emp. *Ar.* 2 Sette hym doun a kne *Ar.* 3 Ne bere ye yough nought to bolde *Ar.* 4 And biddeth me foryeuenesse to a mendy his trespas *Ar.* 5 God for shulde hit me *Ar.* 6 Ne shalt nought so lightlyche hym take, ich segge the. Al the while that ych lyue, euere ich wole fonde *Ar.* 7 *Non leve est interficere Cassibelliaunum me vivente, cui auxilium meum reddere non erubescam, nisi consilio meo parueris* Galfr. Mon. 8 Tho the Emperour *Ar.*

þre

þre þousant pownd of seluer from ȝer to ȝere,
As to truage to Rome, þat non [1] ner bore nere.
And in þis manner was Engolond brouȝt first in seruage,
And þorȝ treson of þis selue lond first ȝef truage.
þer fore a kyng ne may noȝt amonȝ ys knyȝtes be
[2] To sturne of hys juggement, ac somdel hym by se,
[3] þat he haþ to hem neode he not wuche stonde.
For a such wille, as ȝe y seþ, broȝte þis lond to gronde.
þe emperour & þe kyng to grete loue drowe,
And eyþer [4] to" oþer by twene hem ȝiftes ȝeue ynowe,
And bi leuede al þe wynter to gedere in þis lond.
Ac aȝeyn somer þe emperour, [5] þo he hadde al on hond,
Wende toward Rome, and myd gret loue
Nom with hym þe erl of Kent, þorw wam he was a boue.
[6] And þoru nobleyo þat he was man of so gret fame, Vocacio mensis Julii.
He let a moneþ of þe ȝer clepye aftur ys owne name,
Julius, as he het ym self, þe moneþ þat next ys
Bi fore heruest, as me clepuþ ȝet so þe moneþ y wys.

CASSIBEL þe gode kyng, as God ȝef [7] þat cas, Obitus Cassibellani.
Deide aftur [8] scne ȝer þat he ouer come was,
And y buryed was at Euerwyk, [9] & þis kyndom
Temiwant, ys broþer sone, aftur hym nome,

---

[1] Forbore *Ar.* [2] To strange of his juggementz *Ar.* [3] And that haueth to hem nede he not whuche stounde. For thurgh such a wilfulnesse this lond was brought to grounde. The emperour tho & the *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] Whan he hadde *Ar.* [6] This Julius the Emperour was of so grete fame, *Ar.* [7] The *pro* þat *in Ar.* [8] Seuen *Ar.* [9] And tho this *Ar.*

þat was erl of Cornewaile, and þe erle's broþer of Kent
Androge, that was to Rome mid þe emperour y went.

AUGUSTUS was emperour aftur July of Rome,
þe truage boþe of þis lond from ȝer to ȝer heo nome.
þe kynge's sone Tenwant, Kymbel was ys name,
He huld with hym at Rome, man of noble fame.
He ȝaf hym armes & made him knyȝt [1] ys owne honde.
Kymbel rex. þis Kymbel aftur hys fader kyng was of þis londe.
So muche he louede þe [2] emperour, þat þei he myȝt out
Hys truage at holde a ȝer, for loue he nolde noȝt.
þo þis August hadde y be emperour two & fourti ȝer,
He let make a descriuyng, þat y mad nas neuer er.
He sende aboute ys messageres (as yt ys y write)
To eche lond in al þe world a certeyn [3] forte wyte,
How mony schiren were in eche lond, & townes in eche schire,
And how mony men in eche toun, (he was a gret sire)
And þat ech mon paide a peny, & þat me hym þe money bere,
War þoru he wiste, how mony men in al þe world were.
And me made þis descriuing in þis lond, as wel
As in any oþer lond, bi þe kynge's day [4] Kinbel.
And naþeles [5] y leue yt not, þat he ne dude al wel þanne
For loue of þe panes, as to wyte þe noumbre of þe menne.

---

[1] With his owen honde *Ar.* [2] Emperour, than whan he myghte he nolde, The truage that his fader bar, he wolde nought with holde *Ar.* [3] For to *Ar.* [4] Kymbel *Ar.* [5] Ich leue hit wel, he dude hit somdel thanne, As wel for loue of the pans, as to knowe the numbre of manne *Ar.*

A boute

A boute Jerusalem þis noumbryng he bi gan,
As in þe myddes of þe world, to noumbre eche man.
þilke tyme oure lord was in [1] Bedleem ybore — Ortus Christi.
Of [2] Marie, to saue men, þat arst were for lore;
By Kinbele's day, þat kyng was of Breteyne here,
And in þe emperoure's August two and fourti ȝere,
þat was y clepud Octouian in an oþer name.
þis emperour August was of so gret fame,
þat, for Juli þe emperour, (þat bi fore hym was er)
Hadde aftur hym y clepud a moneþ in the ȝer,
þe nexte [3] moneþ afturward, þat heruest moneþ ys,
He let clepe aftur [4] hym August y wys.
þo August hadde y be emperour fyfty ȝer and fyue,
And wel y holde ys power, he wende out of þis lyue.

TYBERI, ys stepsone, aftur hym com,
þat nobliche huld ys power, & eke ys kyndom.
þe [5] Gywes, & Herodes (þat here [6] kyng was)
He a dauntede harde y now, and non harm yt nas.
Pilatus he sende þider, [7] here// justise to be þere, — Pylatus.
Forto holde hem harde y now, as heo wel worþi were.
And ȝet for al þan, by ys day, þoru here luþer mode,
Heo broȝte oure lord Jhesu Christ [8] to dye on þe rode. — Passio Christi.

---

1 Bethlem *Ar.* 2 Maide *Marie*, to saue mankynde, that *theigh* nere for lore; By kynge's day Kymbelyn of this Brutayne here, And the Emperoure's tyme August, two & fourty yere, *Ar.* 3 Moneth in the yer, that harueste *Ar.* 4 His name *pro* hym *in Ar.* 5 Juwes *Ar.* 6 Kyng tho was *Ar.* 7 *Deest Ar.* 8 To dethe vpon the Rode *Ar.*

þre and twenti ȝer emperour he was by fore ys deþe,
And aftur hym was Gayus fyf ȝer vn neþe.
[1] Kynbel, oure kyng of þis lond, sones hadde twei,
Guyder and Aruirag, noblemen beye.
Guyder aftur ys fader kyng was of þis lond,
And Claudius emperour aftur Gay ich vnderstonde.
Y mad he was emperour sixti ȝer, ich wene,
Aftur þat God was y bore, and a bouten an eiȝtetene
Aftur oure lorde's deþ. a sene hundred ȝer.
And euene eiȝte and nyenti Rome was y mad er.

GWIDER, our kyng of þis lond, ys truage at huld sone,
[2] To Rome þat ys eldore were y wond to done.
Claudius venit Angliam. Claudius þe emperour þer of hym gan bi se.
þe ferþe ȝer þat he hadde emperour y be
Mid gret ost he wende here to þis londe,
[3] A boute Souþhamto he a ryuede ich vnderstonde.
þo kyng Guyder vnder ȝet, þat heo a riuede þere,
Hym þouȝte lonȝ mid ys [4] ost er he at hem were.
[5] Heo mette hem to gedere [6] mid power ynoȝ.
Bellum. Muche folk [7] in eyþe half to gronde me slog.
þe kyng Guyder more folk [8] slowe ys owne honde,
þan muche del of ys [9] ost, as ich vnderstonde.

---

[1] Kymbelyn, kyng of Brutaýne, sones hadde tweýe *Ar.* [2] That his auncetres to Rome were woned to done *Ar.* [3] In the contreie of Southamtone *Ar.* [4] Power *pro* ost *in Ar.* [5] IIii *Ar.* [6] With gret power ynough *Ar.* [7] On aither side to grounde me faste slough *Ar.* [8] Slough with his honde *Ar.* [9] Folk *pro* ost *in Ar.*

[1] þis

[1] þis Romaynes were for noȝt ouercome atte laste,
[2] þat þe emperour with ys ost bi gan to fle faste.
A cheuenteyn þer was with hym, [3] Haym was ys name.
He sey, þat [4] heore partye wroȝt was ney to schame.
He by þouȝte hym of felonye, and lette hym arme þere
Mid armes of Brytones, as he of þis lond were.
He sywede myd þe Brytones vp þe Romaynes so faste,
þat vr Kyng [5] hym louede, & ys herte al vp hym caste.
He spek Englisch, for he was at Rome ynorisched bi fore
Myd ostage of þis lond, me louede hym þe bet þer fore.
He was euer ur kyng nex, and atte last he drow
Hys swerd, [6] ar he were y war, & oure kyng so slow.
þer was tricheri y now. for nomon ne may bet do
Gyle [7] an oþer, þan þilke þat he trusteþ mest to.
To hys felawes he [8] wende anon, & bad hem hardi be;
So þat þe Brytones were [9] vp þe poynt to" fle.
Aruirag, oure kynge's broþer, wende forþ anon þere,
And dude on þe kynge's armes, hym self as yt were.
And lepte on ys stede, and siwede and sloȝ fast ys fon,
[10] And þe Brutones with hym, for heo wende, þat it were þe kyng echon.

Haym interfecit regem per fraudem.

[1] The Romaynes, *Ar.* [2] So that themperour *Ar.* [3] Lellius Haym *Ar.* & Lellius Hamondus *in marg.* [4] His partye was neygh y brought to shame *Ar.* [5] Hym louede wel, & his herte to hym caste. He spake Brutone, for he was with ostages at Rome byfore Of this londe a queynted, and hadde hit nought y lore. He was euere oure kyng nexte *Ar.* [6] Er me were y war, and oure kyng a slough *Ar.* [7] To a nothur, than he that a man trusteth most to *Ar.* [8] Yede anon, *Ar.* [9] In poynt forto *Ar.* [10] The Brutones wende hit were hure kyng, & siwede hym echon *Ar.*

Heo were alle þo so [1] harde, and þat folk slowe so faste,
þat þe emperour bi gan to fle mid ys folk at the laste
[2] To schippes, & into þe see with wrechede hed y now.
Ac þe luþur Haym with ys folk toward þe wode hym drowe.
Aruirag hym sywede, and [3] to grounde euer slowȝ.
Atte laste ys tricherie wel lutel he [4] by lowȝ.
Hampton. He ouer tok hym at an hauene & sloȝ hym ryȝt þere.
Lutel harm thei tricherus [5] so alle y serued were.
þe hauene þer he was y slawe, aftur [6] Haym ys name y wys,
Hamptone was y clepud, as he ȝet y clepud ys.
[7] For Souþhamptone he ys y clepud, and worþ euermo,
In þis maner þe Britones þis lond [8] wiste þo.
Claudius þe emperour nolde not ȝet bi leue.
Eft sone he [9] gan with ys ost into þis lond weue.
Aruirag at Wynchestre with ys men was echon.
With ys power þe emperour [10] bisegede hym anon.
Aruirag greyþede hym and ys folk a boute,
And wendeþ forþ to ȝeue hym batail with oute.
þo he com out ward with ys folk, þe emperour with stod,
And dredde of hys hardynesse, & þouȝte yt was not god,

---

[1] Wel y hardied, *Ar.* [2] To his shipes in to the see with wrechede ynough. The luther Haym with othur folk to ward a wode hem drough *Ar.* [3] Euere to grounde slough. And atte laste *Ar.* [4] By lough *Ar.* [5] Alle so y serued *Ar.* [6] Haym ywis, Haymtone was *Ar.* [7] Southamtone hit is eke y cluped, *Ar.* [8] Kepte tho *Ar.* [9] Com with his ost in to the lond weue *Ar.* [10] Bysette hem echon [*l.* anon.] Aruiragus araiede hym, and ordeynede his route, Wende forth to yeue hem bataille that were with oute. He com outward *Ar.*

To

To do hys lyf [1] an auntre, and ys men al so.
He þougte te speke of a cord, ȝef it myȝte be y do.
To þe kyng he sende word, þat he schulde hym [2] be se
And make a forme of a cord, as yt myȝte best be.
For wen heo hadde al y foȝte, & here lyf [3] an auntre y do,
And here folk slawe on eyþer syde, & perauntre hem self also,
Al for a lutel couetyse [4] þe bi ȝete war þanne lute,
Beter yt were [5] a cordy, and bi leue heore [6] prude.
For he was so god [7] knyȝt, and also so noble kyng,
He [8] beod for to ȝeue hym ys doȝter in spousyng,
þe nobleste damesel þat was in eny londe,
And to spouse þe emperoure's [9] doȝter yt ner hym no schonde,
[10] For wat he bere ys truage, as ryȝt [11] were, to Rome
As [12] alle oþer kynges dude, and ys eldren y lome.
þe kyng for ys heye herte anon yt with seide:
Ac noþeles ys conseil hym gan þer to rede,
And saide, þat it was to hym gret prow and honour,
To be in such mariage alied to þe emperour,
þo [13] hexte prince of þe world, and þo maide so noble al so,
And þat it [14] nere hym no schame, ys truage to do

[1] In auenture, and his mennes also *Ar.* [2] By se *Ar.* [3] In auenture *Ar.* [4] The by ẏete were thanne lẏte *Ar.* [5] To acordy *Ar.* [6] Pruyte *Ar.* [7] A knyght *Ar.* [8] Praide hym for to *Ar.* *At* beod *rectè se habet. idem nempe est atque* offered. [9] Douȝhtur nere to hẏm no shonde, For thy that he bere *Ar.* [10] *Ea conditione (ait) ut imperio Romano subditus esset. Sic enim* Galfridus Mon. "*Mandabat igitur ei* [*Arvi-*
"*ragó*]*concordiam, daturum-*
"*que promittebat sese filiam*
"*suam, si tantummodo reg-*
"*num Britanniæ sub Roma-*
"*na potestate recognosceret.*" [11] Was *Ar.* [12] The *pro* alle *in Ar.* [13] Heighest *Ar.* [14] Were *Ar.*

To þe noble stude of Rome, wan oþer kynges echone
Hit dude þorȝ al þe world, [1] & in so noble forme none.
þe kyng, þei he hawteyn were, ches þe best won,
Sponsacio filiæ Claudii. [2] And vnder stod ys conseil, so þat heo were at on,
þat he bere ys truage, as oþer dude, to Rome,
And þat he þe emperoure's doȝter in spoushed þus nome.
þat maide was to lond y broȝt of so noble gentrise,
Fairor womman nas þo non, y hote heo was Gewise.
At a lute toun, þat was þo bi Est Walis,
þat vp Seuerne stod, y spoused [3] heo were y wys.
þe kyng louede ys wyf a non so purliche & so faste,
þat al [4] ys herte [5] outliche on hire one he caste.
Vocacio Glouce-striæ. For honour of þe mariage, þe emperour and he
[6] Rerde, as heo y spoused was, a swyþe fair cite,
And aftur þe emperoure's name, þat Claudius was,
Heo lette þe cite clepe Claucestre for þis cas.
And þe emperour bi ȝet seþþe in þilke toun bi cas
A sone, þat me clepede Glow, þat gret mon seþþe was,

[1] Ac *pro & in Ar.* [2] And dude after his consail, *Ar.* [3] Hii *Ar.* [4] His herte toward hure al outrȳght he caste *Ar.* [5] Ontliche *forsitan malint nonnulli, ut* only *denotet. At* outliche *lectio verissima, idem scilicet quod* utterly *valens. Id quod etiam è* Galfr. Mon. *liquet. Sic enim ille:* "*Erat autem nomen puellæ Genuisa, eratque tantæ pulcritudinis, ut aspicientes in admirationem deduceret. Et ut maritali lege copulata fuit, tanto fervore amoris succendit regem, ita ut ipsam solam* cunctis rebus *præferret.*" *Et tamen* ontliche *ferri potest, ea, qua dixi, significatione, pro more Anglo-Saxonum, qui vocum ad unam eandemq; rem significandam repetitionem amant.* [6] Thar *(omisso* rerde, *quod tamen præfigi debet)* that he ȳ spoused was, a noble cite, *Ar.*

[2]An

[1] An hey duk of al þat stude, he clepede þat toun y wys
Aftur ys name Gloucestre, as he ȝut y clepud ys.
A boute four & twenti ȝer, as þis clerkes vnderstode,
Aftur þat oure [2] lord was y do on þe rode.
Gloucestre þorȝ þe emperour first þus a rerd was,
And Souþhampton þer bi fore, ȝe habbeþ y herd þat cas.
Sente Peter þer bi fore so muche [3] so" it were
Pope was [4] at Rome first, Cristendom to lere,
And sende Sent Mark þe euangelist in to Egypt for to preche
þe gospel þat he hadde y mad, and Cristendom to teche.
Sent Poul eke þilke tyme to Cristendom wende,
Sent Denys, & moný oþer, as vr Lord a boute hem [5] semde.
Sent Peter fyue and twenti ȝer Pope bi leuede so
[6] Forto yt was þe laste ȝer of þe emperour Nero.
þo þe emperour in þis lond hadde is wille i do y nowȝ,
He lette þe kyng [7] al y worþe, & to Rome a ȝeyn drowȝ.
þe kyng dyȝte þo þis lond nobliche with alle:
[8] He lette bulde vp grete townes, þat we re ney a doun falle.
þo Claudius þe emperour to ys ende was y do,
Aftur hym was emperour þe luþur mon Nero, Nero.

---

[1] That duk was aftur of the toun, and clepede hit y wis Aftur his name Glowcestre, as hit nough cleped is *Ar.* [2] Lord Crist do was on the roode *Ar.* [3] *Erasit quispiam in Ar.* [4] Of Rome, Cristendom *Ar. omisso* first. [5] *L.* sende *cum Ar.* [6] Fort hit *Ar.* [7] *Totam Britanniæ potestatem, sua absentia, Arvirago concessisse Claudium, hîc indicat auctor, illis verbis fultus, quæ Gal. fridus protulit, viz.* "*Ædificata igitur urbe, ac pacificata insula, rediit Claudius* "*Romam, regnumque provincialium insularum Arvirago permisit.* [8] And *pro* "he *in Ar.*

[1] þrot-

[1] þrottene ȝer and an half, and þat was longe y now,
And Seynt Peter & Seynt Poule in hys [2] lafte ȝer he slowȝ.
Passio Petri & Pauli. He bi com [3] sone þer aftur pur gydi and wod:
[4] For he was in ys moder wembe, as he vnderstod.
He þoȝte he wolde wyte, & se how [5] fair þe chaumbre were,
[6] War inne he was & kenede, ar ys moder hym bere.
Ys moder he let quelle a non, forto se with inne
How fair þe inneward was, þat he kenede inne.
þo ys moder y slaw was, me blamede hym þer fore,
And seyde, þat heo boȝte hym dere, er he were y bore.
"[7] ȝe is hyt," quoþ he, "so strong, myd childe to be stonde?
"Bi þe fey, þat ich owe Mahone, þe soþe ich wol fonde.
Hys ficicianes he [8] clepede, and swor ys oþ anon,
Bute heo maden hym with childe, he wolde hem sle echon.
Heo bi speke hem [9] bi twene, and, þe deþ forto fle,
þei ȝeuen hym a koynte drench, with childe for to be.
Hys wombe bi gan to [10] grete, & euer þe lenger þe more,
So [11] longe," þat hym þoȝte strong, hys wombe ok wel sore.
He clepede ys fiscicianes, [12] and swor grete a non,
Bute heo made hym bere child, he wolde hem honge echon.

---

[1] Trittene *Ar.* [2] *Repone* laste *ex Ar. Nec est cur putes*, lafte *recte posse retineri, ut sententia sit, eo anno, quo fuerit mortuus* relictus. *SS. Petrum atque Paulum occidisse.* [3] Sone afterward puýr *Ar.* [4] And hough he was in his moder wombe he thoughte & vnderstood *Ar.* [5] Mury *Ar.* [6] What that he was ynne y kenned, er *Ar.* [7] Ye, quath he, is hit strong, with childe to be bystonde? Bý the feý ich owe to my Godes, the sothe *Ar.* [8] Clepede tho, and *Ar.* [6] Bitwyne than, deth *Ar.* [10] Grety, *Ar.* [11] *Deest Ar.* [12] And swor his oth anon, Bute hii delyuerede hym anon, hii sholde deye echon. Hii yef *Ar.*

[1] þe

[1] þe ȝeue hym an oþer drenche, to habbe child þer,
So þat atte laste a sory child he ber. Rana.
[2] For it alles com forþ, yt was a foul frogge.
For gode me þinkeþ litel harm, þei yt hadde i be a dogge.
ȝet þis ȝredi wreche louede þis foule best,
As [3] wommon deþ hire child [4] alle þing mest,
And [5] let hym rere a noble court, with gret quoyntyse and gynne,
At þe on ende of Rome, to norische þe schrewe inne;
And clepude þe court Laterane, aftur þe frogge y wys,
For in þe langage of Rome, rane a frogge ys.
So ys þat stude y clepud now, & euer worþ for þat cas.
Feble was þe Godfader, aftur wam þe name was.
[6] þe firste chirche þat me lette in þo lond rere,
Seyn Jone's þe Lateran me rerede seþþe þere,
þat stond ȝet, & heued chirche þat of al Cristendom ys,
Ac a beter chef þer ys now, þan þe frogge was y wys.
Seþþe þe luþer emperour hadde in his herte joie,
To þenche [7] on fuyr, þat was in þe bataile of Troie, Combustio Romæ.
þo me barnde grete townes & courtes day & nyȝt,
And þoȝte yt was mury joie, to se so fair alyȝt.

---

[1] Hii *Ar.* [2] For tho hit al forth com, hit was a wel foul frogge. His fisiciens hadde y holde hym wel in the gogge. Yut this gidy wreche *Ar.* [3] A woman doth *Ar.* [4] Alther thỳnge *Ar.* [5] Let arere (*omisso* hym) *in Ar.* [6] The ferste cherche me rerede there of al Cristendom. And of Seỳnt Johanes de Laterane thus the name com. Suthe the luthure Emperour *Ar.* [7] On fair fuer, that brend the toun of Troỳe, When the grete toures brende & courtes day and nyght, Hym thoughte hit was a mury game to se such a syght. The wood wretche *Ar.*

þe

þe gydye wretche lette sette þe [1] toun of Rome on fuyre,
To habbe game of þe lyȝt, þe while yt myȝte dure.
þo wende forþ þe toun folk, as heo moste nede,
And nolde no more suffre þe schrewe among hem wede,
[2] And slowe þe schrewe in fyl deþ ynow,
And þus hym fel wreche of God for he þe apostle slowȝ.

VASPASIAN þe emperour aftur Nero com,
þat beter man was þan he, & [3] ne" worrede nogt Cristendom.
þe Giwes he worrede [4] y now, & brogt hem [5] first to nogt,
For as muche as þe luþer men oure Lord to deþ brogt.
For he and Tytus ys sone of oure Lord vnderstode,
Fourti ȝer aftur þat he deide on þe rode,
Occisio Judæorum. [6] And wende to Jerusalem, and þat toun felde to grounde,
And slowe [7] þe luþer Gywes al þat heo founde,
[8] Bute a schipful þer of a scapede, þat were to fele y wys,
War of com þe luþer brod, þat a mong men ȝet ys.
Ten [9] ȝer Vaspasian emperour was þo,
And Tytus ys sone aftur hym [10] ten ȝer, and no mo.
Domician, Tytus broþer, emperour þo was,
Fiftene ȝer aftur hym. no more schrewe þer nas.

---

[1] Cite *Ar.* [2] He sleigh for fere out of toun, and hym self slough, And for he Petur & Powel slough he hadde vengeance y nough *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Stronge ynough *Ar.* [5] Al to *Ar.* [6] Wonne the toun of Jerusalem, and fulde hit doun to grounde, *Ar.* [7] There the *Ar.* [8] Som yut of hem a skapede, & that was harm y wis, *Ar.* [9] Yer afterward Vaspasian *Ar.* [10] Two *Ar. recte. Adeo ut* ten *reponerem.*

For

For he [1] worrede Cristendom, as þe luþer Nero,
And let [2] martri Seyn Denys, & monỳ oþer al so.

[3] A NERUA was þo emperour a ȝer, & somdel more.
Trajan [4] com aftur hym, mon of gret lore. Trajanus.
Nyentene ȝer & an half emperour he was,
[5] þe noblest þat myȝte, bote þat he Cristene nas.
So ryȝtful he was, þat [6] þan he hadde a dede hym self ydo,
þat a ȝeyn [7] ys lawes was, and ys sone al so,
[8] For such dede a man schulde, þat þis hadde y wroȝt,
Lese ys on eye, & he hym self ne sparede hym self noȝt,
Bute let pulte out ys own eye, & ys sone's al so.
[9] Wel" fewe kynges [10] me syþ, þat yt wolde do.
þer fore Seyn Gregori, þo he o londe was,
More þan fyf hundred ȝer aftur þis ryȝtful cas,
þat such a mon schulde in helle be, he carede in hys þoȝt,
þe soule [11] þorp Gode's grace out of helle he broȝte,
And to ys body [12] ys joyned, & gef hym Cristendom,
[13] War with, as he worþi was, to blisse of Heuene [14] com.

---

[1] Werrede *Ar.* [2] Martire Seỳnt *Ar.* [3] *Litteram hanc majusculam* A *rectissime omittit Ar.* [4] Com tho after hym, a man *Ar.* [5] Noble man for soth he was, but he *Ar.* [6] Theigh *pro* þan *in Ar.* [7] The lawe were, or his sone *Ar.* [8] For which dede a man sholde, for that he hadde y wrought, Lese eny of hys lymes, hym self ne sparede he nought, Ac let *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] Me nough sikth *Ar.* [11] Thurgh *Ar.* [12] Hym *Ar.* [13] Whar thurgh, as *Ar.* [14] He com *Ar.*

Adrian

ADRIAN com þo next, and twenti ȝer and on
Aftur hym emperour he was, of Giwes ne louede he non.
þe [1] boru of Jerusalem he let somdel a [2] ȝeyn" rere,
þat Vaspasian felde adoun, þo he slow þe Giwes þere.
Ac he nolde [3] þe Giwes leue ȝeue for noþing, þat heo myȝte,
þat þe moste of þe boru enes habbe a syȝte.
He dude hem schame y now, & temprede hem fulwel,
And made [4] hem sone milde y now, þo heo were rebel.

ANTONIN was þo emperour twenti ȝer and two,
And aftur hym twei breþeren in þe emperie were y do,
Marcus & Aurelius, nyentene ȝer heo were,
Cristendam bi here day [5] me by gan faste lere.
For [6] Eleuthere a god mon was þo pope of Rome,
þorw wam first [7] Christenemen in to Engolond come,
Ych wol sone telle how, as ich vnderstonde,
And telle aftur þis emperoures of kynges of þis londe.

Reges. AFTUR kyng Aruirag, of wam we habbeþ y told,
Marius, ys sone, was kyng, quoynte mon & bold.
And ys sone was aftur hym, [8] Coil was ys name,
Boþe it were quoynte men, & of noble fame,

---

[1] Burgh *Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] The Jewes loue for no thyng, that hii myghte, That hii moste of the burghe ones haue *Ar.* [4] Hem meok and mylde ynough, that erst were rebel *Ar.* [5] Me gan faste to lere *Ar.* [6] Eleutherie the good man *Ar.* [7] Cristendom *Ar.* [8] Kyng Coel was his name, A noble man & queynte, and of good fame, *Ar.*

And

And here truage dude to Rome, as hem ȝte to do.
For þer nas [1] nower so noble prince, þat ne dude [2] so.
Lucye, Coile's sone, aftur hym kyng was.
[3] For, as me may þe soþe segge, by fore hym no beter nas.
For he herde [4] of telle of miracles, þat come
þorw Cristenemen al a boute, as wel as at Rome.
He willede anon in hys herte to fonge Cristendom.
þer fore ys messageres mid gode lettres he nom,
þat to þe pope [5] Eleuchere hastiliche heo wende,
[6] þat he quik in to ys lond Cristendom hym sende, Prima Christianitas Angliæ.
þat [7] heo myȝte serue God, for he wilnede muche þer to,
And he ne schulde not be glad, er þe dede were y do.
[8] þo pope here of was glad, & twei holy men hym sende,
Fagan and [9] Dimian, hys soule for to amende
[10] þat ryȝt bi leue hym taȝte, and ȝef hym Cristendom.
þo folk þo faste a boute wyde þer to com.
þis was an hundred ȝer, and sixti ȝer and two,
Aftur þat God was ybore, þat þis dede was y do.
[11] þus com lo into þis lond first Cristendam,
Bute yt were any holi man, þat priueliche arst yt nom.

---

[1] None *Ar.* [2] Also *Ar.* [3] To fore hym in Engelonde Cristendom none nas *Ar.* [4] Ofte telle *Ar.* [5] Eleutherie *Ar.* [6] And that *Ar.* [7] He *Ar.* [8] The *Ar.* [9] Damian *Ar.* [10] The ryght bileue to teche, & yaf hym Cristendom. That folk faste a boute wide ther to com *Ar.* [11] Thus com lo Cristendom in to Brutaỳne londe, But ther were erst some preueliche Cristendom hadde fonge. As at the place of Glastyngbury Joseph of Arimathie Lyuede ther in Criste's laỳ, with hys companye. Ther were tho in Brutayne, false lawes to lere, *Ar.*

þer were arst in Engelond, hor false lawes to lere,
Eyȝte and twenti chef studes, bischopriches as it were,
And þre architemples, as it were [1] hext of echon,
London, and [2] Euerwik, and in Glomorgan on.
Episcopatus. þis gode kyng & his holi men lette felle hem alle þere,
And eiȝte & tuenti bischopriches in here studes lette rere.
Archiepiscopatus. And þe erchbischopriches as þe þre architemples were,
As yt were of alle chef Cristendom to lere.
Alle þo bischopriches vnder Euerwik were ydo
þat ben bi Norþ Homber, as heo deþ ȝet al so.
London [3] hadde þo al þis lond, þat bi Norþ Homber ys,
From Douere to Seuerne, and al Cornewaile iwis.
þe þridde erchbischopriche was at Carleon in Walis
Vp Osk in Glomorgan, ac þe see a doune ys,
Ac endes of olde walles þer stondeþ ȝet [4] euerne,"
Under hym Walis þilke hadde, & al bi West Seuerne.
Reditus incredulitatis. [5] þus com lo in to þis lond first Cristendom,
Ac þoru a luþer emperour, þat þer aftur com,
þat het Dioclician, it was seþþe i brogt to gronde,
And [6] heþenes y brogt aȝeyn for to Seynt Austyn it vn bonde.

---

[1] Heyghest *Ar.* [2] Ebrackwik, and ther to Carlyon. The kyng and othur holy men destruyde hem alle y fere, And eighte and twenty bisshopes in hure stede dude there, And thre Erchebisshopes ther the Erchetemples were, *Ar.* [3] Haddede that othur del, that a this side Humber is, Fram Douere in to Cornewaille to the see ywis *Ar.* *Adeo ut* Souþ *pro* Norþ *reponi debeat.* [4] *Deest in Ar.* [5] Thus com in to this lond the lawe of Cristendom, *Ar.* [6] Hethenesse *Ar.*

Lucie

Lucie þis gode kyng, þat þus Cristene bi com,
Deide aboute four ȝer aftur ys Cristendom.
At [1] Gloucestre he deide, ac eir nadde he non,
þat a corede al þis lond, and ys men echon.

SOUER was emperour þilke tyme at Rome,
So þat þe tyþinges sone to hym come,
þat [2] þo kyng of Breteyne with oute eyr was ded.
Sone he þoru is court þer of nom ys red,
And wende hider hastiliche [3] with power y now,
And folk, þat stode a ȝeyn hym, faste to ȝronde he slow.
A duk þer was of þis lond, Fulgence was ys name,
He stod aȝeyn hym mid ys ost, & dude hym gret schame;
And, forto be þe sikerore, he wende [4] to Scotlond,
And made hym þere [5] gret ost of folk of þat lond,
And wende oft vp hym, and slow and barnde faste.
Ac euer hadde þe emperour þe maystre atte laste.
[6] þe emperour in þis lond weddede þo a wyf,
þat was Fulgence's [7] sostre, þo in al þis strif.
Bi hire he hadde a god sone, y clepud Basian;
An oþer he hadde, y hote Get, þat he at [8] Rome biwan.
þo Fulgence seiþ, þat he ne myȝte aȝeyn hym stonde,
To þe [9] lond of Scicie he wende out of þis londe,

Imperator sponsat sororem Fulgencii.

[1] Gloucetre he was y buried, ac heir hadde he non, Muchel sorwe to the lond, and to the men echon. Seuer was tho Emperour *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] With gret power y nough. That folk *Ar.* [4] In to *Ar.* [5] A gret ost of landfolk of the londe, And wende out vpon hym *Ar.* [6] Themperour here in this lond tho weddede a wife, *Ar.* [7] Suster in this ilke strife *Ar.* [8] Rome wan *Ar.* [9] Contreie of Sithie *Ar.*

[1] And a gret ost of Picars, whas cheuenteyn he was,
Of stronge men he gederede, to helpe hym in þis cas.
þo he y mad hym a fayr ost of þis bachelerie,
He com a ȝeyn in to þis lond out of [2] Scicie.
He by lay first Euerwik op þe emperour faste.
Bellum. So þat þe emperour hym ȝef batail at þe laste.
[3] Ac muche del of þis lond to Fulgence toke,
For [4] he more of kynde was, & þe emperour for soke.
Bataile þei smyte strong ynow, & mony slowe to gronde,
So þat Fulgence þere hadde deþeiswonde.
Ac þe emperour [5] was y slawe, & y buried at Euerwyk.
[6] Ac Fulgence deide seþþe, þo he hadde y ley sik.
Contencio. þo þis men were boþe ded, me moste habbe a kyng.
Bi twene þo Romaynes & þis lond þer bi gan þo stryuyng.
[7] Get, þe emperoure's sone, þe Romaynes to kyng nome.
For he was [8] of fader and moder of þe kynde of Rome.
Ac þe Brutones of þis lond nome Basian þer to.
For ys moder was of þis lond, & ys vncle al so.
[9] þo þer were twei kynges þus, þer nas not wel gret louc,
Ne myȝte, þei heo breþren were, er þo on were a boue.

---

[1] And of Pictes gedered an ost, and hure cheuenteyn was, Staleworthe men and hardy, to helpe hym in this cas. Tho this ost y gadered was of yonge bachelrie, *Ar.* [2] Sithie. He byseged Euerwyk vpon themperour faste *Ar.* [3] For *pro* ac *in Ar.* [4] He of hure kynde was, *Ar.* [5] Was er y slawe, *Ar.* [6] And Fulgence deyde afterward, tho he hadde longe be sik. Tho these men *Ar.* [7] Geth, themperoure's *Ar.* [8] Of the fader blod, & of the kynde of Rome *Ar.* [9] Theigh they were bretheren beye, ther was nought gret loue, Ne theý myghte reste haue, forte on was a boue *Ar.*

So

So þat eiþer [1] vp oþer werrede [2] faste, Bellum.
And a batail strong y now smyten at þe laste.
[3] And Basian and ys power slow [4] Get ys broþer,
[5] And Basian bi leuede kyng, for þer nas þo non oþer.

A STALEWORþE ȝong bachiler in þis lond was þo,
[6] Caraus was yclepud, þat couþe of muche wo.
For þo he hadde in werre y be, [7] & do gret maistrie,
[8] And hym self muche yfonded, he þouȝte do tricherie.
He wente and bed leue þo of þe emperour of Rome,
[9] To wyte þe se a boute þis lond fram stronge men þat come,
And bi het hym, þat, ȝef þer of wel auaunsed he were,
To ȝelde more god to Rome, þan al Breteyne þider bere.
þo þe conseil of Rome y leuede ys faire bi hest,
And þat he was strong mon, & of gret power with þe meste,
þe emperour with god cartre, & mid ys owne [10] cel,
[11] Hym ȝef of þe se a boute þe warde euer y del.
þis false mon wende [12] þo mid ys cartre a boute,
And of [13] willesful men hym ȝederede a gret route,
And bi het hem [14] god y now of purchas, þat God hem sende,
And purueide [15] hem gode schippes, & in to þe se wende,

---

[1] Upon *Ar.* [2] Swithe faste, *Ar.* [3] So Bassian *Ar.* [4] Geth *Ar.* [5] And so he was al one kyng, for ther was non other *Ar.* [6] Karant cluped he was, & couthe on muchel wo *Ar.* [7] Y do *Ar.* [8] And a sayd muche hym self, he thoughte in trecherie *Ar.* [9] To kepe the Bruttysshe see fro strange men that come *Ar.* [10] Sele, *Ar.* [11] Hym yaf the power of this lond to hym euery dele *Ar.* [12] Forth tho with his chartre *Ar.* [13] Euel doynge men gaderede *Ar.* [14] Good *Ar.* [15] Hym *Ar.*

And won hem sone muche god mid strengþe & quoyntise,
And seþþe mid robbery, bute þei myȝte [1] in'' oþer wyse.
[2] Of hys purchas so large he was to men þat he fonde,
þat he hadde a gret ost in a lutel stonde.
þe yles he robbede in þe see, & þe hauenes [3] seþþe'' a boute.
[4] So þat men of purchas come to hym so gret route,
þat þer nas [5] prince vn neþe þat hym myȝte at route.
Hys power wex euer so, þat eche lond hym gan doute.
So þat he spek mid hey men here of þis lond,
And bi het hem faire y now, & dude hem to vnderstonde,
þat ȝef heo abowe to hym, and to here kyng hym nome,
þat he [6] wole al out hem brynge of þe daunger of Rome,
And [7] deliuere þis lond of Romaynes, & of stronge men echon,
þat so fre lond as þis ne schulde nower non.
þe lond hym made þo here kyng, for he was so quoynte man,
And he bi gan to werre anon vp þe kyng Basian,
Bellum. And eyþer aȝeyn oþer gedercle ys ost faste,
So þat þei comen and smyton a batail atte laste.
[8] Ac [9] Caraus of felonye hym gan vnderstonde,
And þoȝte, þat [10] Picars were of [11] strong londe,

[1] *Omittit Ar.* [2] So large he was to hys men of thynges that hii founde, *Ar.* [3] *Deest in Ar.* [4] *Sic igitur ipso agente confluebant ad illum quicunque in aliena anhelabant; ita ut in brevi tantum haberet exercitum, quanto nullus vicinus princeps resistere quivisset* Galfr. Mon. [5] Prince non that *Ar.* [6] Wolde hem brynge al out of *Ar.* [7] Delynere out of this lond the Romeynes echon: So freo a lond as this in the worlde sholde be non. That folk hym made tho hure kyng, *Ar.* [8] *Quod cum impetrasset, dimicavit confestim cum Bassiano & interfecit eum, & gubernaculum regni suscepit. Prodiderant enim Bassianum Picti, quos dux Fulgentius, matris*

þat [1] were with Basian þe kyng, þat Fulgence [2] hider brozte,
þat [3] heo wolde liztliche to hym turne [4] he þozte.
Mid hem he spek so quoyntoliche, & mede [5] bi gan bede,
So þat þe kyng Basian heo by traide in hys nede.
For þo heo come to batail, heo turnede a ȝeyn hym echon:
[6] Heo nuste wich were [7] here frend, ne wych were [8] here fon.
[9] Ac Basian and al ys folk eode a non to gronde,
And he hym self, and mony oþer y slawe were in astonde.
þo was þis false [10] Caraus kyng of þis lond here,
[11] Unel it bi com hym of kynde to ben of such power.
þo tyþing com þo to Rome, þat he dude hem such schame,
[12] Heo nome a gret lordyng, Allect was ys name,
And sende hym in to þis lond, & men mid hym ynowe,
So þat in batail þis [13] Caraus heo slowe.
þo þis batail was y do, heo bi gonne arere
Werre vp men of þis lond, for [14] heo with Caraus were.

---

tris suæ frater, in Britanniam conduxerat. Nam dum sibi auxiliari debuissent, promissis & donariis Carausii corrupti, in ipso prælio diverterunt se à Bassiano, & in commilitones suos irruerunt. Unde stupefacti ceteri, cum ignorarent quis socius esset, quis hostis, ocius dilabuntur, & victoria cessit Carausio. Qui ut triumphum habuit, dedit Pictis locum mansionis in Albania, ubi cum Britonibus mixti per subsequens ævum permanserunt Galfr. Mon. [9] Carant of his felonye gan hym *Ar.* [10] The Pictes *Ar.* [11] Strange *Ar.*

[1] Hii were *Ar.* [2] His Uncle broughte, *Ar.* [3] Hii *Ar.* [4] Hure thoughte. To hem he spak *Ar.* [5] Bygan hem beode, *Ar.* [6] He *Ar.* [7] His *Ar.* [8] His *Ar.* [9] And *Ar.* [10] Carant *Ar.* [11] Unele bỳ cam hym of kynde to haue such power *Ar.* [12] Hii *Ar.* [13] Carant hii *Ar.* [14] Hii with Carant *Ar.*

þe Brytones þo of þis lond, to schilde [1] hem fro schame,
[2] Cheson hem anew kyng, [3] Asclepiod was ys name,
þat was erl of Cornewail. he [4] gedere ys ost anon
To werre, & to stonde a ȝeyn þe [5] Romaynes ys fon.
He [6] wende hym to Londone, as kyng Allect þo was,
To honoure [7] here false Godes, as it fel þo bi cas.
[8] þo þis kyng þis vnder ȝet, þat þis folk þus come,
[9] He bi leuede ys sacrifise, & ys folk with hym nom,
And wende out aȝeyn hem, & strong bataile heo smyte.
Bellum. So muche folk þer was y slawe, þat deol yt was to wyte.
[10] þis Britones were so egre, and wox euer so faste,
þat [11] þo Romaynes and here kyng gonne fle atte laste.
[12] þo Britones siwede aftur, as heo aȝt do,
And slowe mony þousant, and Allect þe kyng al so.
A [13] lordyng of þe Romaynes, þat y hote was Galle,
Com & [14] ȝold hym to oure kyng, & ys men ney wat alle.
þe kyng hym nom to prison, to London he was y broȝt.
þe kyng hym wolde ȝeue lyf, ac ys men nolde noȝt,
Ne suffre, þat þer were [15] o liue eny of here fon,
Ac ladde hym in to London, & ys men echon,
To a rennyng water, þat ȝet ys þer y wene,
And smyten of alle here hedes, to bryng hem out of tene.
þe water þer heo were y slawe me clepude Galle brok,
Aftur Galle þilke prince, þat þer ys deþ tok.

---

[1] Hem self fram *Ar.* [2] Chese *Ar.* [3] Asclepedot *Ar.* [4] Gaderede *Ar.* [5] Romeynes, that were his fon *Ar.* [6] Wende thuder sone anon, ther as Allect was, *Ar.* [7] His *Ar.* [8] Tho Allect this vnder yat *Ar.* [9] He by lefte *Ar.* [10] These *Ar.* [11] The *Ar.* [12] The *Ar.* [13] Lordlyng *Ar.* [14] yeld *Ar.* [15] Alyue *Ar.*

þo was Breteyn þis lond of Romaynes almest lere,
[1] Ac albysi were yt ten ȝer, ar héo here aȝeyn were.
Asclepiod let hym þo crowne to kyng a non,
And kept a boute ten ȝer þis lond [2] wel mid.
Ac þoru Romaynes, þat [3] here come, þat heþene were echon,
And þoru [4] oþer, Cristendom was nei wat al agon.

TWEI [5] emperoures [6] of Rome, Dyoclician,
And an oþer, ys felaw, þat het Maximian,
[7] Were boþe at on tyme, þe on in þe Est ende,
[8] And þe oþer in þe West, Cristendom to schende.
For þe luþer Maximian Westward hider soȝte,
And Cristenemen, þat he fond, to strong deþ he broȝte.
Chirches he fel al a doun, þer ne moste non stonde.
And al þe bokes, þat he myȝte fynde in eny londe,
He wolde lete hem berne echon amid þe heye strete,
And [9] þo Cristenemen [10] alle sle, and none [11] o liue lete.
Seþþe God was [12] y bore, þer nas for Cristendom
In so lute stonde y do so gret martirdom.
For þer were in a moneþ seuentene þousant and mo
Y martired for oure Lorde's lone, ([12] nas not here gret wo?)

[1] Unnethe was hit ten yer, that hii her a yen nere. Ascleopedot hym let tho crouny kyng a non *Ar.* [2] *Pro* wel mid *legend. potius cum Ar.* fram his fon. *Id quod carminis ratio postulat.* [3] Hider *Ar.* [4] Othur mysbeleuede, Cristendom was al gon *Ar.* [5] *Vide Editionem nostram vitæ Ælfredi Magni Spelmannianæ, p.* 4. [6] At Rome were, on Dioclician, *Ar.* [7] And were bothe *Ar.* [8] The othur in the West of the worlde, al Cristendom to shende *Ar.* [9] The *Ar.* [10] A sle *Ar.* [11] A lyue *Ar.* [12] Y bore, vpon Cristendom Such persecucion as tho was hadde ther be non *Ar.* [12] Nas there a gret wo? *Ar.*

With oute [1] grete halwe, þat heo hulde longe in torment,
As Seynt Cristyne & Seynt Fey, & al so Seynt Vincent;
[2] As Sebastian, & mony oþer, as me may in Chirche rede,
And monyon turnede a ȝeyn to heþene for drede.
Among alle þese in þis lond, þat were monion
Y martred as þilke tyme, Seynt Albon was on,
[3] þat was þe firste martir, þat to Engolond come,
Dere haþ, Lord! mony a mon y boȝt Cristendom.
Under þis luþer [4] emperoures þer was a noble mon,
As of [5] heore luþer lawes, þat vnder hem muche won.
Constancius. Constance was ys name, he conquerede of Spayne
þe truage, and of Fraunce, & seþþe here of Bretayne.

COLE was a noble mon, & [6] gret power hadde on honde,
Erl he was of Colchestre here in þis londe,
And Colchestre aftur ys name y clepud ys ich vnderstonde.
Oure lord, among oþer þinges, hym sende a fair sonde,
þat [7] he hadde an holy doȝter al Colchestre in þis londe,
þat Seynt Helene was y clepud, þat [8] þo holy croys fonde,

---

[1] Othure grete halwen, *Ar.* [2] Fabian and Sebastian, and othur, as men rede, that helde faste in the fey, and hadde non drede. And, among men of these londe, ther were manyon I martred at thulke tyme, *Ar.* [3] He was the furste martir of Brutayne that com. Muche was the shame me dude tho to Cristendom. Under *Ar.* [4] Emperour *Ar.* [5] Hure luthur lawe, and vnder hym muche wan *Ar.* [6] Muche *Ar.* [7] He gat a fair doughter at Coelchestre *Ar.* [8] The *Ar.*

Bi twene oure kyng [1] Asclepiod & þis erl with oute faile
[2] þer wox gret worre, so þat heo smyte bataile. Bellum.
And þis erl Cole slow þe kyng, & þo he hadde [3] þo ouer hond,
Kyng he let hym crowne þo of [4] al þis lond.
þat folk was þo of þis lond y payed wel ynow,
þat he hadde y wonne þe kyndom, & þat he þe oþer slow.
þe tyþing to Rome com, [5] þat he y slawe was,
þat hem hadde y do schame, heo were glad of þat cas.
þe noble prince [6] heo sende hyder þe gode knyȝt Constance,
þat wan hem al þe power of Spayne & eke of France,
[7] þat he scholde eke þis lond wynne a ȝeyn to Rome.
So þat þis noble prince, and ys men hyder come.
[8] þe kyng Cole yt vnder ȝet, he dradde in ys mod,
For he was so noble [9] knyȝt, þat no mon hym with stod.
To hym he sende of acord, ȝef it were is wille, Concordia.
þat he wolde to Rome abowe, & lete alle strif be stille,
And þider bere ys truage, as oþer dude bi fore,
[10] For wat he huld þe kindam, wen þe truage were ybore.
Constance it grantede, and nom ys truage,
[11] And nom also to be siker of hym god ostage,
And grantede hym þe kyndom and þe pes of Rome,
And bi leuede in þis lond [12] to godere y some.

---

[1] Astleopedot *Ar.* [2] Gan ther were a contek, so that hii smyte ane bataille *Ar.* [3] The heygher *Ar.* [4] Al the Brutayne lond *Ar.* [5] The kyng a slawe was, *Ar.* [6] Hii *Ar.* [7] And that *Ar.* [8] Tho Coel *Ar.* [9] Prince *Ar.* [10] And to kepe the kynedom, that hit nere forlore. Constancius grauntede this, & *Ar.* [11] And to be the sikerour, of hym toke good ostage, *Ar.* [12] To godere botho y come. Sone by fel afterward, That Coel kyng sik lay, And deide sone afterward with ynne a short day, *Ar.*

A moneþ

A moneþ it was þer aftur, þat Cole syk lay,
And deide, as God wolde, with inne þe eiztebe day,
And oþer eir nadde he non, bute Seynt Helene þe gode,
Ys doȝter, þat seþþe fond þe swete holy rode.
Sponsacio Helenæ. Constance, for hire eritage, þis maide to wyue nom,
And nom with [1] hire so þis lond, and þis kyndom,
And let hym [2] crowne kyng, & god kyng was and fyn.
By hire he hadde a god sone, y clepu Constantyn.
þo Constance hadde y be ellene ȝer kyng y wys,
He deide at [3] Euerwyk, and y buried was þer and ys.

CONSTANTYN, is ȝonge sone, ycrowned was þo kyng.
Noble mon he bicom, & [4] wytty þorp alle þing.
Kyng he was þritti [5] ȝer. he ladde þis kyndom
Ryȝt nobliche and swiþe wel with quoyntyse and wysdom.

A LUTHER emperour bi fore, þat het Maximian,
þat was [6] vp Cristenemen (as we seide) so luþer a man,
A sone he hadde [7] schrewe y now, Maxencius to name,
Hym me made emperour, mony mon to schame.
He wes, as wel as ys fader, gret schrewe y now.
[8] For in strong martirdom Seynt Kateryn he slow,

---

[1] Hure al this lond, *Ar.* [2] Crouny to kyng, that good knyght was & fyn, *Ar.* [3] E-bracwyk, and ther y buried ys. Constantyn *Ar.* [4] Wys thurgh *Ar.* [5] Yer of this kyngdom, And gouernede hit swythe wel with queyntise & wysdom. The luthur *Ar.* [6] Upon Cristendom a swithe luthur man, *Ar.* [7] Sherewed ek, Maxent was his name, Hym he made *Ar.* [8] For Kateryne, and other mo, in stronge deth he slough. Much folk he dude shame, and the folk

And mony oþer martir, and þat folk of Rome al so
He fondede to deserie, and mony schames do.
So þat þe deserites in to þis lond come
To Constantyn, þe gode kyng, for de faute from Rome.
And he hem faire vnder fong, so þat mo and mo
þer come for enlegeance to habbe of heore wo.
So þat [1] þese deserites bi gonne al on hym grede.
" Sire," heo seiden, " for Gode's loue bryng vs of þis wrechede.
" Of þe kynde blod of emperie þer nys bi leued non,
" [2] Ne þat bi kynde were emperour, non bute þou on.
" How longe wolt þou suffre þe schrewe's out rage?
" Go and wyn þi kynde lond and þyn eritage.
" þou schalt habbe þer help y now of þi kynde londe.
" Wel þou wost, þat [3] lute while þe schrewe þe at stonde.
Constantyn hym vnderstod of ys kynde londe,
[4] And god it were to habbe þis and þat on honde.
Muche power of þis lond mid hym forþ he nom,
And sebþe also of France, as he þer forþ com.
And wende toward Rome to wynne þe emperie,
To brynge þe schrewe adoun, þat dude þat robberye.
As he wende, he bi huld toward heuene an hey, Visio crucis.
And þo vp in þe firmament an angel he sey,

---

folk of Rome also He fondede to disherite, and brynge hem to wo. The disheritez of Rome to this londe come To Constantyn, and bysoughte hym of hem to take gome. And he hem *Ar.*

[1] The disherites gonne on hym to grede *Ar.* [2] That sholde be kynde emperour, non but though al on *Ar.* [3] Lytel while they shulleth the withstonde *Ar.* [4] And that hit were good to haue *Ar.*

þat huld a croys, and þer on y write was lo! þis,
" [1] Costantyne þorȝ þis signe þou schalt be maister iwis."
Constantyne þis vnderstod, heþene þai he were.
A crois, in stude of ys baner, [2] ys men bi fore hym bere.
Maxencius þo he wiste him come, he hadde of hym gret doute.
He let at Rome a strong dich make al a boute
And dep aȝen Constantyne, and a ȝeyn al ys route,
Forto holde hem þer þoru wan heo come with oute.
As he was a boute þis dich, he ne ȝan not muche wynne.
For he fel al amidde, and dreynt hym þer inne.
þoru þe vertu of the crois he was sone ouercome,
And Costantyn hadde al so sone þe toun ynome,
[3] Costantyn ne com nower in batail non,
þat he nadde þorȝ þe crois þe maistri of fon.
So þat he hym vnderstod [4] of þe beste won,
Baptizario Constantini. And of Seynt Siluestre þe pope hym let baptize anon.
And he was (as yt is ywrite) pur mesel þo,
And he bi com in hys baptizing hol of ys wo.
Seynt Siluestre was pope þo, and þe first þat þer com
Of alle popes þat deide with oute martirdom.
For þer nas non by fore him þat he martired nas
Of þe luther emperoures, for eche heþene was.
Levacio ecclesiarum. A chirche of Seynt Jon þe baptist Constantyn let rere,
And clepude yt [5] Costantiniane, for he was ybaptized þere.

---

[1] Constantyn *Ar. & sic infra.* [2] Tofore hym he let rere *Ar.* [3] Constantyn ther afterward com in bataille non *Ar.* [4] What best was to don, *Ar.* [5] Constantiniane, *Ar.*

[1] Of

Of Sey nt Petur & of Poule an oþer he rerede al so,
And in strong [2]mastlyng he haþ þer inne boþe heore bones y do.
Of seynt Laurence he rerde anoþer, of seynt Anneis eke on.
And of oþer Seyntes þat ȝet stondeþ he rerede eke monion.
Þo sende he Seynt Elene ys moder, [3]þat wys was y kud,
To Jerusalem to seche þe croys, þat þere was y hud.
So þat it was þer y founde [4]þe by gyng of þe Maý,
As ȝe habbeþ ofte yherd, þe holy rode daý.
Costantyn lette also in Jerusalem chirches rere,
And [5]wyde aboute elles wer, Cristendom to lere.
So þat þoru Gode's grace so noble mon he was,
þat þer nas prince in al þe world, þat vnder ys power nas.
Þre vnclen ys moder hadde, þat on hatte Honyn,
And Trahen þo oþer hette, and þe þridde Maryn.
Alle þre Costantyn nom with hym to Rome,
And grete lordes þoru hym alle þre þer bi come.

AN erl þer was in þis lond, Octaui was ys name:
Romaynes, þat [6]here bileuede, he dude ofte schame,
And slow hem faste her & þer, [7]þat me schulde uewe y se.
þe Brutones hym crownede þo heore kyng for to be.
[8]þis word com to Costantyn, he þouȝte was to done:
Trahen, ys moder vncle, hyder he sende sone.

---

[1] To *pro* of *in Ar.* [2] Mastlyng he let hure bones do *Ar.* [3] That wýs womman was kud, *Ar.* [4] In the gynnynge of May, *Ar.* [5] Wende a boute *Ar.* [6] Were byleued, *Ar.* [7] That few me myghte y se *Ar.* [8] Whan this word cam to Constantyn, he nuste what best to done: *Ar.*

With

With gret power ynow, to wynne þis kyndom.
At an hauene bi Souþe þis [1] folk o londe com.
þe kyng was of hem ywar, aȝeyn [2] hem he sette.
Bi side Winchestre in a feld to gedere heo hem mette.
Bellum. Batail heo smyten þer, & to gronde slowe faste,
So þat Octaui oure kyng aboue was [3] tte laste,
And Trahen, & muche of hys folk, y wonded ney to deþe,
[4] Flowe to se to heore schippes, and of scapede vnneþe.
To Scotlond heo wende bi water, & þer þei gonne ariue,
And gederede þer [5] al new ost aȝeyn þe kyng bi liue,
And robbede faste and barnde al þe contrei a boute.
Oure kyng wende þiderward faste mid ys route.
Bellum. In Westmerlond þei mette hem, and gonne fiȝte biliue,
Ac oure kyng Octaui of scapede vnneþe [6] o liue.
He of scapede [7] in tor Norwei, to wynne hym help faste.
þo was Trahen [8] al a lord, þe wyle yt wolde laste.
Ac as he out of Londen wente in a tyde,
A gret erl hym kepte þer in a wode syde,
With an hundred knyȝtes y armed wel ynow.
þis prince al vn ywar toward hem drow.
Heo comen aȝeyn [9] hym vn war, & slowe [10] hym al for noȝt.
þis tyþing was ouer se to þe kyng sone y broȝt.
He com hyder sone a ȝeyn joyful y now,
And [11] þo Romaynes, þat he fond, to gronde faste he slow.

---

1 Folk to londe *Ar.* 2 Hem sone he sette *Ar.* 3 Atte *Ar.* 4 Hii flough faste to hure shipes, and a scapede vnnethe *Ar.* 5 A newe ost a yenst the kyng as blyue, *Ar.* 6 A lyue *Ar.* 7 *L.* into *cum Ar.* 8 As lord, *Ar.* 9 Hem *Ar.* 10 Hem for nought *Ar.* 11 The *Ar.*

þo gederede he so gret [1]tresour, and al so so gret route,
And so gret power, þat he nadde of no prince in þe world doute.
For þer nas prince non þat hym dorste arere strif.
So þat he huld þo þis lond in pes al is lyf.
He [2]ascode at ys conseileres, þo he to elde com,
How he myȝte best do mid [3] þis kyndom,
For he nadde bote a doȝter ho myȝte ys eir be?
Some of ys conselers hym gonne þus bi se,
þat he schulde nyme ys neuew, þat [4]hatte Conan,
And crowne hym kyng of þis lond, for þat he was [5]man,
And lete ys doȝter [6]spousi mid richesse y now
To an oþer prince elles ware, as ys [7]herto drow.
[8] Oþer radde, þat he schulde al myd þe kyndome
Late ys doȝter spousi to an hey prince of Rome,
And þenne, for [9]þe// aliance þat were hem [10] by twene,
Heo myȝt þis lond al in pes holde with oute tene.
So þat þer was among hem gret strif for þis dede.
Cradok erl of Cornewaile [11] hy a vys seide,
þat a senatour of Rome, y hote Maximian,
Was of þe kynde of þis lond, a swyþe noble man.
For he was Leoline's sone, þat [12] Elene vncle was
þe gode Costantyne's moder, [13] for non beter nas.

---

[1] Ost, and so gret *Ar.* [2] Axede *Ar.* [3] His *Ar.* [4] Was hote *Ar.* [5] A Man, *Ar.* [6] Be y wedded with rychesse *Ar.* [7] Herte drough *Ar.* [8] A nothur radde, that he sholde with the kyngdome Lete his doughtur be y spoused *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] So by twene, Hii *Ar.* [11] His a vys he sede *Ar.* [12] Heleyne's *Ar.* [13] That non *Ar.*

And

And wan he was a prince of Rome, ȝef he were eke þer to
Kyng [1] eke" her of þis lond, swiþe wel yt were y do.
Siker me myȝte þenne be, to habbe here pais god;
For he was y bore at Rome, & of þis londe's blod.
And for he was of þis kynge's kynde, þat of þis lond was,
þe beter pays þer scholde be for the riȝtful cas.
Conan, þe kynge's neuew, þo he herde þis,
[2] Was wroþ, and destourbede al þe court y wys.
And naþeles Cradok hym held al euene and stille,
And þe kyng stilleliche broȝte al to hys wille.
To Rome he sende Morice, þat ys owne sone was,
Pryueliche to Maximian, to telle hym of þis cas.
þer was þo stryf at Rome bi twene þis Maximian,
And þo emperour, þat was þo, þat hatte Gracian.
þo Morice þider com, and faire was vnderfonge,
And herde þis contek, þat ilaste longe,
To þis senatour he seide, " Sire Maximian,
" [3] Whi art þou so sore a drad of þis Gracian,
" [4] Wen þou miȝt of hym god wei alto þin wille y se?
" For com with me to Bretayne, & þou schalt þere kyng be.
" For þe kyng [5] now in elde naþ non eyr y wys
" Kynde, bote ys doȝter one, þat hym fol lef ys,

---

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] Wex wroþ, *Ar.* [3] *Ut quid Gratianum times, Maximiane, cum tibi pateat via, qua ei imperium eripere poteris?* Galfridus Mon. [4] Thugh myght of hym haue al thi wille, & thugh konne the by se. Com with me *Ar.* [5] Nough is old, & ne hath non heir y wys, But a doughtur that is yong, that hym lef is, *Ar.*

And

" And he haþ god wille to þe, [1] as me deþ hym to vnderstonde,
" þat þou hire spousedest. for þou art of þe kynde of the londe.
" And such myȝt, wan yt so ys, þou myȝt þer þoru a fonge,
" þat þou myȝt perauntre [2] Rome wynne ar come oȝt lonȝe.
" For þi gode cosyn Costantyn Rome wan al so,
" And mony oþer of our kynges in þis maner come þer to.
þo þis Maximian vnderstod al þis,
He dude hym sone hyderward mid ȝret power y wis.
He ariuede at Souþ hampton, as [3] þo wynd hym had y lad.
þo our kyng herde her of, he was somdel a drad,
Leste he hadde for vnel y come. [4] Ac þe he wiste wad he was,
He vnder feng hym fayr y now, & conseilede of [5] þe cas.
Some seyde, [6] þat hym wer beter take ys neuew Conan
þe kyndom of þis lond, and some [7] Maximian,
And some, an hey mon of þis lond þat he ys doȝter toke,
And ys kyndom mid hire, for he yt wolde best loke.
Ac ys hext conseil naþeles, that he mest vnder stod,
Radde hym to Maximian, [8] for he was of so hey blod,
Of þe gode quene Elene, & of þe noble Costantyn,
(þat was kyng here of þis lond, & emperour atte fyn,)

---

[1] As he is vnderstonde, To wedde to the, by cause thugh ert of kynde of this londe. And such power whan hit is so though myght ther thurgh avonge, *Ar.* [2] Be lord of Rome er longe *Ar.* [3] The *Ar.* [4] And tho he wiste hough hit was, *Ar.* [5] This cas *Ar.* [6] Betere hit were to take *Ar.* [7] To Maximian, And some othur lordes of this londe that hys doughtur toke, And the kyngdom with hure, that hit couthe best loke *Ar.* [8] That was of heygh blod, And of the good *Ar.*

[1] And of þe kynge's blod Cole kyng of þis lond he com,
þat god yt were to al þe lond to take hym þe kindom.
þe kyng and ys meste men hulde al þis wisdom.
So þat þe kynge's doȝter mid þis lond he nom.
Ac Conan, þe kynge's neuew, ne likede not þis game.
[2] He garkede power a ȝeyn hym to hym alle schame.
Ac ys power [3] lute was. for þe kyng was euer aboue,
So þat atte laste þei were y broȝt [4] in loue
Bi Graciane's dai þe emperour. þis was, as ich wene,
[5] A boute þe ȝer of grace CCC. & LX. & seuentene.
Withinne fyf-ȝer aftur þis kyng so prout bi com,
For þe grete tresour nameliche þat he alday nom,
þat he [6] nas not ene y paid to habbe þis kyndom,
Bute he hadde France al so with strengþe wyþ oute dom.
He nom with hym of [7] hys lond gret power y now,
And to þe lond, þat was yclepud [8] Armore, he drow,
þat Breteyn ys now yclepud, as he it [9] nempde þo.
Fyftene þousant [10] hors y wrye þer were aȝeyn hym, & mo,
Bellum. Of þe lond of France, and of oþer londes bi syde.
þer heo smyte a batail, þat cowþ was fulwyde.
þer was þe [11] duk of France y slaw, and al is folk ney.
þo þe kyng Maximian þis grete slaȝt y sei,

---

[1] And of kynge's blood Coel of this londe com, *Ar.* [2] He ordeyned with his power to du hem alle shame *Ar.* [3] Litel *Ar.* [4] To loue *Ar.* [5] In the yer of oure Lord Crist thre hundred & seuentene, (*sine* & LX.) *Ar. minus recte.* [6] Was nought ónlich a paid to haue the kyngdom, *Ar.* [7] This *Ar.* [8] Armorike, *Ar.* [9] Clupede *Ar.* [10] Hors y heled there were *Ar.* [11] Kyng *Ar.*

He

He was glad, for he wiste wel to wynne þo al ys wille.
Conan, [1] þe quene cosyn, he clepude out þo stille.
He bi gan som del to [2] lihe. " We habbeþ now," he seyde,
" Y wonne an ende of France, of þe oþer nys no drede.
" þei ich be kyng of Breteyne, þat was þin [3] vncle lond,
" Ne be þou not sori þer fore, for ich wol habbe more an hond.
" Ych wol make þe of þis lond kyng, þou schalt yse,
" [4] And þis lond schal be þyn, and þe oþer Breteyn be.
" For honour of Breteyne, to wam þou haddest kynde,
" þe oþer Breteyne yt schal hote, as to habbe of þe mynde.
" Deliuere we schul yt of þis folk, þat [5] hire inne ys,
" And of folk fulle it fol of [6] oure kynde y wis.
Conan bowede a doun to hym, & þonkede hym [7] faste,
And bi het to serue hym trewliche, þe while ys lyf laste.
Heo wende a boute in al þe lond, & heye townes nome,
And al þe men, þat heo fonde, heo slow euer as heo come,
And let þe wimmen go aliue; & þo heo hadde al [8] an honde,
[9] And hadde y slawe al clene a boute þat folk of þe londe,

[1] The quene's cosyn, he let tho clepe hym tille, And thus he began to speke to hym. We haueth nough, he sede, Wonne that on ende *Ar.* [2] *Id est*, to laugh. *Sic enim* Galfr. Mon. " *Vocavit ergo Conanum ad se extra turmas, & paulisper subridens ait: Ecce unum expotioribus regnis Galliæ subjugavimus, ecce spem ad cetera habere possumus. &c.* [3] Uncle's *Ar.* [4] And this, in mynde of that othur, the lasse Brutayne shal be. In honour of the more Brutayne, to what thugh haddest kende, The lasse Brutayne this shal be, to haue the more in mỳende *Ar.* [5] Ther *Ar.* [6] Thyne kynde *Ar.* [7] Ful faste, *Ar.* [8] On *Ar.* [9] And hadde delyuered al a boute clene that folk of londe, *Ar.*

In eche stude heo sette þere strong warnesture and god
Of folk of þis lond [1] here, and of here owne blod.
þe kyng an hundred þousant [2] men in þis lond sette,
[3] And þritti þousant knyȝtes [4] here wardeynes he sette.
And delde among hem al þe lond, & ȝef eche diuerse þing,
And made Conan of hem alle, & of al þe lond kyng.
[5] And þus was Breteyne y wonne þoru oure [6] prince here,
And aftur þis lond Bretayn iclepud in þis maner.
Maximian wende [7] forþ þorw ys grete maistrie,
And wan with strengþe al France, and seþþe Normondie.
[8] For he ȝef ech mon, þat to hym com, his purchas in eche londe.
So muche power fel hym to, þat noþing myȝt hym at stonde.
And Gracian þe emperour at Rome [9] seþþe he slowȝ,
þat for hys hardy dedes of hym me dradde ynowȝ.
Ac þoru þe emperour, þat seþþe com, y hote Theodose,
Maximian was seþþe y slaw, [10] magrei ys nose.
And so þe schrewe robboures hadde here wille at stonde,
And cheui in here robberi, atte laste it goþ to gronde.

[1] Here of hure *Ar.* [2] Men of this londe let fette, *Ar.* [3] *Prætera xxx. milia militum, qui ipsos infra patriam, qua mansuri erant, ab hostili irruptione tuerentur.* Galfr. Mon. [4] Hure *Ar.* [5] Thus was litle Brutayne *Ar.* [6] Princes *Ar.* [7] Tho forth *Ar.* [8] He yaf ech man that to hym com of purchas of his londe. So muche people drough to hym, myghte hym no man withstonde *Ar.* [9] Suth he dude to dethe, And his brothur Valentinian a scapede a lyue vnnethe. Ac thurgh an emperour *Ar.* [10] Maugre al his nose. But erst these sherrewe robboures hadde hure wille a stounde, And suth for hure roborie hii were y brought to grounde. þe Brutones *Ar.*

þe

þe Britones, þat Maximian of þis lond brogte þo,
[1] In þe lasse Breteyne bi leueþ geť, and schul euer mo.
And so þilke Brutayne of þis lond com
More þoru strengþe, as ge yseþ, þan þoru rygt dom.
Of [2] þe lasse Bretayn Conan þat was þus kyng,
Among hem nolde of [3] þilke lond habbe no myngyng,
Ne children of þilke kynde, þer fore he lette sende
[4] To hye men of þis lond aboute in eche ende,
[5] þat of hye menne dogtren maydenes me nome
[6] Ellene þousant at þe leste, & to hym þat heo come;
And of [7] simpler maydenes an sixti þousant gode,
þat heo migte [8] make here kynde al clene of heore blode.
[9] þis maidenes wer y gedered, and [10] to London y come.
Mony were glade þer of, and [11] ful sori some
þat heo schuld of lond wende, & neuer eft here frend s se,
And somme to lese here maidenhed, wyues for to be.

---

[1] Byleuede in Brutayne, that Conan com thus ther to, That Armorike erst cluped was, & to newe name thus com By conqueste, as who seith, more than thurgh *Ar.* [2] *Cumque sibi cessisset victoria, voluit commilitonibus suis conjuges dare, ut ex eis nascerentur heredes, qui terram illam perpetuo possiderent; & ut nullam commixtionem cum Gallis facerent, decrevit ut ex Britannia insula mulieres venirent, quæ ipsis maritarentur, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [3] That lond *Ar.* [4] To the heigh *Ar.* [5] That heighe mennes doughtren maydens me nome Enleuen thousend atte leste, *Ar.* [6] XI. ml. maydenes fre. LX. ml. madenes thewe *Ar. in marg.* [7] Simple menne doughtren sixti *Ar.* [8] Fulle that lond al clene *Ar.* [9] These *Ar.* [10] To shipe hii come *Ar.* [11] Wel sory some, Somme for hii sholde of londe wende hure frendes neuere to se, *Ar.*

þo þei were in þe schippes y do, & in [1] þe fer were,
[2] So gret tempest þer com, [3] þat drof hem here & þere,
So þat þe meste del a dreynt were in þe se,
And to oþer londes some y driue, and ne come ner aȝe.
A kyng þer was of Hongri, Guayn was ys name,
And Melga, kyng of Picardyé, þat couþe ynow of schame,
þe wateres for to loke a boute þe se heo were,
A companye of þis maydenes so þat heo mette þere.
To here foly he wolde hem nime and hor men al so,
Ac þe maydenes wolde raþer dye, þan a cente þer to.
þo wende forþ þe luþer men, & the maydenes slow echon,
So þat to þe lasse Breteyne þer ne com aliue non.

OF þe wo, þat þer haþ in Engelond y be,
þoru emperoures of Rome, here ȝe mowe y se.
In oþer manere þat Scottes & [4] Picars, as ich seide,
Habbeþ y worred þis lond, ich wol telle þe dede.
Guain þe kyng of Hongri, and þe kyng of Picardie,
þo heo hadde, as ych haue y seit, mid so gret vilenie
Y slawe of þis maydenes þat swete companie,
Bi þouȝte to do þis lond more tricherie.
Heo vnderstode, þat þis lond ymad was al clene
[5] Of god folk þoru Maximian and Conan [6] as// at ene,
And þat heo myȝte þis lond al for noȝt wynne,
Heo gederede folk faste, þe werre to bi gynne.

---

[1] *Lege potius, cum Ar.* þe see fer were. [2] A gret *Ar.* [3] And blew hem *Ar.* [4] Pictes *Ar.* [5] Of people thurgh *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.*

To

To þe se heo sende mid heore folk, þat heo hadde on honde,
And come, as hem leuest was, first in to Scotlonde.
Toward þis lond heo bi gonne forto robby faste,
þat folk to sle, and townes and castles adoun caste.
þe simple men, þat heore were, here red þer of nome,
And sende aftur more help to þe emperour of Rome.
A duk, þat [1] het Gracian, from Rome me sende,
þat mid gret power to þis lond hyder wende.
þo lond folk, þo he hyder com, turnede to hym faste,
So þat þer was slawȝt gret, þe wyle it wolde laste.
And þis kyng of Picardyo, and al so hys felawe,
Wer of come atte laste, þat heo nuste wyder to drawe.
Viliche þei were & mid strengþe ydryue into Yrlonde.
þo hadde Gracian þis lond al clanliche on honde,
[2] He let hym þo crowne kyng, and þo he alord was,
No more schrewe, þan he bi com, ych wene non nas.
[3] þat lond folk eode forþ, and to gedere drowe,
And, ar he dude to muche wo, þo foule schrewe slowe.
þat þo kyng was y slawe, it was sone couþ
In eche half from lond to lond, boþe Norþ & Souþ,
So þat it to þe kynges come, þat wende in to Yrlond.
[4] Heo porueide þat heo haddo folk y now on honde
Of Norwei, and of Denemark, and al so of Scotlonde,
And barnde and to gronde slowe faste in þis londe.

[1] Height Gracian, Maximian hider sende. With two legiones of men hiderward he wende. The landfolk *Ar.*

[2] And let hym self crouny kyng, & tho he al lord was, *Ar.*

[3] The landfolk so hii sey this, to gedre faste hem drough, *Ar.*

[4] Hii purueyede hem, that hii hadde sone power an honde *Ar.*

So þat þe folk of þis lond al clene was ouercome.
[1] For þe kyng had arst of þis lond þe knyȝtes so clene y nome.
Eft sone heo sende ȝet to Rome, wepyng ful sore,
þat heo schulde in here wo ȝet hem helpe more,
And [2] hem wolde obligi, and sikernesse finde gode,
To bere hem clene here truage, wyle þe world stode.
Eft sone ȝet þo Romaynes power hyder sende,
Knyȝtes and oþer werrours, þat to þis lond wende,
And in þe Souþ half ariuede of þis lond her.
Heo gadered folk ynow, þat heo hadde gret power,
And wende faste vp here fon, þat ne myȝt hem noȝt at stonde.
For some were y slawe sone, and some flow out of londe.
þo [3] þis lordes of Rome al here wille hadde,
Heo nomen here conseil, & þe folk of þis lond radde,
þat heo bi twene þis lond & Scotland schulde a wal rere,
Strong and heyȝ on eche syde, þer no water nere,
From þat on se to þat oþer, þat were hem bi twene,
To lette hem wen heo come, & to saue hem fro tene.
[4] For Scotlond haþ euer y be a luþer recet y lome,
Wan þer any werrours toward þis lond come.
þe Romaynes seide eke, þat heo nolde in nomaner so wende
Out of heore lond hiderward, ne heore power so sende;
Ne to rokke hem so in þe se, ne heore lyf [5] an auntre do,
Bote wite heore lond at home, and heore god al so:

---

[1] For Maximian hadde out byfore al clene the knyghtes y nome *Ar.* [2] Hii hem oblege wolde, and *Ar.* [3] These lordlynges *Ar.* [4] For Scotlond haueth for vs y be luther recet y lome, And euere enemys to this lond, & wolde neuere be some. *Ar.* [5] In a venture do, Ac witye hure owene lond at hom, and hure good also. For hii no more

Ac ȝe schulde of oure ȝonge folke teche for te fyȝte,
For heo ne more in þis lond nolde come, ne myȝte.
þat folk þo of þis lond, þo heo nuste non oþer red,
Bi gonne to rere þe stronge wal, as hem was y seyd.
A rerde he was strong ynow, as þe stude is ȝet sene.
Muche me moste swynke er, and ther aboute spene.
þo þe wal wes ȝare y mad, a conseil heo nome,
þat al þe [1] conseil of þis lond schulde to London come.
þo heo were alle [2] ycome wisliche for to rede,
þe bischop of London in þis maner him seyde:
" Mi leue frende, to telle ȝou, as þis heye men me bede,
" Beter wille ich habbe to wepe, þan to do oþer dede.
" [3] For pite yt ys of þis lond, & of oure [4] wrecched hede,
" Aftur þat Maximian our [5] fol gan awei lede,
" Al our knyȝtes, and swaynes, and al oure ȝong hede,
" And [6] astored þer with oþer lond, alas! þat deolful dede!
" For ȝe ben men beter y taȝt to schouele and to spade,
" To cartestaf and to plowstaf, and a fischyng to wade,
" To hamer and to nedle, and to marchandise al so,
" þan [7] with swerd or [8] hauberk eny batail to do.

---

more in this loud wolde come ne myghte, And that hii sholde hure yong folk teche forto fyghte. That folk *Ar.*

[1] Grete *pro* conseil *in Ar.* [2] Thuder y come wisliche to rede, Therchebisshop Gwithelyn of London thus sede: *Ar.* [3] *Miseret enim me orphanitatis & debilitatis, quæ vobis accessit, postquam Maximianus regnum istud omni militia omnique juventute spoliavit. &c.* Galfr. Mon. [4] Wrecchede, After that *Ar.* [5] Folk *Ar.* [6] Othur londes storede ther with, alas! the deolful *Ar.* [7] With sper or with swerd bataille for to do. Whan your enemyes cometh yow to, ye ne kunneth bute fle, As shep byfore wolues. *Ar.* [8] *Id est,* haber-

" For wen oure fon to ow comeþ, ȝe ne konne noȝt bote fle,
" As schep to fore wolues: (how myȝte more wo be?)
" And þe se bi set ow al [1] a boute, bote twei weyes ȝe mowe þenche,
" Oþer ligge a doun and be slawe, oþer fle and drenche.
" [2] Wor þere [3] any hope of ow, bote clanliche al þat lond,
" Al þe help and lokyng, ys in oþer monne honde?
" [4] And þe Romaynes beþ anyed of here trauail so sore,
" Of perel on se, & eke on lond, þat heo nul come her no more.
" Heo wol raþer bi leue here truage, þat ȝe hem bereþ aȝer.
" Ne konne ȝe noȝt lerne þing, þat ȝe dude neuer er?
" [5] Change ȝoure hond, & to vse of sword & lance ys ydo.
" For no men ne beþ strengor þen ȝe, ȝef ȝe turnede þer to.
" [6] Me may se a bonde mone's sone [7] oþer wyle knyȝt bi come,
" And some gromes and squiers, and seþþe knyȝtes some.

---

habergion *sive* lorica. *Potest tamen &* haubert *legi, quomodo & ipse legisse videtur Codicis Ar. interpolator. Et quidem hodie itidem bipennem* halbert *vocitare solemus.*

[1] A boute, hough mowe ye thanne by thenche? *Ar.*
[2] Help is ther non with yow, but cleulich al this londe, Al the helpyng and lokyng, ys in othur manne's honde. *Ar.*
[3] *Eritne ergo spes vestra semper in alieno tutamine, & non, instructis manibus vestris, ensibus & hastis depelletis latrones, nequaquam vobis fortiores, nisi segnitia & torpor adesset? Jam tædet Romanos tam assidui itineris &c.* Galfr. Mon. [4] *Malim* ac *pro* and.
[5] Aplieth your hondes to the spere and to swerd also *Ar.*
[6] *Nonne homines transverso ordine nascuntur, ita ut ex rustico generetur miles, & ex milite rusticus? Miles etiam de mangone venit, & de milite mango.* Galfr. Mon. [7] Som tyme a knyght by come, And of a grom a squyer, and after knyghtes some *Ar.*

" Wen

" Wen ȝe habbeþ [1] forme of men, beþ men [2] on alle wise,
" And turneþ ȝour hond to manhede, & [3] wyteþ oure franchise.
* þis bischop, þat hatte Gocelyn," þoru heor [5] alle rede,
To þe lasse Breteyne wende for þis dede.
King Conan he fond ded, [6] an oþer of gret fame
Kyng he fond in hys stude, [7] Androw was ys name.
" Sire kyng," quoþ þe bischop, " ȝef þou wolt vnderstonde,
" Deol þou myȝt habbe in þin herte of þi kynde londe,
" Of þe more Bretayn, [8] as þin eldre were y bore.
" For þou wost wel Maximian þe kyng, & Conan her bi fore
" þe bachelerie al þat [9] aȝt wes out of þat lond nome,
" And a stored here þis [10] lond and þe power of Rome,
" And londes abouten vs habbeþ wel vnder ȝite,
" þat þer nis no folk bi leued, þat lond forto wyte.
" Heo sleþ & destruyeþ al, þat þer nys noþing bi leued,
" Warbi men [11] mow libbe, and al for defaut of heued.
" And þer nys no mor þat kynde haþ þerto bute þou [12] on.
" Help [13] þi kynde eritage, & þou worst þer kyng anon.
þe kyng gan som del to [14] lyȝhe, þo he herde þis.
" Ych [15] habbe," he seyde, " sire bischop, such tyme y sey y wys,

---

[1] The fourme *Ar.* [2] In *Ar.* [3] Kepeth youre *Ar.* [4] The erchebisshop Gwithelyn, *Ar.* [5] Aldre [*l.* alre] *Ar.* [6] And a nothur *Ar.* [7] Androge *Ar.* [8] Ther thyne elderne *Ar.* [9] Ought was *Ar.* [10] Lond thurgh the power *Ar.* [11] Myght *Ar.* [12] Al on *Ar.* [13] Nough thyn olde heritage, *Ar.* [14] Laughe, *Ar.* [15] *Olim tempus erat quo non negarem insulam Britanniæ accipere, si quis eam mihi largiretur. Non enim existimo alteram patriam fertiliorem fuisse, dum pace & tranquillitate frueretur. At nunc, quoniam infortunia accesserunt &c.* Galfr. Mon.

" [1] þat

37991

" [1] þat y nolde nozt habbe for sake þat lond ho me hadde y
brozt þer to.
" Ac so muche [2] wrecched hed þer ys, þat nys not now so.
" And nameliche for þe folk of [3] Rome þat so muche seruise
habbeþ þere,
" [4] þat in such þraldam forto be [5] eche god mon loþ were.
" þis lond ich [6] habbe here so fre, þat to non herre y schal
abuye,
" Bute wite fram þe kyng of France, þat doþ me ofte anye.
" And for to wyte me from hym, y nyl not [7] henne wende.
" Ac for myn [8] eldore hadde þat lond, [9] y segge þe atte ende,
" To brynge it azeyn [10] to oure kynde, ich wol þider sende
" Costantyn my broþer, þat god knyzt ys and hende,
" And wel [11] yfonded in armes, & two [12] hondred knyztes
al so,
Wel [13] y wrye with þe atyl, þat god dede mow do
" Mid þe folk of þe lond, zef [14] heo aztes beþ,
" And ze mow hym make zoure kyng, wen ze [15] tyme seþ.
þis Costantyn was of send, and [16] þis knygtes also,
And [17] schippes and here a tyl prest, such prowes forto do.

---

[1] That ich hit wolde nought haue forsake, yf hit hadde ther to be brought *Ar.* [2] Wrecchede now ther is, that now is hit so nought *Ar.* [3] Rome such seruice *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] Ech man ful loth were *Ar.* [6] Holde as freo, y ne dar non othur a buye, But witie me fro the kyng of France, *Ar.* [7] Hens *Ar.* [8] Elderne *Ar.* [9] Y seigh yow atten eynde, *Ar.* [10] To ryght, ich *Ar.* [11] Y founded *Ar.* [12] Thousend *Ar. cum* Galfrido Mon. [13] A rayd in good a tire, dedes of armes to do With the folk *Ar.* [14] Hii *Ar.* [15] The tyme *Ar.* [16] These *Ar.* [17] Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

Ac

Ac heo ne myȝte [1] so raþe come, þat þe kynges twei
Nere y come out Yrlond, [2] wyt gret power bey
Of Scottes and of Picars, of Denemarch, [3] of Norwei,
þat euer [4] habbeþ þis lond y hated, bote it were for eye.
Fer bi Norþ [5] bi gonne, and hider faste drowe,
And caste a doun [6] þis stronge wal, & townes grete y nowe.
þe Britones, þat myȝte of scapie, by gonne faste to fle,
Some in roches, some in wodes, at [7] rewþe yt was to se.

COSTANTYN [8] myd ys power, among al þis wrechedom,
At þe hauene of Tottenais [9] stilleliche o lond com.
Glad were þo þe Britones, & joyful & proute.
Heo comen out of þe wodes sone, and of þe roches aboute.
So þat Costantyn hadde sone [10] power y now,
And toward þis luþer men Norþward sone drow.
[11] He cudde þat [12] heo were men, & slowe [13] to gronde,
þe prude [14] of Scottes & Picars abouten in a stonde.
For heo flowe þat myȝte fle, and some fel to gronde.
Heo myȝte [15] segge, wen heo come home, þat heo hadde here pere y fonde.
To Yrlond heo flowe aȝeyn, & elles wyder heo myȝte.
Heo ne þouȝte not a god while with þe Brytones to fyȝte.

---

[1] So sone come, that the luther kynges tweye *Ar.* [2] With *Ar.* [3] And of *Ar.* [4] Haueth hated this lond, but *Ar.* [5] Bigonne (*simplici voce*) in *Ar.* [6] Pict Wall *Ar.* [7] Deol *pro* rewþe *in Ar.* [8] And his power in al this *Ar.* [9] Stille a lond *Ar.* [10] Gret power y nough, *Ar.* [11] Hii *Ar.* [12] Hii *Ar.* [13] Faste to *Ar.* [14] Of this luther men hii batide in a stounde *Ar.* [15] Truly seigh tho, hure peer hii hadde y founde *Ar.*

þe Brytones nome þo Costantyn, & glade þoru all þyng
In þe town of [1] Cicestre crowned hym [2] to here// kyng.
[3] þis was so wel y wist in pes, with oute strif,
þat þer ne come ne Scottes þider, ne [4] Pycars al ys lyf.
þre [5] sones he hadde a so, Costantyn was on,
And Aurely and Uter, gode children echon.
Costanteyn, ys eldeste sone, in Gode's seruise
Monk he made at Wynchestre, & dude as þe wyse.
God mon he was y now, and gode lawes forþ caste,
And god pais [6] wes al ys lyf, [7] & to lute wyle þat laste.
For þer com a [8] Pycard, þat ys maners wel [9] wiste,
And þat he louede wel y now, & muche to hym truste.
He ladde hym into an [10] orchard, [11] as yt gret ned were
To speke wyþ hym priueliche, þat noman ywar nere.
Ac þo heo were al bi hem selue, & no mon hem neyȝ,
He drow ys knyf, & slow þe kyng, þat no man [12] yt y seyȝ.
He was [13] sone forþ y went, er any mon were war.
And þo me hadde al y sought, þe kyng lay ded þar.

[1] *Rectius* Silchestre *cum* Galfr. Mon. *At* Cirecestria *in* Aluredo Beverlacensi, *quem defloravit* Galfridus. [2] *Desunt Ar.* [3] The lond was tho wel y kept in pais *Ar.* [4] Picardes *Ar.* [5] Sones hadde this Constantyn, Constans [Constans *quoque in* Aluredo Bev. & Galfr. Mon.] het that on, Aurelie Ambrose the other, the thridde Uter Pendragon. Constans his eldeste *Ar.* [6] Was in his tyme, while his lyf y laste *Ar.* [7] F. ac. [8] Picte *Ar.* [9] Wuste, *Ar.* [10] *Postremo, cum x. anni præterissent, venit quidam Pictus, qui in obsequium suum fuerat, & quasi secretum colloquium habiturus, in virgulto quodam semotis cunctis eum cultro interfecit* Galfridus Mon. [11] For consail as hit were, And to speke *Ar.* [12] Hit ne seigh *Ar.* [13] Anon *Ar.*

þo was þis lond kyngles, wat halt yt to telle longe?
Gret word was among þat folk, ho myȝte þe crowne fonge.
For þe eldoste sone monk was, & [1] þe twei ȝonge were,
And to nyme [2] ferrore of ys kynde no ryȝt nere.

VORTIGER, [3] þe quoynte swike, þat was erl of [4] Cornewail,
Forto do [5] a swykedom no conseil schulde hym fail.
To þe sone þat was monk to Wynchestre he wende y wis.
" Lo," (he seide) " now þou [6] syst, þat þi fader ded ys,
" And þi breþeren to ȝonge beþ to a fonge þe crowne,
" And þei þou be in oþer cloþes, þi ryȝte [7] nys not þer downe,
" Wel [8] me [9] wot eldest þou art, & myd best ryȝt kyng also.
" ȝef þou wolt [10] wol be my frend, & bi my red al do,
" Ich wole brynge [11] þat folk in wille, to crowne þe to kyng.
" And þei þin ordre be þer aȝeyn, þer to ich wole it brynge.
" þo monk was joyful y now, þo he hurde þis,
" And bi het hym, ȝef it were so, euer more to be al hys.
Out of ys abyt anon Vortiger hym drow,
And cloþes, [12] as to kyng bi come, dude on him faire ynowȝ.

---

[1] The othur two *Ar.* [2] Forther of his kyn no ryght men thoughte hit nere *Ar.* [3] The luther swike, *Ar.* [4] " *Cronica Latina vocat eum* " *ducem Gewiseorum*" *Ar. in margine. Et quidem* Consul Gewissorum *in* Aluredo Bev. *At in* Galfr. Mon. " *consul* " *Gewiseorum, i. Orientalium* " *Anglorum.* [5] A swykeldom he caste hym sanz faille. To the monek at Wynchestre sone he wende y wis *Ar.* [6] Sukst *Ar.* [7] Is nought ther *Ar.* [8] Thugh wost *Ar.* [9] *Nec alium video in progenie tua, quem populus in regem promoveret* Galfr. Mon. [10] Wel *Ar.* [11] The people in wille, *Ar.* [12] As a kyng *Ar.*

And

And bi fore al þe Parlement to London he gan hym brynge,
And seide he was purest eyr, to be crowned [1] to[11] kynge.
No mon ne myȝt wel it wyþ segge. [2] me may ryȝt y se,
Wan he was þer, & was pur eyr, þei he hadde [3] monk.
[4] Up hym self þe perel were, bote yt myȝte wel do.
þo hey men þoru Vortiger [5] a fong hym alle þer to.
þe erchbischop of London [6] Gocelyn was þo ded,
And non oþer [7] nolde hym crowne, for al þat þe erl bed.
For he hadde so longe in ordre be, & so was out y broȝt.
For al þat [8] Vortiger nolde bi leue yt noȝt,
Ac hym self hym crownede, & made hym kyng so.
þe sacryng was lute worþ, and naþeles yt was y do.
þo he was kyng ymad, ys hest he made a non,
þat clanliche to Vortiger ys men [9] abuyde echon.
[10] For[11] hymself he [11] nolde þenche noȝt, bute take hym al on honde.
For he cowþe wel bet þan he gouerne such a londe.
o bi þouȝte Vortiger mest þoru alle þyng,
How he myȝte do quoynteliche, þat he hym selue were kyng.
For that [12] euer ys þoȝt, and þer fore þe monk he nom
To [13] kyng be. for he was nyce and kowþe no wisdom,

---

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] Me may the ryght y se, That he ne is verrei heir, *Ar.* [3] *Adde* y be *cum Ar.* [4] Upon hym self a peril hit were, but he hit wolde do. The heigh *Ar.* [5] Assentede alle ther to *Ar.* [6] Gwythelyn *Ar.* [7] Hym crouny wolde, theigh Vortiger hem bed *Ar.* [8] Yut Vortiger wolde by leue nought, that hym self ne croune hym, and made hym kyng ryght tho, And were hit ryght othur wough, yut hit was y do *Ar.* [9] Aboughwed *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] Wolde thenke on nought, *Ar.* [12] Euere was his thought, *Ar.* [13] Be kyng. for *Ar.*

And

And ys twei breþren were broȝt out of cradel vnneþe.
And þe heye men mest of þe lond were y broȝt to deþe
Myd batailes & myd oþer wo, þer fore he was so prowt,
[1] And þe kyng [2] nas bute a schade, & let hym worþe al out.
To þe kyng he seide, þat he moste ys castles astore,
þenne wolde ys fon aboute [3] doute hym þe more.
And for þe [4] Picars were ys fon, some he wolde take
To be pryue with þe kyng, for þilke schulde make
Here felawes, þat were leued at home, to loue þat lond þe bet.
Ac [5] naþeles þer fore [6] nas yt noȝt þo yt wes al bi set,
Ac for þei louede not þe kyng, & in trayson were quoynte,
[7] þat heo schulde þe kyng sle, wen heo come [8] vp þe poynte.
þe kyng grantede al ys wil, and for ys gode [9] wende.
Aftur an hundred [10] Picars into Scotlond he sende
By certeyn messageres, so þat heo gonne brynge
[11] An hundred knyȝtes of Picars, þat bi leuede mid oure kynge,
Of mest priue men, þoru þis luþer Vortiger.
And þe kynge's tresour he delde eke a boute fer & ner,

---

[1] The kyng hym self was but a shade, & let him al oue al out. And to the kyng *Ar.* [2] *Totum namq; dispositioni ejus regnum commissum fuerat, & Constans rex dicebatur, qui nisi pro umbra principis astabat* Galfr. Mon. [3] Douty *Ar.* [4] Pictes *Ar.* [5] *Ecce occulta occulti amici proditio. Non enim id laudabat, ut salus inde proveniret Constantis, sed quia sciebat, Pictos gentem esse instabilem, & ad omne scelus paratam* Galfr. Mon. [6] Was hit nought what hit was al by set, *Ar.* [7] And that *Ar.* [8] To the *Ar.* [9] He wende *Ar.* [10] Pictes to *Ar.* [11] An hundred Pictes soudeours to by leue with oure kynge, And to be most preue with hym thurgh this Vortiger. Of the kynge's tresour he delt fer and ner, Ac most to the Pictes *Ar.*

And mest to þe Picars, for to hem mest loue he drow.
Myd alle þat he wolde hym self he made hym bi loued ynow.
Alle [1] þat seruede þe kyng, þoru hym [2] were echone,
[3] So þat ech mon was a boute for to paye hym one,
And [4] songe al day bi þe strete [5] al for hys honour,
" Worþi were Vortiger [6] to kyng oþer emperour.
þo þis Vortiger hadde [7] þat folk al [8] in ys hond,
He seyde, he moste wende awyle out of þis lond,
To purchace more tresour þe kyng for to spene,
For he nadde noȝt y nowȝ, ys knyȝtes to sustene.
And [9] atte Picars nom ys leue, and at oþer þere,
And wende hom [10] to [11] hys fir, sori as he were.
þer was sorwe and deol ynow among al þe mayne,
For he schulde from hem [12] wend, (for þer was no kyng bote he)
And nameliche among Picars, þat were of so luþer þouȝt,
þat he hadde do such honour, & þat ne louede þe kyng noȝt.
" Wat," heo seyden, " wat is [13] vs to lete þis badde kyng
" Go þus o liue as a [14] schade, þat nys worþ noþing?

---

[1] The seruantes of the kyng *Ar.* [2] Were made echone *Ar.* [3] *Ita ut eum pro rege haberent. Adulantes igitur ei per plateas psallebant,* " *di-* " *gnus est Vortigernus, impe-* " *rio, dignus est sceptro Bri-* " *tanniæ, Constans vero indig-nus* Galfr. Mon. [4] Synge *Ar.* [5] As for *Ar.* [6] To be kyng or emperour *Ar.* [7] This *Ar.* [8] On *Ar.* [9] Of the Pictes tok his leue, and of othur there, *Ar.* [10] *Ad hospitium suum* Galfr. Mon. [11] His contre in sorwe as hit were *Ar.* [12] Wende, (that was so large and fre) And among the Pictes most, that were of luther thought, That he hadde do so muchel honour, and louede the kyng nought *Ar.* [13] This *pro* vs *in Ar.* [14] Shadewe, *Ar.*

War

Warto tarie we so longe, to quelle hym atten ende
þat Vortiger [1] were kyng, þat a ȝen vs ys so hende ?
In gret [2] wayþe & hastinesse to þe kynge's chaumber heo wende,
And smyten of hys hed, and to Vortiger yt sende.
Vortiger made deol y now, [3] and sori was þer fore :
Ac naþeles so glad he nas seþþe he was y bore.
For [4] y compaced he hadde þat atte bi gynnyng,
First [5] wen he broȝte on so nyce a mon to kyng.
And seþþe þo he lette ys fon & [6] Picars to court brynge,
þat hatede muche þe kyng, [7] & al was for þis þinge.
And þo he was so large & hende of hys ȝiftes al so.
[8] þo hadde he al ys wille, for when yt was al ydo,
[9] And// to suc ende yt was y come, [10] as he hadde y compaced in ys þoȝt.
And naþeles he feynede hym, þat me vnder ȝet yt noȝt.
At London þis kyng was y slaw. he let þo nyme anon
[11] þe Picars, & þoru jugement let smyt of þe hedes echon.
þer he kudde [12] wat he was, vn kynde schrewe & quoynte.
[13] Ac al he dude, þat me ne vnder ȝet in swykdom in no poynte.

Decollatio Pictorum.

[1] Myght be kyng, that to vs is so heynde ? *Ar.* [2] Wrath *Ar.* [3] And wep fol sore ther fore *Ar.* [4] He hit hadde by compaced atte *Ar.* [5] Tho he made the monek, þat nyce was, to kynge *Ar.* [6] Pictes *Ar.* [7] And muche was for these thynge. And that he was *Ar.* [8] Tho he hadde al his wille, when this was *Ar.* [9] *Omittit Ar.* [10] As he cast in his thought. And euere he made hit so queynte, that me wiste hit nought *Ar.* [11] Alle the Pictes thurgh juggement, and hefdede hem echon *Ar.* [12] That he *Ar.* [13] And al was, that me ne sholde aspie his falshede in no poynte. Ac natheles some hit vnderyede, & ne leuede *Ar.*

And naþeles men yt trowede, and leuede not ys glose.
þe kynge's [1] breþren, Aurele and Ambrose,
Dradde, for here eritage, ymorþred for to be.
And [2] heo, that hem hadde [3] to ward, þer fore gonne by se,
And to þe lasse Breteyne wende to þe kyng,
And he [4] susteynede hem wel, for drede of þis þinge.
þo Vortiger al one was, and no pere [5] nad a londe.
Sone he lette hym [6] crowne kyng, & þe power nom on honde.
Princes ouer al aboute of [7] eche kyndom
Speke hym vnel, & hatede hym for hys [8] swikedom.
þe [9] Picars were wroþ eke, and [10] þratten hym ynow,
[11] For he myd such vnkyn dede heore felawes slow.
From þe lasse Bretayne eke hym com word ylome,
þat [12] þo twei children gret power to hem nome,
And [13] þat hit stronge childre were of here age,
And þat þei wolde hyder come, to wynne here heritage.
Such strong tyþinges in sorwe and in sore
Brozt þis false kyng, and er þe lenger þe more.

---

[1] Yonge bretheren, Uter and Aurelie Ambrose, *Ar. rectius.* [2] Hii, *Ar.* [3] In warde, ther fore hem goune bỳ se. To the lasse Brutayne hii wende to Budic the kyng, *Ar.* [4] Hem let wardy wel, *Ar.* [5] Hadde in londe, *Ar.* [6] Crouny *Ar.* [7] Euery *Ar.* [8] Swikeldom *Ar.* [9] Pictes *Ar.* [10] Hatede *Ar.* [11] That he with so vile deth hure felawes he slough *Ar.* [12] The two *Ar.* [13] That hii staleworthe were, as of hure age, *Ar.*

[1] Hors

[1]HORS and Hengist bothe, þat twei breþre were,
Come to Kent þilke tyme, and a riuede þere,
Myd þre schip ful of [2]knyȝtes y armed wel ynow.
[3]þo þis folk was on lond, forþ into Kent hit drow.
þo kyng was þo at Canterbury, and herde her of anon:
Bi fore hym he lette brynge [4]þis knyȝtes" echon.
[5]þo kyng bi huld hem faste ynow, (for it muchel men were)
And nameliche þe twei breþren, ([6]for so muchel non þer nere.)
He [7]ascode hem, of wanne þei, and ho" hem þider broȝte,
And for wat encheson heo come, & wat þing þei soȝte?
" Sire kyng," (quoþ Hengist, þat for al oþer spek y wys) Hengistus.
" [8]Of Saxonie we beþ y bore, [9]þat of Germanie ys.
" þe maner ys of þilke lond, þat wen þer ys forþ ybroȝt
" So muche folk [10]of men," þat [11]þo lond may [12]susteyne noȝt.
" [13]þo" heye men of [14]þo lond schulle come bi fore þe kyng,
" And [15]alle þo ȝonge men of þe lond lete bi fore hym brynge.
" þe strengeste me schal bi choys and bi lot al so
" Chese out, and sende in to oþer lond," here beste forto do.

[1] Horn *Ar.* [2] Men *pro* knygtes *in Ar.* *At* militibus *in* Galfr. Mon. [3] The tydynges hough they come, were in contreie a brod drough. The kyng *Ar.* [4] These men *Ar.* [5] The *Ar.* [6] *Nam ipsi præ ceteris & nobilitate & decore prænitebant* Galfr. Mon. [7] Axede hem, whans hii were, & ho *Ar.* [8] *Saxonia tellus edidit nos, una ex regionibus Germaniæ* Galfr. Mon. [9] Of Germanye that is *Ar.* [10] *Desunt Ar.* [11] The *Ar.* [12] Hem susteyne *Ar.* [13] *Deest Ar.* [14] The *Ar.* [15] Alle the yonge bachelrie me shal to fore hym bryng. The stalewortheste me shal by loth and by chois also Chese, & sende hem out of londe, *Ar.*

" And [1] heo schulle be such, þat no prince [2] dorre hem for sake,
" [3] Ac for heore prowesse gladliche in to here seruise take.
" þis cas ys to vs y come, y chose we beþ þer to,
" [4] For so muche ys in the lond, oure beste forto do.
" And forto be maistres of þis folk we beþ y chose & ynome
" Mi broþer & ich, (for wo beþ of dukes kyn y come.)
" For þoru our Godes in to þe se we wende ich vnderstonde,
Mercurius. " And Mercurius haþ vs y lad into [5] þi londe.
þo þe kyng herde nempne Mercurius in þis cas,
He askede, wat God and wat þing Mercurius was?
" Oure bi leue (quoþ [6] þis oþer) in þe hye [7] Godes ys y do,
" Saturnus and Jupiter, and al þe oþer al so,
" þat vp holdeþ þe world, & in Mercurius mest y wys,
" [8] þe heye God," þat in oure tonge Woden y clepud ys.
" [9] þer ner vrel dore him bi toke of þe woke þe ferþe day,
" In honour of hym y clepud in oure tonge Wednesday.
Venus. " Aftur hym we honoureþ Venus mest, þat Frie y clepud ys
" In oure tonge, & in þe wyke Friday for hym y wys.
" Her of ȝe schul vnderstonde, þat in þe firmament beþ
" Planetes, y liche cler sterres, seuene, as ȝe seþ:
" Saturnus and Jubiter, Mars and þe Sonne y wys,
" Venus and Mercurius, and þe Mone lowest ys.

---

[1] Hii shulleth *Ar.* [2] Ne der *Ar.* [3] But *Ar.* [4] And for ther was to muche folk, oure beste we mote do. And to be *Ar.* [5] This *Ar.* [6] That *Ar.* [7] God *Ar.* [8] *Omittit* Galfridus Mon. [9] *Lege*, þer uer vr eldore, *i. e.* therefore our elders *&c.* *Nam in* Galfr. Mon. " *huic veteres nostri* " *dicaverunt quartam feriam* " *septimanæ, quæ usque in* " *hodiernum diem nomen* " Wodnesdei *de nomine ipsius* " *sortita est.*

" Aftur

" Aftur ech of hem in þe wike y clepud ys a day:
" First [1] os Sonne, & so of oþere and þe seneþe Saturday.
" And for weder, & oþer [2] þing on erþe, aftur hem muche is,
" [3] Þis mys bi leuede men hem clepede Godes while y wis.
" Sori ich am" (quoþ Vortiger) " þo he herde þis.
" For zoure bi leue, þat [4] ze segget, for no bileue yt nys.
Ac for zoure coming ich am glad, ho so ow hider ladde,
[5] Were yt God, were yt oþer, for nede ich hadde.
For ich am myd my fon [6] on ech half by set,
Andzef ich hem may ouer come þoru zou þe bet,
[7] Ich zou myd me at holde, & in grete richesse zou do
Of ziftes, and of chatews, and of londes al so.
Heo [8] maden certeyne couenaunt þat heo were al at on;
So þat þei bi leuede forþ with [9] þe kyng echon.
Hit was not longe [10] þer aftur þat þis Picars ne come
Out of Scotlond Souþward, and townes faste nome. Bellum.
[11] þe tyþing her of to oure kyng com,
þe wey mid al ys power azen hem faste he nom.

---

[1] Of the Sonne, & so forth the senethe *Ar.* [2] Thynges *Ar.* [3] These mysbyleuede *Ar.* [4] Ye bileueth, no bileue is. But of youre come ich *Ar.* [5] Were hit God, or eny othur, for al nede ych hadde *Ar.* [6] In euery half *Ar.* [7] Ich yough wole with me witholde, & gret honour yut do, And yiftes yiue ynough of londes, & othur catelles also. Hii made a certayn couenant, so that hii were at on; *Ar.* [8] *Paruerunt illico barbari, & fœdere confirmato in curia ipsius remanserunt. Nec mora emergentes ex Albania Picti, exercitum valde grandem mittunt, aquilonaresque partes insulæ vastare cæperunt* Galfr. Mon. [9] Our *pro* þe *in Ar.* [10] Afterward that the Pictes ne come *Ar.* [11] Tho the tydyng of this thyng to Vortiger come, *Ar.*

Strong bataile heo smyte þer, ac þe Saxones anon
So god were, þat þe oþere bi gonne to fle echone.
þo Vortiger þoru hem hadde þe maistrie,
He ȝef hem ȝiftes grete ynow, and dude ys corteyse.
Hengist, þat here maistre was, he ȝaf in Lyndeseye
Londes faire, and rentes and [1] townes grete and heye,"
[2] War þoru hym & ys men [3] in fair wareson he broȝte.
[4] þo Hengist hadde þis, forþer more he þoȝte.
þo he hadde þe kyng in priuete al clene at ys wille,
Peticio Hengisti. " Sire," he seide, " of derne [5] cas ich wol þe warne stille.
" þine fon beþ in ech half, & þis ys þe meste doute,
" þat þin owne men ne loueþ þe noȝt, þat þe beth aboute.
" Heo þretneþ þe stille, & seggeþ heo wolleþ [6] þe" brynge
" þe twei breþre from Breteyne, & [7] crowne þat on kynge:
" [8] þer fore ich [9] rede, þat me sende into my contrei ywys
" To [10] Saxoine aftur more help, for help y now þer ys.
For [11] habbe þou power ynow, þou myȝt be glad & bliþe.
Ac oþing ich [12] wolde bidde þe, þat þou me woldest tyþe.

---

[1] Tounes, & gret nobleye *Ar.* [2] *Quibus sese & commilitones suos sustentaret* Galfr. Mon. [3] In to rychesse *Ar.* [4] And yut tho he hadde al this, forthermore he thoughte *Ar.* [5] Thyng *pro* cas *in Ar.* [6] *Oculam hanc erasit in Ar. eadem, ut videtur, manus quæ & scripsit.* [7] Crouny on to kynge *Ar.* [8] *Si placet tibi, mittamus in patriam nostram, & invitemus milites ex ea, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [9] The rede, that we sende to my *Ar.* [10] *Sic in Cod. Harleyano. At* Saxonie *in Ar.* [11] If thugh hast power y nough, thugh maist be *Ar.* [12] Wole bidde the, & thugh wolt me lithe. Bidde what thugh wolt, quath the kyng, ich wole the graunte ywis, Elles forsothe ich were to blame, yf hit to graunty is. And fetthe [*l.* fetche] help al that thugh maist, that be of good araye, And ich wole hure while yelde, and hure huyre paye

" Send [1] aftur help," quoþ þe kyng, " þat þou me noȝt bi traie,
" And wole heore while ȝelde, so þat scholle holde hem wel paie.
" And bidde of me wat þou wolt, & ich wol þe graute ywis,
" For elles ich were vnkynde, ȝef it to grante ys.
Hengist faire hym þonkede, and hys hed lowtede a doun.
" þou hast," he seide, " ȝeue me mony a fayr town.
" And naþeles such þing [2] nabbe y noȝt, as it to duk bi come.
" For wan ich am [3] duke's sone, yt bi comeþ to me//
" For to [4] habbe som [5] gret// cite or castel me to [6] ware,
" [7] War inne y myȝte to þyn nede habbe my folk ȝare.
þer fore,// as ich am þi knyȝt, & [8] prest to þi nede al so,
Grante me [9] castel oþer cite þi nede in to do.
" Hengist," quoþ þe [10] kyng þo, " ner me not to done
" Such þyng, as þou me biddest to graunte þe, so sone.
" For þou art mon off strange lond, & Cristene mon non.
" And eke, þei ich wolde, my barones wolde yt with segge echon.
" Sire, grante me þonne," quoþ Hengist, " ȝef yt ys þi wille,
" [11] As muche place, as myd a þong ich may a boute tille,

---

paye. Hengis faire hym thonked tho, and his heed bowed a doun *Ar.*

[1] *Ad hæc Vortigernus, " Mitte ergo legatos tuos ad Germaniam, & invita quos volueris, & pete à me quod desideras, & nullam repulsam patieris* Galfr. Mon. [2] Haue ich nought, as a duk *Ar.* [3] A duke's sone, me thinketh hit were to doue *Ar.* [4] Haue *Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] Where, *Ar.* [7] And, yf that ich nede hadde, kepe me fro dere. Ther fore, *Ar.* [8] Redy to the also, *Ar.* [9] Cite or castel my nede inne to do *Ar.* [10] Kyng, hit were me nought to done *Ar.* [11] As much as with a bole huyde ich may ouer tille, *Ar.*

" [1] þat

" [1] þat ich þer [2] vppe mowe a siker bold" a rere,
" þat ich [3] mowe in þi seruise wytie, ȝef yt nede were.
þe kyng ne hulde þat bute a [4] lutel, he grantede hys bone.
Hengist sende in to hys contre aftur more power sone.
þongca- þo carf he a bole hyde smale al [5] to a þong
ster. þoru out, wil he wolde laste, & þo was he somdel long.
In an hard [6] roche stude ys þong aboute he drow,
And þer wyþ inne al to ys wille markede place ynow,
And rerde þer an castel god y now and strong,
[7] þat þangcaster, oþer Tangcaster, yclepud was for þe þong.
þer come out of Germanie vnder þat, ych wene,
Y charged mid gode knyȝtes, schippes eiȝtetene.
And Rowen, Hengiste's doȝter, among hem y broȝt was,
þat fairor wommon nower a boute in no lond nas.
þo þis castel [8] ȝare was, Hengist þe king bi soȝte
[9] To come to hys castol, & se þe knyȝtes þat he broȝte.
þo kyng com þider priueliche, & [10] þis knyȝtes y sey,
And þis castel, [11] so" sone a rerd, so [12] strong and so hey.

---

[1] *Quo me, si opus fuerit, recipiam* Galfr. Mon. [2] Vppon may a siker place *Ar.* [3] Myghte in thyne seruise me wytie and nede were *Ar.* [4] Lite, & grauntede al his bone *Ar.* [5] To one thonge Thurgh out, while hit wolde y laste, and that was somdel longe *Ar.* [6] Roche's stode *Ar.* Saxorum locum *habet* Galfr. Mon. [7] And Thwong castel, or Tancastel, cleped is for the thwong. Thenne come ther out of Germanye vnder that, ich wene, Charged with orpede men, shipes eightetene *Ar.* [8] A redy was *Ar.* [9] To come and se his castel, and men he hadde y broughte. The kyng *Ar.* [10] These *Ar.* [11] *Deest Ar.* [12] Noble *pro* strong *in Ar.*

[1] Mid

[1] Mid al [2] he was wel a payed and bi leuede atte mete.
þis mayde out of chambre com, þo [3] þei hadden y ȝete,
With a coppe of gold, fol of wyn, syde drow hire tail
[4] A kne to þe kyng heo seyde, [5] "lord kyng wasseyl. Wasseyl.

[1] With al *Ar.* [2] *Ut vero regiis epulis refectus fuit, egressa est puella de thalamo, aureum ciphum, plenum vino, ferens. Accedens deinde propius, flexis genibus dixit,* louerd ching woschail Galfr. Mon. [3] Hii hadde y yete *Ar.* [4] A kne sheo sette hure byfore the kyng, & seide, "sire wassail *Ar.* [5] *Vide Seldeni Notas in Draytoni Poly-olbion, pag.* 153. *ubi locum quendam è Roberto nostro (alio tamen usus MS.) adduxit, innuitq;* Louerd kyng was-heil *idem esse quod* Lord kyng a health; Drinc-heile *vero idem quod* Drinke the health. *Verum his de rebus scripserunt plures, in quibus & ipse numerandus est Somnerus. Atqui tot auctorum verba non est cur exscribam. Sat est si ea tantummodo in medium proferam, quæ observavit in Itinerario Cantiano (p.* 20.) *doctissimus Lambardus. idque ea potissimum de caussa, quod & illum hac occasione plane consulendum esse monuerit eruditissimus Spelmannus in Glossario.* [*Hengist*] espying therefore, that king *Vortiger* was much delighted in womens companie, and knowing wel, that *sine Cerere & Libero, friget Venus*, he bad him to a solempne banquet, and after that he had (according to the maner of *Germanie* yet continuing) well plied him with pots, hee let slip before him a faire gentlewoman, his owne daughter, called *Roxena*, or *Rowen*, which being instructed before hande how to behaue hir selfe, most amiablie presented him with a goblet of wine, saying in hir own language, *pæȝ Hæile Hlaforð cyninȝ & wessail* Lorde king, that is to say, bee merie Lord king: with which hir daliance, the King was so delighted, that he not onely vouchsafed to pledge hir, but desired also to performe it in the right maner of hir owne countrey. And therefore he answered (as he was taught) vnto hir againe, *ðrinc Hæile* drinke merily. Which when shee had done, himselfe tooke the cup, and pledged hir so hartely, that from thencefoorth hee could

The first wasseling cup.

þe kyng bi huld hire [1] swiþe ynow, & wondrede hire [2] fair hede.
[3] For so fair wommon nuste he non. He askede wat heo seide?
Men, þat knew þe langage, seide, wat was wassayl,
And þat he scholde þat brozte onswere, " drynkhayl.
" Drinkhayl, quoþ þis kyng azen, & bed hire drinke anon.
þe coupe [4] he nom seþþe of hire among hem echon,
And custe hire, & sette hire a doun, & glad dronk hire hail.
And þat was lo! in þis lond þe firste vassayl,
As in langage of Saxonie, þat me myzte euer y wyte,
And so [5] wel he paiþ þat folk aboute, þat he nys not zet for gete.
No sire, ne be þe day so [6] long, þe while heo sitteþ o benche,
And som of þe nyzt nimeþ þer to, þe drynke forto sthenche,

The issue of an ungodly marriage.

could neuer be in rest, vntill he had obtained hir to wife, little weighing, either how deepely he had endaungered his conscience in matching himselfe with a heathen woman, or how greatly he had hazarded his *Croune* by joyning handes with so mightie a forein Nation.

[1] Faste ynough *Ar.* [2] Fairhede *Ar. unica voce. Nec tamen idem quod* forehead *esse judicarim. Non aliud enim plane est quam* facies pulchra. *id quod è* Galfrido Monumetensi *constat, qui sic ait:* At ille, visa facie puellæ, admiratus est tantum ejus decorem, & incaluit. [3] And of men of hure langage couthe he axede what sheo sede? A non men tolde the kyng fore what was to seye wassail, And that he sholde to hure that tyme answere ther to drynk hail. Drynk hail, seide the kyng a ye, *Ar.* [4] He toke of hure anon, and a mong echon Kussed hure & a doun hure sette, & gladly dronk hure hail. And thus was here in this londe furst y knowe wassail *Ar.* [5] Wel yut hit paieth the folk, that hit is nought for yite *Ar.* [6] Long, and sitteth murye a benche, And of the nyght yut nymeth ther to, drynke ther by to shenche, On an holy prechoure's word hii wol nought

Of an holi prechoure's word heo nolde not so ofte þenche,
As of the muri word, þat hem þinkeþ of þe sely wenche.
So foul lechour was þe kyng, that anon" in þe howse
He willede, for foul lecheri, þis mayde [1] forte spouse.
Hengist wiste wel ys wille, [2] & þat he wes hastyf.
He grantede [3] in hys felonye ys doȝter to be ys wyf,
For wat þe kyng ȝeue hym þe" contre of Kent y wis.
þe kyng in ys foule wille grantede al þis,
And weddede þis mayde [4] in a wel luþer cas,
For þat he was Cristene, and heo a paynen was.
[5] þat lond wes vnel y paied þer wyþ, & ys þre sones also,
Vortimer, and [6] Catigen, and Passen þer to.
Four hundred ȝer and fourti and [7] nyene, ich vnderstonde,
Yt wes of grace, þat þe Saxones þus come to þis londe.
þo were among Cristenemen [8] þis paynes þus y menged,
þat mys bileue [9] into al þis lond a mong men was y sprenged.
Hengist seide to þe kyng, " Sire, þou myȝte y se,
" þat ich am in stude of þi fader, & þi conseiler schal be. Consilius. Hengisti.
" Do al aſtur my conseil, and þou schalt þoru me
" Ouer come al þi fon, to soþe ich segge þe.

---

nought so wel thenche, As hii doth of that mury word of that sely wenche. The kyng on hure gan madde so, that anon *Ar.*

[1] *Pro,* forto. [2] And knew his nycete, And grauntede al for felonye his doughtur his wif to be, By so the kyng hym wolde yiue the *Ar.* [3] *Sed omnibus unum consilium fuit, ut puella daretur regi, & ut peteret pro ea provinciam Cantiæ ab illo. Nec mora, data fuit puella regi Wortigerno, & provincia Cantiæ Hengisto,* &c. Galfridus Mon. [4] This was a sory cas *Ar.* [5] The people was *Ar.* [6] Katigern *Ar.* [7] *Sic plane in Cod. nostro Harleyano. At* fyue *in Ar.* [8] The hethene thus *Ar.* [9] In al *Ar.*

" Sende

Duo filii Hengesti.

" Sende we ȝet aftur my sones [1] Octe and Ebise,
" Þat quaynte werroures heþ, and stalworþe and wyse.
" In þe Norþ half ȝef hem lond, wher þou wolt by se,
" Þat heo mowe bi tuene þe and þe Scottes be.
" Þenne þou [2] myȝt siker be by Souþ Homber ywys.
Þe kyng he sende aftur hem, and grauntede al þis.
So þat mid þre hundred schipes heo ariuede here,
[3] Ful of armes and of men, here was gret power.
Þe kyng wel [4] fayn ȝaf hem lond, as Hengist hym bi soȝte,
And Hengist euer mo and mo schippes hyder broȝte.
Þo þe Brytones þis ẏ seye, of treson heo were in drede.
For þo lond was al mid hem y fuld, þer fore þe kyng [5] heo bede,
Þat he schulde hym vnder stonde, & out of [6] lond hem do.
For yt ne bi com noȝt to payns among Cristen men be so.
For yt was Cristendam, & in mony studes me nuste
Wuch was on, ne wuch was oþer, ne to wam me myȝte truste.
Some faderes were Cristene, & þo moderes heþene were.
Me nuste to weþer heo bi come þe children þat heo bere.
Þe kyng louede þe Saxones, for loue of ys wyue,
And nolde, for al þe Britones, out of [7] hys londe hem dryue.

---

[1] Octa & Ose, *Ar.* [2] Maist *Ar.* [3] Ful of trauaillyng men, this was gret power *Ar.* [4] Fawe *Ar.* [5] Hii *Ar.* [6] This londe *Ar.* [7] This *Ar.*

Seynt

SEYNT [1] Germayn þe bischop to þis londe com,
For mysbileue þat tyme, & to amende Cristendom,
And prechede, as yt nede was, & faire miracles wrozte,
So þat þe Cristene men in beter stat he brozte.
And heo a forcede hom" þe more, þe heþene a wey to dryue.
[2] He nolde bileue here porpos for þe kyng, ne for ys wyue.
Heo for soke þe kyng al out, and binome [3] ys power,
And hys eldest sone made kyng, þat hatte Vortimer.
þis Vortimer with gret power and god ernest ynow,
þoru conseil of Seynt Germayn, azen [4] þis heþene drow.
[5] þo sene zer yt was aftur, þat heo to londe come,
þe kyng was, God i þonk, a boue in four batailes, þat heo nome.
Alle heo were in one zer. atte firste, withoute one,
Catigen, þe kynge's broþer, myd hys men echone,
Asailede Hors and hys ost, so þat heo fouzte faste, Bellum Hors.
So þat þis Catigen yslawe was atte laste.
þo kyng for ys broþer deþ sori was y now.
To þis Hors he smot anon, & among al ys folk hym slow.
þo þis strong mon was slawe, þat so strong was in fyzt,
Ys men bi gonne to fle [6] and" fayn þat heo mygt.

---

[1] Germayn bysshop of Auferne, as ich vnderstonde, And of Treueros seynt Lup, come to this londe, For mysbileue a mong men, and othur heresye, That me clepede Arriane and also Pelagye, And prechede the people, as nede was, and faire miracles wroughte, So that thurgh hem Cristendom to betere stat was broughte. And hii a forcede hem *Ar.* [2] And wold nought leue for the kyng, *Ar.* [3] Hym his *Ar.* [4] The *pro* þis *in Ar.* [5] The senethe yer ther after hit was, that hii *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.*

þe

þe þridde batail, þat heo smyte, was ryȝt [1] vp the se,
þer com þe kyng myd ys ost, and Hengist hym a ȝe.
þer was batail strong y now, and mest yt was vp tweye,
Up þe kyng and Hengist, þat were so stronge beye.
Fuga Hengisti. þo stronge dyntes, þat heo smyten, grisliche yt was to se.
So þat Hengist bi gan atte laste to fle.
He, þat neuer er ne fley, fond þer ys pere.
He fley in to þe yle of Tenet, he no dorste a bide no ner.
ȝet eft heo fouȝten in þe se, and by side þere;
Ac þe Britones at eche tyme þe maistrye a wey bere.
[2] þo Saxones heo seye, þat heo myȝte no leng at stonde,
To þe kyng þei sende, þat þei [3] most wende hom to here londe.
þo heo were alle henne y went, here was joye y now,
þe kyng ȝef ys men grete ȝiftes, & gret loue to hem drow,
And let arere chirches vp, þat þe schrewes a doun caste,
And bi gan to make a muri lond, ac to lute wyle yt laste.
þe Deuel hadde enuy þer to, þat he susteynede Cristendam,
And in ys [4] stepmoder herte ys woniyng he nom.
So þat [5] þo luþer wommon of poyson hire bi þouȝte,
And apoysnede þe godeman, and to [6] þe" deþe hym broȝte.
[7] þis kyng, þo he sey þen deþ, ys knyȝtes he let of sende,
And schewede hem al þe wey wyder he schulde wende,
And ȝef hem gold and" soluer, and ȝiftes riche and gode,
And [8] bad hem for þe loue of God, þat heo hem vnderstode,

[1] Upon *Ar.* [2] The Saxones sey, that they ne myghte a yenst the Brutones stonde, *Ar.* [3] Myghte *Ar.* [4] Stepmodere's herte sone his In he nom *Ar.* [5] The *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] The kyng, tho he sholde be ded, his knyghtes let of sende, And shewede hem of his stat, and of his lyf is ende, And yaf hem goold *Ar.* [8] *Audaces autem & bellicosos juvenes,*

And [1] stabliche holde to gedere, to saue þat lond,
þat neuer þe luþer payns yt hadde eft an hond.
[2] And ȝef he myȝte libbe lenger, he nolde drede noȝt.
And wan it alles so was, þat he wes to deþe y broȝt,
He bed, wan he were ded, þat me schulde ys bodi nome,
And burie yt [3] þe hauene, wer þe payns come,
In a temple swiþe heye, þat heo myȝt yt fer yse,
þat heo, for drede of þe syȝte, myȝte sone fle.
[4] Hardi was is herte to hem, wen he wolde þat þei hadde
Drede of ys bodi ded, [5] wan heo o liue hym dradde.
þer was deol & sorwe y now, þo þis gode mon was ded.
Ac noþeles heo ne buriede hym noȝt, as he hym self bed.
For hem þoȝte yt nas bute a wille, ac, as hee hem by þoȝte,
In Londō myd honour þis bedi an erþe broȝte.

VORTIGER, þe luþer mon, þo hys sone ded was,
Underfong aȝeyn to hym þe kyndam, alas!
For sone, þoru ys wyue's red, aftur Hengist he sende,
þat he þider to hym with [6] simple folk wende.
For he dradde, ȝef he hadde to gret power an honde,
þat þer schulde a rise strif by twene hym and þe londe.

---

juvenes, qui ei in debellationibus suis astare solebant, hortabatur, ut pro patria pugnantes, eam ab hostium irruptione tueri niterentur Galfr. Mon.

[1] Stabelliche helde hem to hepe, forto sauy that lond, *Ar.*

[2] And if he langor myght haue leued, he wolde haue drad ryght nought. But whan hit ther to come were, he were to deth y brought, *Ar.*

[3] At an hauene, þer the hethene men vp come, In a tumbe swithe an heigh, þat me myghte hit fer y se, *Ar.*

[4] Hard *Ar.* [5] As they a lyue hadde *Ar.* [6] *Ut iterum in Britaniam rediret; attamen privatim & cum paucis* Galfr. Mon.

Reditus Hengisti.

þo Hengist herde telle, þat Vortimer was ded,
He gaderede power y now, and sone nom ys red.
And þre hundred þousond [1] men mid y armod he nom,
And mid al þe atyl þer to in to þis lond he com.
þo þe kyng & ys consel wiste of [2] ys grete companye,
Heo bi þouȝte & dradde sore, [3] þat" it were for tricherie.
And naþeles he sende hem word a ȝen in ys felonye,
þat in gret loue hider he com, and no þoȝte no vilanye,
Bute for drede of Vortimer, [4] last he o liue were,
Such folk myd hym he brouȝte, for he hadde of hym fere.
Ac wen he nas o liue noȝt, he bad þe kyng be hende,
þat he myȝte myd ys folk [5] vp ys lond wende,
Bi fore hym and ys conseil, [6] a certeyn tyme and place,
[7] With any maner arme to fonde ys grace,
And þat [8] þo kyng of hys men at hold wuche he wolde,
And dryue aȝeyn ouer þe se þilke þat he nolde.
þe kyng was her wyþ wel ypayd, & sette hem þo day,
And al ys owe folk, þat heo come þe firste day of May
At Ambresburi, [9] for to of þis þing som ende,
To at holde wuche he wolde of hem, & þe oþer aȝen sende.
þo þis folk in eyþer syde y war was of þe day,
In a newe maner Hengist þouȝt þe kyng & ys [10] bi tray.

---

[1] Men yarmyd with hym he nom, And with al hure atyr to this londe he com. Whan the kyng *Ar.* [2] This comp. *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Lest he a lyue *Ar.* [5] Upon his *Ar.* [6] In certeyn *Ar.* [7] With oute eny manere armes to fondy of his grace *Ar.* [8] The *Ar.* [9] For to speke of this *Ar. rectius. Et tamen Auctori magis commodum*, for to do (*i. e.* to make.) [10] To by traye *Ar.*

He

He hette al ys knyȝtes, þat myd hym þer were,
þat in ys hose stilleliche ych of hem a knyf bere,
And, wan heo to [1] þis semble among þis Britones come,
þat ech of hem an hey mon in conseil to hym nome,
And swyþe faire speke with hym, & wan he þanne seyde,
" Nymeþ ȝoure saxes," [2] þat he a non mid þe dede
Drow ys knyf, and slow a non al an on ywar,
þat heo myȝt of þe hexte men þat lond make bar.
þis word was wel vnderstonde, [3] so þat þo heo come
In eyþer syde to Ambrisbury, þo day þat heo nome,
And þe Brutones al simpliche in god pay, as heo vnderstode,
And Hengist spek with þe kyng, as yt were for gode,
And þo he say ys time wel, he gan to grede anon,
" Nymeþ ȝoure saxes," and ys men [4] þer with echon
Kypte heore longe knyues, and slowe faste to gronde,
So þat heo slow [5] four hundred & sixti in astonde
Of erles and of barons þe [6] hexte þat þer were.
Alas! þe deol to þis lond, [7] wuch treson was þere?
Now ne kouþe þe Britones non Englisch y wys,
Ac þe Saxones speche it was, & þorw hem y come yt ys.

Nymeþ owre sexes.

---

[1] The assemble among the Brutones *Ar.* [2] Thanne anon with that ilke rede, Ech drough his knyf, & slough his felawe an vnywar, *Ar.* [3] And to hure day they come To Ambresbury on aithur side, as they the day nome. Sympleliche the Brutones come for pees they vnderstode, *Ar.* [4] Tho anon echon Kaughte out hure longe knyues, and slough ther with to grounde, *Ar.* [5] *Ita &* Galfr. Mon. *Sed* thre *Ar. cum* Aluredo Bev. [6] Heighest *Ar.* [7] Such *Ar.*

Hengist anon [1] mid þe word [2] þe kyng hente faste
Bi þe mantel, and anon to his fet hym [3] caste.
So þat þis gode men were y brozt myd treson to gronde,
Ac some, þat of scapede, mid stones, þat heo fonde,
And mid staues of hegges, defondede hem a boute,
Pugna. And slow of þis luþer men mony on in þe route.

ELDOL, erl of Gloucestre, [4] þat a strong knyzt was,
Hente a strong leuour, þat hym a com at honde bi cas.
þo he say ys felawes ymorþred so viliche,
God ernest he nom to hym, and sturde hym harde liche.
He smot to gronde, & lyztliche he ne zef strok non,
þat he ne brak hed oþer arm, or som oþer bon.
He ne zef of hys lyf nozt, ys felawes for to awreke,
So þat he slow in þe place, er ys staf gonne breke,
Sixti mon and tene, and wondede mony on,
And zet he of scapede o liue for hem euer ech on
And þe luþer folk, þat slowe þus þat folk myd tricherie.
[5] þo kyng þei bonde faste [6] y now, þat rewliche he gan crie,
[7] And defoulede hym myd bendes, forto he swor ys oþ,
Alle here wille euer eft to do, ner hym ner so loþ.
þo wende forþ þis luþer folk, and nome [8] London,
And Euerwyk, and Lincolne, al [9] þoru þis treson.

[1] With that word the kyng to hym caughte *Ar.* [2] *Et ilico Vortigernum accepit, & per pallium detinuit* Galfr. Mon. [3] Raughte *Ar.* [4] That staleworthe man was, Hente a tronchon on his hond that hym com by cas, *Ar.* [5] The *Ar.* [6] Anon *pro* y now *in Ar.* [7] And so they gonne fare with hym, forte he swor his oth, Al hure wille for to do, were hym neuere so loth *Ar.* [8] Town *adjicit Ar.* [9] With tresoun *Ar.*

And

And [1] seþþe// Wynchestre bi Souþe, & oþer [2] grete// townes mo,
And robbede euer as heo wende, & slow, & dude gret wo.
Þese were [3] lo! our faderes, of wam we beþ of y come,
Þat mid such traison habbeþ þis lond þus y nome.

VORTIGER, [4] oure feble kyng, þat lute was worþ þo,
As he it hadde of serued wel to lutel hadde of wo,
He flow in to Walis, þider he com sone,
He ascode of hys conselers wat was best to done?
Me radde hym, for ys casteles al hym bi nome were,
Þat he in som siker stude a castel [5] bulde þere,
Þat he myȝte sikerliche wyte hym from hys fon.
Þe kyng [6] a god stude þer to let seche out a non,
[7] And bigan a strong castel of lym and off ston,
And of quoynte werkmen let hym brynge mony on.
[8] þo heo bi gonne þis castel,// al þat heo made a day,
O morwe, wen þei come þer to, al clene þer downe it lay.

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] *Omittit Ar.* [3] Oure olde fadres lo! of wham we buth y come, And with such trechourie this lond thus hii haueth ynome. Vortiger this luthur kyng, that litel worth was tho, As he hadde of serued wel, hadde muche wo, And was let go a lyue. To Walis he wende sone, And axede tho of his consaillers, what best hym was to done? *Ar.* [4] *Cum igitur tandem tantam cladem inspexisset Vortigernus, secessit in partes Cambriæ, inscius quid contra nefandam gentem ageret. Vocatis denique magis suis, consuluit illos, jussitque dicere quid faceret? &c.* Galfr. Mon. [5] Sholde rere, *Ar.* [6] A good place ther fore let *Ar.* [7] And let bygȳnne a castel of strong lym and ston, *Ar.* [8] In Herefordshire vp the mont of Eirik [Eir *Galfr. Mon.*] ful high Was this castel by gonne, vpon the water of Wigh. Tho hii bygonne the castel *Ar.*

[1] No beter sped heo, nere þat werk ner so strong.
þe kyng ascode at enchanteres, war on yt was ylong?
[2] þe enchanteres seide, þat me a childe soȝte,
þat were ẏ gete with oute fader, & þat me yt þider broȝte,
And slow yt, and mid þe blode bisprenge wel here ston"
And here morter, & yt scholde stonde þenne anon.
[3] Hem þoȝte yt was euel y do, ac heo bi leuede yt noȝt,
Invencio Merlini. þat in mony a contrey such a child nas y soȝt.
So þat some [4] þe messingeres to Kermerdyn come,
And [5] how children bi fore þe ȝate pleyede he toke gome.
þo seide on to [6] an oþer, "Merlyn, wat ys þe,
"[7] þou faderles schrewe wy [8] misdostow me?
"For ich am of [9] kynges ycome, & þou nart not worþ a fille.
"For þou [10] naddest ner no fader, þer fore hold þe stille.
þo þe messageres herde þis, heo astynte þere,
And askede [11] at men aboute, wat þat child were?
[12] He ne bod neuer fader, heo seyde, þat me myȝte vnderstonde,
And ys moder a kynge's doȝter was of þilke londe,

---

[1] Euere more hit ferde thus, nere that werk so strong *Ar.* [2] The kynge's enchauntours seide hym tho, ther most a child be sought, That hadde neuere fader, and thuder hit mosté be brought, And sle that child, and with the blood me sholde bysprenge the ston *Ar.* [3] This thoughte hem wonder for to do, & yut they left hit nought, *Ar.* [4] Of the *Ar.* [5] Of children in the strete that playde they toke gome *Ar.* [6] That other, "what "myschaunce is the, *Ar.* [7] *Quid mecum contendis fatue?* Galfr. Mon. [8] Mysdoist thugh me? *Ar.* [9] Good men *pro* kynges *in Ar.* [10] Haddest neuere fader, *Ar.* [11] Of the men *Ar.* [12] Men seyde, he hadde fader non, as hii couthe vnderstonde. His moder kynge's

And wonede at Seynt Petre's in a nonnery þere.
þo þe messageres herde þis, joyful y now þei were.
To þe baylys of þe toun hastiliche heo wende,
þat he þe moder and þe sone to þe kyng sende.
þo me wiste wat [1] heo were, me ne durste with segge it noȝt,
So þat þe moder & þe sone to þe kyng were y broȝt.
þe kyng [2] bad þe wommon segge soþ, [3] þat heo noþing lete,
þat he ne seide in soþnesse, ho þat child bi gete.
" My lord [4] kyng," quoþ þis oþer, " to þe soþe i segge it þe,
" þat neuer mon ney me [5] com, þat yt bi get on me.
" Ac of o þing ich wot, wan ich ofte was
" In chambre mid my felawes," þer com to me bi cas
" [6] And swyþe fair mon with alle, & bi clupte wel softe,
" And semblant made fair ynow, & custe me wel ofte.
" þenne wende he forþ, as in schade, y nuste how ny ware.
" þo he hadde y siwed me longe in þis fare,

---

kynge's doughter was of i. *Southwales* Demecie londe, And duelleth and [*l.* at] Seyut Petre's church, as a nonne there *Ar.* *Adeo ut* hod, *sive* had, *pro* bod *reponerem.*

[1] They *Ar.* [2] Het *Ar.* [3] For no thyng shold heo lete, That heo ne told openlich, who þat child was by yete *Ar. per inde ac si* who *idem quod* how *valeret. Illud tamen noto, in margine (ab eadem autem manu) voculam* was *adjectam esse, hac nota (viz. ^) in textu posita.* [4] Kyng, seide heo tho, the sothe ych sey the, *Ar.* [5] Cam, þat hit by gat in me. And of on thyng ich wote, whan ich al one was In priue chaumbres with oute felawes, *Ar.* [6] *Folia octo in Ar. excisa esse deprehendo, in quo proinde de sequentibus, usque ad hanc notam ☞ (quam in margine apposuimus, utpote ad quam iterum occurrit Ar.) longe fusius quam in Codice Harleyano tractatum est.*

" Atte laste in forme of mon ofte he lay bi me,
" Ac oþer mon neuer non, to soþe y segge it þe.
þo þe kyng herde þis, gret wonder he þouȝte þere.
He asched at is clerkes, [1] wer yt to leue were?
þe clerkes seide, þat yt is in philosophie y fonde,
þat þer beþ in þe eir an hey, fer fro þe gronde,
As a maner gostes, wyȝtes as it be,
And me may hem ofte on erþe in wylde studes y se,
And ofte in monne's fourme wymmen heo comeþ to,
And ofte in wymmen forme þei comeþ to men al so,
þat men clepuþ eluene, and perantre in þis maner
On of hem in þis wommon bi get þis child her.
þo Merlyn hadde al þis y herd, to þe kyng he sede:
" Sire kyng, wy dudest þou my moder & me bi fore þe lede?
" My enchantoures," quoþ þe kyng, " me habbeþ þer to yrad,
" þat a child, þat nadde no fader, bi fore me were y lad,
" And þat þe werk myd ys blod, þat we habbeþ on honde,
" Be sprenged þat falleþ adoun, & þenne yt schulde stonde.
" Lat þin enchantors," quoþ Merlyn, " sone bi fore me brynge,
" And ich wol preue bi fore þe, þat heo telleþ al lesynge.
þis enchantors were ybroȝt sone bi fore þe kyng.
" Wad segge ȝe," quoþ Merlyn, " of þis newe þinge?
" Radde ȝe, þat me by sprengede þat morter mid my [2] blod.
" Here me schal sone y se, þat ne konne no god.

[1] *I. e.* whether he might believe it? *Nam*, si id, quod mulier dixerat, fieri potuisset, *in* Galfr. Mon. [2] *Potest & interrogandi nota distingui, nisi quod plenam sane distinctionem in Codice eximio (utcunque ad finem manco)* Galfridi Monumethensis, *mihi donato ab amico illo eruditissimo Richardo Gravesio de Mickleton in agro Gloucestriensi, reperiam. Sic enim ibi:*

Lauda-

" Seggeth me, ȝef þat ȝe konne, wat ys bi neþe þe gronde,
" þat makeþ þat þo fundement no stond none stonde.
þei ne kouþe onswere nozt, as it ys y wryte.
" Lord kyng," quoþ Merlyn, " ȝef þou wolt þe soþe wyte,
" Lat delue vnder þe fundement, & þou schalt bi neþe fynde
" A water pol, þat haþ y mad, þat þis werk ys bi hynde.
Me dalf bi neþe, and fond þe water, as Merlyn hadde y seid.
" Wat segge ȝe maistres," quod Merlyn, " þat ȝeue þat cole red,
" To bi nyme blod & my lyf, was ys bi neþe now þere?
þe maistres sete stille y now, ryȝt as heo doumbe were.
" Doþ out þis water," quoþ Merlyn, " & wen it is a weye,
" ȝe schul bi neþe ȝet y fynde holwe stones tweye,
" And in eyþer a dragon þer inne slepe faste.
Me let sone out of þis pol þe water clene caste,
And fonde, as he hadde y seid. Men wondred ynow,
And þoȝte, þat ys monhede to Godhed drow.
As þis Vortiger and þis folk token gome,
Twei grete dragones out of þis stones come,
þat on was red, þe oþer wyte. þo gonne to fyȝte faste
Strong batail, and þe fuyr out of þe mouþ caste.
So þat þe white was aboue, as þe folk y seye,
And drof þe rede al abak out of þe put ney.
þe rede, as for sorinesse, by turnede hym atten ende,
And asailede þe wyte, & made hym abac wende.
As þis dragones foȝte þus, þe kynge hette Merlyn þere,
Forte segge, ȝef he couþe, wat þe tokonyng were.

Pugna draconum.

Laudavistis, ut sanguis meus diffunderetur in cœmentum, & quasi illico opus constaret. Set dicite michi quid sub fundamento latet?

Mer-

Prophecia Merlini. Merlyn gan to wepe þo, and bi gan ys prophecie:
" Awey!" he seide, " þe rede dragon! for ys ende gynneþ to hye,
" And þe white dragon schal in to ys holes wende,
" þat bi tokeneþ þe Saxones, þat þou let aftur sende.
" þe rede bi tokeneþ þe Britones, and ȝoure kynde þat is,
" þat þe Saxones schulleþ ȝet ouer come, and here londe wynne ywis.
" Grote watres worþeþ ȝet rede of monne's blode,
" Cristendom worþ y cast a doun, & chirchon þat er stode.
" Ac ȝet schul þe Britones som tyme aȝeyn stonde,
" For þe bor of Cornewail schal helpe þis londe,
" And þo Saxnes hedes vnder fet trede.
" Mony yles wynne he schal, lond and oþer stude
" Lord he worþ of France, & Rome schal hys sturnhede
" Doute, & quake þerfore, ac ys endyng worþ in drede.
" [1] þat folk schal euer speke of hym, and ys noble dede
" Worþ to hym a swete mete, þat it con a rede.
" [2] Siþe, þat comeþ aftur hym, schulleþ holde þe seynorie.
Ac aftur hem schal aryse a worm of Germanye,
And þe [3] se wolf hym schal brynge vp, [4] & þanne religion
And holychirche eftsone worþ y broȝt al a don.
Change worþ of bischopriches, & þe digne sege y wys
Worþ y broȝt to Canterbury, þat at London now ys.

---

[1] *In ore populorum celebrabitur, & actus ejus cibus erit narrantibus* Galfr. Mon. [2] *Sex posteri ejus sequentur sceptrum, sed post ipsos exsurget Germanicus vermis,* Galfr. Mon. [3] *Æquoreus lupus* Galfr. Mon. [4] *Delebitur item religio, & transmutatio primarum sedium fiet. Dignitas Londoniæ adornabit Doroberniam* Galfr. Mon.

[1] Al

[1] Al þis bi fel afturward, as ȝe schul [2] y hure,
[3] þo Cornewaile's bor, of wam he spek, þat" was kyng Arthure,
þat so wel huld vp þis lond, and ys fon ouer com,
[4] þat þoru ys nobley wan mony a kyndom.
Of prophecie of Merlyn we ne mow telle no more,
For it so derk to symple men, bute me were þe bet in lore.
Gret wonder hadde þat folk of þe wisdam, þat he seyde,
Of þing, þat to come was, and of his ȝong hede.
þe kyng bed þo Merlyn, þat he hym tolde an dede,
In wat deþ he scholde deye, & Merlyn þis hym seyde.
" [5] Costantyne's sones [6] fur fle, ȝef þou myȝt.
" [7] For heo ȝarkeþ here schipes toward þi lond ryȝt.
" Heo bileueþ þat lond of Armore," þat þo lasse Breteyn ys.
" Heore seyles heo spredeþ in þe se, & hyder comeþ y wis.
" þe Saxones heo wolleþ a saile, & to gronde brynge,
" [8] Ac heo wolle þe in þin owne tour sle" atte bigynnynge.
" [9] þoru þi traison luþer mon heor fader þou slowe.
" [10] And" þoru þi trayson Saxones [11] into þis lond þou drowe.
" þou bede hem forto helpe þe, ac to þin wo heo beþ y come.
" Twei sorwes [12] þe beþ vp on, & þe ne worþ nowþbi nome.

---

[1] Much of this *Ar.* [2] Hure, as of the Cornyssh boor, that *Ar.* [3] *F.* þro. [4] And thurgh his grete nobleye *Ar.* [5] Constantyne's sones fuir *Ar.* [6] *Ignem filiorum Constantini diffuge, si diffugere valueris* Galfr. Mon. [7] For hure naueye hii arayth hiderward nough ryght. They leueth the londe of Armoryk. *Ar.* [8] And the sle in thyn owen tour *Ar.* [9] Hure fader and hure brother eke þurgh thi treson men slowe *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] Ferst in to this lond drowe *Ar.* [12] The cometh an honde, & neither the ne worth by nome. The Saxones nough destroyeth thy lond in the on ende. The two *Ar.*

" For

" For [1] þe Saxoues destruyeþ þi lond in to þo on ende.
" þo twei" breþren in þe oþer half [2] vp þi lond wol wende,
" To awreke on þe here heor fader deþ, þe ne tyd no pays.
" For heo wolleþ to morwe aryue atte haue of Tottenays.
" And wen Hengist ys yslawe, Aurely worþ kyng.
" Pays he wole brynge aȝeyn, & [3] chirchon þoru alle þing.
" Apoysned he worþ atte ende, and aftur hym an haste
" Hys broþer schal haue þe kyndam, þat apoysned worþ atte laste.
" So gret treson worþ among hem, þat aftur þe schul come,
[4] Ac þe Cornewaile's bor hem schal chaste some.

AURELI & Uter, þe twei breþren corteys,
With gret power a morwe ariuede at Totteneis.
þo þe tyþing sprong, þat heo comen attelaste,
þe Brutones, þat were helples, come aboute hem faste,
þat were to sprad here & þere, heo were þo glad ynowȝ,
[5] þat folk al so of holy chirche aboute hem faste drowȝ.
þer heo made Aureli kyng, & homage hym dude echon,
And [6] bede, þat heo moste vp þe Saxones wende anon.
Ac þe kyng Aurely þer aȝeyn gan [7] speke.
For he þoȝte on Vortiger ys fader first awreke.

---

[1] *Hinc enim regnum tuum devastant Saxones, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [2] Up the wolleþ wende, To a wreke hure fader deth, the ne tideth no pays *Ar.* [3] Chirches *Ar.* [4] But thurgh the boor of Cornewaille shal wrech of hym be nome *Ar.* [5] The folk eke of holy *Ar.* [6] Consailed hym on the Saxones, forto weynde anon *Ar.* [7] To speke, And wylned vpon Vortager his fader *Ar.*

[1] For

[1] For ys herte was so gret for ys fader deþ þere,
þat he ne myȝt glad be, ar he awreke were.
Vortiger [2] ys y flowe, for drede of hym ywis,
[3] To an castel in Yrchenfeld, in þe Est ende of Walis,
A boue þe water of Wye, vp an hul on heyȝ.
þe kyng Aureli þider com, & þat castel y seyȝ.
To Eldolf, erl of Gloucestre, he spek in þis manere:
" [4] Sire noble erl nym god ȝeme of þis castel here,
" Were he mowe þe luþer Vortiger wytye fro þe deþe,
" þat ich in ys inneward my swerd ne make a scheþe,
" þat ys aller mon worst, þat me euer sey with ye.
" þe deþ ne myȝte be to luþer, that he schulde in dye.
" For my fader Costantyn first he bi trayde amys,
" þat sauede hym & al þat lond from þe [5] Picars y wys.
" Seþþe my broþer [6] Constance he broȝte hym to kynge:
" For he wolde hym bi traie, and to deþe brynge.

[1] *Adeo enim propter proditionem patri illatam doluerat, quod nil agere videretur, nisi ipsum prius vindicaret* Galfr. Mon. [2] Was *Ar.* [3] To Genor castel in Yrchne, in the on ende of Walis, Vp an hille, that Dirty hight, þis castel stode ful hie, In the shire of Hergyn [Heryngfordeshire, *i.* Herfordshire, *in margine*] vp the water of Wye. The kyng tho he thuder com, spake in this maner to Eldoph, Erl of Gloucetre, sure se this castel here, Wher may hit this Vortiger wity fram his deth, And hit ich myghte in his body make my body a sheth. He is to me man worst to loken on with eye, His deth ne myghte to luther be þan he sholde deye *Ar.* [4] *Respice, dux nobilis, hujus urbis mœnia, utrum poterint Vortegirnum protegere, quin gladii mei mucronem ipse infra viscera ipsius recondam. &c.* Galfr. Mon. [5] Pictes *Ar.* [6] Constans he made to be kyng: *Ar.*

" And

" And seþþe, þoru ys tricherie þo he hadde þis lond on honde,
" He mengede þe luþer payns among [1] ȝou in þis londe,
" [2] Forte holde me & myn broþer out of oure eritage.
" [3] Ac oure Lord haþ vp ys heued ybrozt ys owne outrage.
" For þe luþer Saxones vnder ȝete ys luþer dede,
" Heo by nome hym ys kyndom, [4] & þat was a ryȝtful dede.
" Ac of o þing ich habbe deol, þat þis payns, þat luþer beþ,
" þat he brozte first to londe, as ȝe alle y seþ,
" þe noble men of þis lond þus to schame brozte,
" And þis lond, þat was riche, wastede al to nozte,
" And al holy chirche & Cristendom habbeþ y brozt to gronde
" Fram þat [5] o se to þat oþer, [6] a las! þilke stonde!
" Now ȝe kynde men of þis lond [7] cuþeþ ȝoure monhede.
" And awrekeþ ȝou of þis luþer men, þoru wam com þis wrechedhede;
" [8] And seþþe turne we oure hond vp oure oþer fon,
" And [9] delyuere þis lond of þe luþer men echon.
[10] þis folk myd god herte þis castel a sailede.
Ac for þe castel wes strong, here wille þo hem faylede.

[1] The Cristenmen *pro* ȝou *in Ar.* [2] To *pro* forte *in Ar.* [3] But God on his owene hede hath tournd his outrage. The Saxones whan hii vnderstode of his luther dede, *Ar.* [4] Thurgh gile & falshede. Ac of one thyng *Ar. Sed* Galfr. Mon. *plane ut Codex* Harleyanus. *Sic enim ille:* "*Nam ut nequitiam ipsius com-*
"*pererunt Saxones, ejecerunt*
"*illum ex regno, quod nemi-*
"*nem pigere debeat.* [5] On see *Ar.* [6] Alas! the harde stounde! *Ar.* [7] Kyeth your manhede *Ar.* [8] *Deinde vertamus arma in hostes imminentes, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [9] Delyuere we this lond of luther *Ar.* [10] The folk with good herte tho this castel gonne asaile. And for the castel was so strong, whan will dude hem faile, With queyn-
tise

Myd quoyntise heo casten fuyr, & barnde þat castel withinne,
And þe kyng Vortiger was to doust y barnd þer inne.
And þo myȝte he fynde soþ, þat Merlyn hym er seide,
þat [1] heo Costantyne's sones fuyr schulde fle & drede.
þo was Hengist sore adrad of kyng Aurely þer,
And nomeliche for þe noble los, [2] þat he herde of hym er.
For þer nas in non ende of France, ny in no lond þer a boute,
þat in joustes & [3] tornemens echo mon gan hym doute.
For þer nas so god knyȝt non nower a boute France,
þat in joustes scholde at sitte þe dynt of ys lance,
þat he [4] ne schulde a doun oþer ys hors oþer boþe anon,
Oþer þe lance schulde breke in peses mony on.
þer fore Hengist was a drad to mete with ys launce,
Ouer Homber he fley a non, to wyte hym from meschance;
And casteles and cytees a storede faste þere,
[5] And in Scotlond al so; for þilke londes were
A luþer recet euer a geyn Engelonde.
For eche þat wolde hider harm, þer myȝte at stonde.
[6] þo Aureli wiste, þat heo were y flowe to hurne,
He was glad, þat heo were a ferd, & þoȝte be hom sturne."

---

tise hii caste fure, and brende hit with gynne, And Vortiger alto douste brende ther with ynne *Ar.*

[1] Constantyne's sones fuyr he sholde fle *Ar.* [2] That men of hym bere *Ar.* [3] Tournementz me ne hadde of hym ȝret doute *Ar.* [4] *Nam si congressum fecisset, vel hostem ab equo prosterneret, vel hastam in frusta confringeret* Galfr. Mon. [5] Al toward Scotlond, ther his recettes were. For ther a luthere recett hath be euer to Engelonde. All that hiderward wolde harme, ther hii mowe astonde *Ar.* [6] *Cumque id Aurelio nuntiatum fuisset, audacior effectus, spem victoriæ recepit* Galfr. Mon. *At in Cod. Ar.* Tho kyng Aurelie

He ȝarkede ys ost, & siwede aftur hem faste Norþ,
And þo he sey þe contreis, as he passede forþ,
Destruyde & bare in eche half, gret deol he made þere,
And nameliche for chirches, þat y cast to gronde were.
[1] He bi het God almyȝty, ȝef he sende hym þo ouer hond,
To rere vp aȝen þe chirches a boute into al þat lond.
þo Hengist wiste, þat [2] heo come toward Scotlond,
[3] He ȝarkede ys ost faste, aȝeyn hem for to stonde.

ELDOL, erl of Gloucestre, as he wende in þis ferhede
Toward þe batail, to þe kyng þese wordes he seyde:
" Sire kyng, for al þe dayes, þat ich haue on erþe y go,
" O day me wolde þinke ynow to [4] libbe with oute mo,
" þat ich þe luþer Hengist in Batail myȝte mete,
" For on of vs schulde deye er we [5] þat batail lete.
" So [6] muche for ich habbe in myn herte, wan y þer on þenche,
" [7] þon come to make pays, of ys luþer wrenche,

---

lie hadde word, the Saxones were yflowe, Wel the more was his joye, the lasse was his howe.

[1] He made to God his avow, to haue the heigher honde, *Ar.* [2] He *Ar.* [3] He gan faste to greithi his oste, ayen hym forto stonde. Eldolf, erl of Gloucetre, that wende in companye Wiþ the kyng thuderward, gan to hym speke an hie: " Sire kyng, he seide, alle deies þat y haue go *Ar.* [4] Lyue *Ar.* [5] To *pro* þat *in Ar.* [6] *Reminiscor namque diei, qua convenimus quasi pacem habituri. Cumque & de concordia ageretur, prodidit omnes qui aderant, & cum cultris interfecit, præter me solum, qui reperto palo evasi. Succubuerunt eadem die* cccc. lxxx. *barones ac consules, qui omnes inermes advenerant* Galfr. Mon. [7] Whan we come to make pees, of his lither wrenche, That of Erles and Barons, that *Ar.*

" þat

" þat of oure erles and barnes, þat so noblemen were,
" Four hundred & four score [1] mid treson he slow þere,
" Of hem þat [2] were al on war, & with oute armour were also.
" Now God leue, þat þe wreche þer of by twene vs mow be do.
þe kyng Aurely ys felawes comforted wel to fyȝte,
And al ys hope in [3] Godesone dude & al ys myȝte.
As þe ost in eiþer syde to [4] þis batail drow,
Heo come & metten baldeliche mid god ernest y now.
Heo smyten harde & made mony a strong wonde.
Heo schedde blod and slowe in eyþer syde to gronde.
Aureli comfortede þe Cristenemen a boute,
And Hengist in his [5] half þe heþene menne's route.
Ac þe Cristene, þoru Gode's grace, hadde þe beter ende,
So þat toward [6] Corneborw þe heþene gonne wende,
[7] And þo Cristene aftur, & to gronde broȝte y nowe.
For al þat heo myȝte of take, heo nome oþer slowe.
þo Hengist y sey þe Cristene men hym siwe so faste,
And þat he moste nede turne aȝeyn, oþer deye atte laste,
He bi gan to ordeyne ys folk, & to batail aȝen drow,
[8] And in eyþer syde, as heo dude er, to gronde me slow,
þat þe cry of þe folk, þat me slow, þe oþere" broȝte in drede.
Atte laste þe heþene men bi gonne hem to sprede.

---

[1] With *Ar.* [2] Were an vnywar, and vnarmed also. God leue that hit mote be wreke by twixte vs two. The kyng Aurelie *Ar.* [3] Gode's sone *Ar.* [4] The *pro* this *in Ar.* [5] Half also the hethene of his route *Ar.* [6] Conesburgh *Ar.* [7] The Cristene siwede after faste, broughte to grounde y now *Ar.* [8] Yn aither syde, as hii dude er, muche folk me slough. The cry of folk þat was a slawe, the other *Ar.*

þe Cristene were þe boldere, [1] þe kyng faste sette
Forto comforte ys men, and slow al þat he mette.
Eldol, erl of Gloucester, al so in hys syde
[2] Arnde, and kepte her and þer, and slow a boute wyde.
And muche hys entente was [3] Hengist forto mete.
[4] Heo mẽtte hem atte laste, er heo þe batail lete.
Ow! Lord! þe dyntes stronge, þat" were bi twene hem þere,
[5] þat fuyr smot out of þat yre, lyȝtyng as yt were.
So strong knyȝtes boþe þei were, [6] & here herte gret was.
Gorlois, erl of Cornewail, [7] þer forþ com bicas.
As sone as Eldol hym seye, ys herte vpward drow:
Hengist by þe helme by neþe he hente faste ynowȝ,
And myd strengþe hym drow a doun, & lowde bi gan to grede,
" Cristenemen fiȝteþ now, of noþing ȝe ne drede.
" God me haþ my wille y ȝeue; for ich hym habbe nowþe,
" Hym þat made al þis wo bi Norþ & eke by Souþe.
" Cuþeþ now, þat ȝe ben men; for þe maistry al oure ys.
[8] þo Cristene men to grounde slow, þo [9] heo herde þis.
[10] Heo ne fynede neuer mo, ar þo oþer ware at gronde.
Some flowe to hulles and to wodes, þat heo fonde.
Ac Octa, Hengiste's sone, and ys power atte laste
[11] Of scapede to Euerwik, & strengþede þe toun faste.

---

[1] And the heþene faste of sette, And faste comfortide his men to sle alle that hii mette *Ar.* [2] Rood, & kept her and ther all a boute wide *Ar.* [3] With Hengis *Ar.* [4] So at last to gedere hii mette, and other batailles lete. Wonder stronge were the strokes, that *Ar.* [5] The fuir smot out of the ire, *Ar.* [6] And the herte so gret was *Ar.* [7] By side hem com by cas *Ar.* [8] The Cristene to grounde *Ar.* [9] Hii *Ar.* [10] And neuer wolde fyne, er the other were to grounde *Ar.* [11] Askapide in to Ebracwike, *Ar.*

Hengist

Hengist was o liue y nome, and y holde faste.
þo þis batail was y do, [1] þis Britones attelaste
Nome þe town of [2] Cornboru, and þer inne hadde reste
þre dayes and þre [3] nyȝt, forto bi þenche hore beste.
þe kyng lette [4] þe wyle burye þe dede men þere,
And do vnder lechecraft hem, þat y wonded were.
þe kyng [5] lette bryng þer aftur Hengist bi fore hym sone,
And aschede at erles & barnes, wat were mid hym to done?
[6] Eldal, þat bischop of Gloucestre [7] was,
And þe erl ys broþer Eldol, was þer bi cas
þo he sey Hengist stonde bi fore þe kyng þere,
He stod vp & seide þe verdyt by fore alle oþere at þer were.
" ȝef oþer," he seide, " þat þer beþ hym wol deliuere echone,
" To smale peces ich hym wolde to hakke al one.
" [8] For ich wolde þo prophete wyle Samuel vnderstonde,
" þat þo he hadde þe luþer kyng Agag vnderhonde,"

[1] These *Ar.* [2] Conesburgh *Ar.* [3] Nyght, as hem thought beste *Ar.* [4] Thulke while the deed bury there, And dude tho to lechecraft, that y wounded were *Ar.* [5] The kyng let Hengist afterward be brought to fore hym sone, And axede of his Barones, best what was of hym to done? *Ar.* [6] Eldad, *Ar.* [7] Tho was, And the ferthe brother Eldolf, ther was eke by cas. Eldad seide the verdit for alle that ther were, When he seygh Hengis stonde byfore the kyng there. " Theigh alle," he seide," that here beth him wolde deliuere echon, To smale pecis alto hacky ich hym wolde alone. For of prophete Samuel ich wolde vnderstonde, That Agag the luthur kyng hadde vnder hond, *Ar.* [8] *Insequerer namque prophetam Samuelem, qui cum Agag regem Amalech in potestatem retinuisset, concidit illum in frusta dicens, " Sicut fecisti " matres sine liberis, sic fa- " ciam hodie matrem tuam " sine liberis inter mulieres.* Galfr. Mon.

" He lette hym hewe to peses, and also he seide,
" As þou hast y mad mony [1] wyf deolful lyf to lede,
" And mony child with oute fader, & mony wif lordles,
" [2] Al so ich wole make to day þine sones faderles.
" Al so [3] doþ bi þis mon, þat so muche wo haþ y do,
" So mony child mad faderles, dyȝteþ hym al so.
þis word was for dom yholde, þe erl Eldol hym drow,
And ladde hym with oute þe town [4] mid god herte y now;
And smot of hys hed, þat so muche wo hadde y do.
þo was mony mon a wreke, and mony mon glad al so.
þis was euene fourty ȝer, þat he hadde þis dom,
Aftur þat [5] he mid his folc to þis lond com.
þo wende þe kyng myd god ost to Euerwik anon,
For to sle [6] Hengistesone, and ys men echon.
þo Octa hit onderstod, þat heo comyng were,
He sei wel, þat [7] power nas noȝt aȝeyn hem þere.
An [8] raketyne of yre in hys hond he nom,
And myd þe hexte of ys men [9] to þe kyng he com.
" Sire," he seide, " myne Godes al ouer come beþ,
" And þi [10] Lord ys God al one, as we to soþe seþ,

---

[1] A wif *Ar.* [2] So wole y make to day thi sone faderles *Ar.* [3] Do *Ar.* [4] With gret filte y now, *Ar.* [5] He ferst with his *Ar.* [6] Hengiste's sone, *Ar.* [7] His power was nought a yen so many there. A gret cheyne of iren *Ar.* [8] *Communicato ituque consilio, egressus est cum nobilioribus qui secum aderant, gestans catenam in manu, & sabulonem in capite, & sese regi in hæc verba præsentavit* Galfr. Mon. [9] A ye the kyng com *Ar.* [10] God is Lord al one, as we alle y seth, *Ar.*

" þat

" þat þus noble men to þyn wille bryngeþ in þis manere.
" [1] þer fore vs with [2] veteres vnderfong now here.
" [3] þat to eche torment, þat ȝe wole vs, ȝare we beþ in þis place,
" Bute þou wole of vs here pyte habbe and grace.
þe kyng hadde rewþe [4] of hem, & ys conseil hym gef þo,
Nom of hem sikernesse to ys þral euer mo"
And of eche þat with hym was, and in gret destresse,
Bi syde Scotlond hem ȝef a place, al in wildernesse,
To wone inne in þraldam vnder þe kyng euer mo.
þese, and mony oþere, þat y flowe were þo,
Y sei, þat þe kyng hadde such mercy hem do,
To hym heo wende as prisones, and [5] bedom mercy also.
þe kyng al inon maner hem ȝef [6] mercy and grace,
To wone al in [7] þralhede in þike wylde place,
[8] To wroþe hele al þis lond was he so mylde þo.
For þe schrewes dude to þis lond seþþe wel muche wo.
þo al þis was y do, þe kyng, ar he wende,
Let ordeyne in Euerwik þis lond for to amende,
And lette rere vp chirches in al þe lond a bowte,
And bischopes dude in heore power, þat [9] er were al withoute.

[1] *Accipe ergo nos & catenam istam, &, nisi misericordiam habueris, habe nos ligatos, & ad quodlibet supplicium voluntarie paratos* Galfr. Mon. [2] Thes feteres *Ar.* [3] To (*omisso* þat) which torment though wlt vs do, we beth redy in this place, But though wlt vs pyte do, or eny other grace *Ar.* [4] Of hym, as his consail yaf hym tho, And sikernysse nam of hym, to serue hym euere mo *Ar.* [5] Mercy bede also *Ar.* [6] Mylce *Ar.* [7] Thraldom *Ar.* [8] To wrotherhele to al this lond, that he mylde was tho. For they dude to al this lond suthe muche wo *Ar.* [9] Erst *Ar.*

Aftur fyftene dawes, þat [1] he hadde y ordeyned [2] þis,
To London [3] he wende, for to amende [4] þat þer was amys.
He let amende al þo town of howses þat were a downe,
[5] And in þe contrey chirches let rere, and in þe towne.
Gode lawes," þat were aleyd, newe he lette make.
[6] Londes, þat were [7] arst by nome, [8] þe ryȝt eyr he lette take.
Bute ys wille al clene was ys lond forto amende.
And aftur al þis to Wynchestre from Londone he wende,
For to amende þilke [9] syde, & so & so to Salusbury.
And so, for to amende more, to þe [10] downe of Ambresbury.
þo he com to þat place, þat þe heye men inne laye,
þat Hengist myd ys sexes let sle and by traye,
Of þe morþre he hadde deol, & bi gan to wepe sore,
He þoȝte in hys herte, how he myȝte þe place [11] worþi.
For þer lay so gode men, [12] yt was wel ydo,
þat, for to defende þat lond, y morþred were so.
Hys conseil he tok þo, how he myȝt make þere
Some werk, [13] in honowr of hem, þat euer in mynde were.
þe erchbischop of Walis seide ys auys,
" Sire," he seide, " ȝef þer ys any mon so wys,

---

[1] Hii *Ar.* [2] Al this *Ar.* [3] Hii *Ar.* [4] Thyngs that were amys. And let amendy al the toun *Ar.* [5] Churchen he rerde in contreye fram toun to toune. Olde lawes, *Ar.* [6] And londes, *Ar.* [7] Er *Ar.* [8] To the ryght heires take. His wille was al clenly this lond for to amende *Ar.* [9] Cite, and so to Salesbury *Ar.* [10] Toune *Ar.* [11] Worshipe more. For ther *Ar.* [12] Hym thought hit wel to do, By cause, in sense of the lond, they were amorthered so *Ar.* [13] That hii euere more after in mynde were *Ar.*

" [1] þat

" [1] þat beste red þe can rede, Merlyn þat ys.
For [2] þer nys in þi kyndam so wys mon y wys,
To segge soþ of þinges, þat to comene beþ.
[3] Ne of quoyntes for to rede, as we al day y seþ.
Merlyn was þo in Walis. he was sone of sorȝt
Myd messingeres, & y fonde, & to þe kyng y brorȝte.
The kyng made hym joye ynow, & [4] amon hem alle
Bed hym telle of som [5] þing, þat hym schulde bi falle.
" Sire kyng," quoþ Merlyn þo, " suche þinges y wys
" Ne beþ for to schewe norȝt, but wen gret nede ys.
" For [6] ȝef ich seide in bismare, oþer bute yt ned were,
" Sone from me [7] he" wolde wende þe Gost, þat doþ me lere.
[8] þe kyng, þo non oþer nas, bod hym som quoyntyse
Bi þenke aboute [9] þilke cors, þat so noble were and wyse.
" Sire kyng," quoþ Merlyn þo, " ȝef þou wolt here caste,
" In [10] þe" honour of hem, a werk that euer schal y laste,
" To þe [11] hul of Kylar send in to Yrlond Kylar.
" [12] Aftur þe noble stones, þat þer habbet lenge y stonde,
" þat was þe treche of geandes, for a quoynte werk þer ys
" Of stones al wyþ art y mad, in þe world such non ys.

[1] That best red can ther of rede, Merlyn hit is *Ar.* [2] *Quippe non existimo, alterum in regno tuo esse, cui sit clarius ingenium, sive in futuris dicendis, sive in operationibus machinandis* Galfr. Mon. [3] Ne of queynte thynges for to rede, *Ar.* [4] Among *Ar.* [5] Thinges, *Ar.* [6] *Nam si ea in derisionem sive vanitatem proferrem, taceret spiritus, qui me docet, &, cum opus superveniret, recederet* Galfr. Mon. [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] The kyng, tho other [*f.* tho non other] myghte be, bad hym *Ar.* [9] Thulke bodies, *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] Hille of Kildar *Ar.* [12] After stones noble and goode, that longe han ther stonde, That was carole of Geantz, for queynte werk hit is *Ar.*

" [1] Ne þer nys noþing, þat me scholde [2] myd strengþe a doun caste.
" Stode heo here, as heo doþ þere, [3] euer a wolde laste.
þe kyng [4] somdel to lyghe, þo he herde þis tale.
" [5] How myȝte," he seyde, " suche stones, so grete & so fale,
" [6] Be y broȝt of so fer lond? & ȝet mest of were,
" Me wolde wene, þat in þis lond no ston to worche nere.
" [7] Sire kyng," quoþ Merlyn, " ne make noȝt an ydel such lyghyng.
" For yt nys an ydel noȝt, þat ich telle þis tyþing.
" For in þe farreste stude of Affric geandes while fette
" þike stones for medycine, & in Yrlond hem sette,
" [8] While heo woneden in Yrlond, to make here baþes þere,
" þer vnder forto baþi, wen þei syk were.
" For [9] heo wolde þe stones wasch, & þer inne baþe y wis.
" [10] For ys no ston þer among, þat of gret vertu nys.

---

[1] Ne ther is nothing, that hem sholde with strength a doun caste *Ar.* [2] *Grandes sunt lapides, nec est aliquis cujus virtuti cedant. Qui si eo modo, quo ibi positi sunt, circa plateam locabuntur, stabunt in æternum* Galfr. Mon. [3] Euere hii wolde y laste *Ar.* [4] By gan somdel to laugh *Ar.* [5] Who *Ar.* [6] Bryng fro so ferre lond? And the meste were, that men wolde wene in þis *Ar.* " [7] Sire," quath Merlyn, " ne " taketh nought an ydel such " lyghynge. For hitt is an ydel nought, that y telle of this thynge *Ar. Ad hæc Merlinus:* " *Ne moveas rex va-* " *num risum, quia hæc absque* " *vanitate profero* Galfr. Mon. [8] The while hii wonede in Irlonde, to make hem bathes there, *Ar.* [9] *Lavabant namque lapides, & infra balnea diffundebant, unde egroti curabantur. Miscebant etiam cum herbarum confectionibus, unde vulnerati sanabantur. Non est ibi lapis, qui medicamento careat* Galfr. Mon. [10] For ther is *Ar.*

þe

þe kyng and ys conseil [1] radde þo stones forte fette,
[2] And with gret power of batail, ȝef any mon hem lette.
Uter, (þe kynge's broþer,) þat Ambrose hette al so,
In anoþer maner name, y chose was þer to,
And fiftene þousant men, þis dede forto do,
And Merlyn, for his [3] quoyntise," þider wente al so.
[4] Gynemon was þilke kyng of Irlonde.
þo me tolde hym, þat þis Britones y come were to ys londe,
Aȝen hem he wente anon myd [5] god power ynowȝ.
þo me told him here ernde, he astynte and lowȝ.
" No wonder," he seyd, [6] þaw Breteyne al day go to gronde,
" [7] Wan heo, þat þer inne beþ, suche foles beþ yfonde.
" Wo haþ y herd such folye, wer þer be in non ende
" Stones, þer þat aȝtes be heo hyder sende?
" Armeþ ȝow [8] faste now, and wyteþ ȝowre lond.
" For [9] heo schul not habbe here no ston, wyle ich may wolde myn hond.
Uter and ys companye redi aȝeyn hem were,
[10] And a strong batail smyte, & þe Yrische to driue þere,
And wende forþ myd strengþe, þo nomon hem no lette,
And come to Kylar, þo stones forto fette.

---

[1] Radde tho the stones *Ar.* [2] And that with gret power of men, yf eny wolde lette *Ar.* [3] Queynte witt, *Ar.* [4] Gwyneman, that was thulke tyme kyng *Ar.* [5] Gret *pro* god *in Ar.* [6] Theigh Brutons *Ar.* [7] The moste foles of the worlde ofte hii beth y founde. Who saw such a folye in to the worlde's eynde. Stones out of Irlond to Brutaȳn seynde? *Ar.* [8] Sone y now *Ar.* [9] Hii ne shul haue the leste ston, the while ic welde myn hond *Ar.* [10] So that the Irissh men hii ouercome there, And wente forth with strengthe, that noman hem ne lette, To the hulle of Kildar the stones forto fette *Ar.*

þo heo sey [1] þo stones, heo wondred y now
Of þe werk, þat was so gret, & [2] ho yt þider drow.
" ȝe ȝonge men," quoþ Merlyn, " cuþeþ now ȝoure myȝte,
" How ȝe mow [3] þis stones best to þe [4] schip dyȝte.
Heo stode, & bi þoȝte hem best, & cables fette ynowe,
And laddres, and leueres, & faste schoue & drowe.
Ac heo ne myȝte come for noþyng to ende [5] myd here wille.
Merlyn [6] say þis, and low, and bad hem stonde stille.
He sette hys gynnes, as he wolde, & [7] ys quoyntise dude stille,
And þe folk myd þo stones þo dude al here wille,
And lette hem to schippes brynge, & so in to þis londe,
Ac þer was som enchantery þer to, ich vnderstonde.
To þe [8] downe of Ambres bury [9] þe stones y broȝt were,
A ȝeyn þe fest of [10] Wytson tyde, as Merlyn gan lere.
Four hondred ȝer & four score & aboute þe tenþe ȝer,
Aftur [11] þat gon on erþe com, y set þei were þere.
Alle þe hey men of [12] þo lond þe kyng lette of sende,
Erles and barones and knyȝtes [13] in eche ende,
Bischopes and abbotes and [14] oþere þat þere were,
þat þe fest of Wytsontyde myd hem were þere."

---

[1] þis *pro* þo *in Ar.* [2] Who *Ar.* [3] Thes *Ar.* [4] Shippys *Ar.* [5] Of hure wille *Ar.* [6] Sey al this, *Ar.* [7] His queyntise caste. The folke of the stones tho hadde hure wille an haste, And hem to shippe gonne bryng, and so in to this londe, Ac nought with out enchauntemente, as y vnderstonde *Ar.* [8] Dounes *Ar.* [9] Thes stones *Ar.* [10] Wittsonday, as Merlyn gan hem lere *Ar.* [11] *Lege, cum Ar.* that God on erthe come *&c.* [12] The *Ar.* [13] By euery ende *Ar.* [14] Othur soth y say, That sholde come to the kyngus fest a Wittsoneday *Ar.*

þe

þe kyng at Wytsonday, þo heo come alle to ys heste,
Sette þe crowne on ys heued, and huld [1] noble feste.
[2] And alle þe foure dayes þe fest [3] he huld there.
[4] Bischopes also, þat delyuered were,
In honour of þilke stude, þere he [5] ȝef ys þo,
As of [6] Euerwyk, & of Walis, & also of oþere mo.
Merlyn with ys chauntement, & myd ys quoyntyse, þer
Sette vp þe stones ryȝt so, as heo stode in Yrlond er.
Þus was Stonehenge þus [7] y mad, þat men al day seþ,
In honour of þe noble men, þat þer y buried beþ.

[8] PASCENCE, Vortigere's sone, ys fader for barnd was,
Fley into Germanye [9] myd wel hasty pas.
Þere he gaderede folc of Saxones y nowe,
For tó a wreke hym of hem, þat ys fader slowe.
In þe Norþ ende of þis lond heo by gonne ariue,
And faste slowe and [10] barnde, and robbode bi lyue.
Þat word [11] to owre kyng com, so þat he wende
Myd ys power among hem, & heore prude schende.
Pascence and ys men, [12] þo ascapede o lyue,
To schippes flowe faste [13] aȝen, ech whyle hem þoȝte fyue."

[1] A noble *Ar.* [2] And fully alle *Ar.* [3] Held he there. Bysshopryches, that he held, delyuered there were *Ar.* [4] *Interea honores, qui possessoribus carebant, domesticis suis largitur, ut eis obsequii sui laborem remuneraret* Galfr. Mon. [5] Yaf hem tho, [6] Walis, & Ebracwick, and othur many mo *Ar.* [7] Furst y made, that we al day seith, *Ar.* [8] Passent, Vortigeris sone, tho his fader forbrend was, *Ar.* [9] With full hasty *Ar.* [10] Brende, and robbede swythe blyue *Ar.* [11] To kyng Aurelye come, *Ar.* [12] That *Ar.* [13] A ye, hying swyth blyue *Ar.*

A boute

A boute heo wende by þe se, so þat to Yrlond heo come.
Gyneman kyng of Yrlond and heo gret conseil nome.
And þis lond forte schende alle heo swere an oþ.
For Gyneman was for þe Stonhenge hiderward ȝet wroþ.
So þat þe Yrische and heo myd gret power y wys
Come toward þis lond, and aryuede in Walis.
In þe town of Sent Dauid heo by leuede and aboute,
And forto asaile þis lond greyþed here route.
Kyng Aureli at Wynchestre to gret siknesse drow,
Gyneman and Pascente wer glad þer of y now.
A quoynte maistre of þe Saxones ([1] Eope was ys name)
To Pascence wende [2] anon, þat God ȝeue hym schame.
"[3] Wat woldest," he seyde, "þilke mon to ys mede ȝeue fawe,
"þat þe kyng Aurely broȝte of lyf dawe?
"ȝef ich myȝte," quoþ Pascence, "such mon fynde on,
"A þousant pownd of seluer ich wolde hym ȝeue anon,
"And make hym euer vnder me mayster of al my londe,
"And þat ich hym wolde myd trewþe siker faste on honde.
þis forward was faste y mad, now couþe þis luþer man
[4] Langage of þis lond, as" he were Cristeneman,
[5] And þe maner of Bruytones, as he hadde among [6] hem y go,
And þe art of lechecraft, al to muche þo.
His berd he lette schere first, [7] and a brod crowne al so,
And seþþe a monke's abyt on hym he lette do.

---

[1] Coppa *Ar.* [2] A non, God yif hym moch shame *Ar.* [3] "What wolt thou," he sayne, "yiue the to his mede fawe, "that wolde kyng Aurelie "brynge of lyff dawe? *Ar.* [4] The langage of Brutones, as *Ar.* [5] And all the manere of hem, *Ar.* [6] Hem go, *Ar.* [7] And made hym a croune also, *Ar.*

And

And nom with hym spicery, [1] þat to fysik drow,
And wende hym to Wynchestre quoyntoliche y now,
And seyde [2] þe kynge's, þat he wolde hym to hele brynge.
[3] þat folk was sone glad y now for þe [4] tyþinge.
So wysliche he made yt & so wel, þat me leuede hym faste.
þe kyng in hys [5] syde ys herte al vp hym caste.
He ȝef hym a luþer drench, & þo he hadde dronke yt so,
He bed hym lygge & slepe wel, þat yt myȝte do bet hym do.
þe kyng hopede wel [6] to hym, and lette hym helie faste,
And stille was with oute noyse, & lay & slepte ys laste.
For þe poyson in ys slep þe veynes so [7] þorp souȝte,
[8] þat it of eode al þat body, & to deþe sone hym broȝte.
þe [9] wyle he slep, [10] þe traytour þo wey aweyward nom
Stilleliche bi halues, þat me nuste wher he bi com.
Riȝt aboute þe kynge's deþ, in þe firmament an hey
A sterre, gret and fayr ynow, and swyþe cler, me sey.
[11] O cler leom, with oute mo, þer stod fram hym wel pur,
Y formed as a dragon, as red as þe fuyr.
Out of þe dragone's mouþ twei leomes þer stode þere;
[12] Grettor tylde euene Est ouer Fraunce, as yt were,

---

[1] And *pro* that *in Ar.* [2] The kyng (that longe hadde be sike) he wolde to hele brynge *Ar.* *Urbem postremo ingressus, obtulit obsequium suum clientibus regis, & gratiam in oculis eorum invenit. Nihil enim desiderabilius expectabant, quam medicum* Galfr. Mon. [3] The folk *Ar.* [4] Tydynge *Ar.* [5] Side also, his herte *Ar.* [6] On hym, *Ar.* [7] Thurgh *Ar.* [8] That all the body hit ouerȳede, & sone to deth hym broughte *Ar.* [9] *Interea nefandus proditor ille, inter unum & alium elapsus, in curia nusquam comparuit* Galfr. Mon. [10] This traytour his wey a weyward nome Al by halues stillelych, me nuste *Ar.* [11] A cler leome fro hure com, bryght so gold pure, *Ar.* [12] The gryttere *Ar.*

þe oþer hadde sene branches, alle cler ynowe,
And toward þe Yrische see Westward euene [1] þei'l drowe.
þo þis sterre was y sey, men [2] wondrede y now.
Uter, þe kynge's broþer, myd ys ost þo drow
To Walis to þis strange men, to a sayle hem & fyȝte.
A drad he was [3] sore y now of þis wonder syȝte.
[4] Merlyn he clepude & aschede anon, how he myȝte þer of be?
Merlyn wep a non so faste, þat deol yt was to se.
" Alas!" he seyde, " þe deolful harm, þat ys endeles!
" Alas! [5] þat folk of Breyteyne, þat now ys helples!
" Ded [6] he'l ys þe noble kyng Aurcli þi broþer.
" Ac þe sterre, þat me yseyþ, bi toþoneþ a noþer.
" Hye now þou noble duc, þat þe batail were y smyte.
" For kyng þou worst of Breteyne, & þe [7] maistry þou schalt gete.
" For þe sterre bi tokoneþ þe, and þe fur dragon al so.
" þe leom, [8] þat out of ys mouþ ouer France ys y do,
" þat by tokeneþ a chyld, þat þou schalt bi gete ywys,
" þat schal wynne France & oþer londes, in þe world such mon nys.
" þe leome, þat tylde Westward, a doȝter þat ys,
" [9] þat þou schalt bi gete, and schal habbe sones ywys.

---

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] Wondrede ther on y nowe *Ar.* [3] Swythe sore of *Ar.* [4] Of Merlyn he axede anon, hough hitt myght be *Ar.* [5] The folk *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] Maistry biyite. The bryght sterre bytokneth the, and the fury *Ar.* [8] That cometh out of his mouth, *Ar.* [9] Thugh shalt biyite of thy body, that shal haue sones y wis, That kynges of Brutaýne shul here aftur bé, Of sorwe and of contak thenne me shal y se *Ar.*

" þat

" þat scal, eche aftur oþer, kyng of Breteyne be,
" Of some oþer al in contek, and þis me schal y se.
þe noble mon, of wam he spek, þat he [1] wolde be gete,
þat was þe kyng Arthure, as ȝe schul ywyte.
[2] Uter let al þis be (for he ne leuede yt not anon)
And wende toward Sent Dauid, to mete with ys fon.
þe oþer were of hem y war, & [3] ȝarkede hem in here syde,
And [4] lette arme here ost wel, batail forto abyde. Bellum.
Heo come & smyte þis bataile, & faste slowe to gronde,
In eyþer syde muche folk in a lute stonde,
Knyȝtes and oþer folk, atte laste oure Lord þoȝte
On ys Cristene folk, and þe [5] maystry hem broȝte.
For þer was Gynemon y slawe, (þe kyng of Yrlonde)
And Pascence (Vortigere's sone) þat so gret power hade in honde,
And muche of here folk with hem, so þat fowe [6] atte nende
Alyue þer of scapede, þat to schip myȝte wende.
And so [7] heo schulde lerne, with Cristenemen to fyȝte.
For our lord wole among hys men euer cuþe ys myȝte.
To Uter of ys broþer deþ þer com werd atte laste.
Aftur þis batayl he wende to Wynchestre faste.

---

[1] Sholde biÿite, *Ar.* [2] Uther, when he hadde hurd al this, forth he wende anon Toward Seynt Dauidis, to mete with his fon *Ar.* *At Uther (in dubio tamen existens, an verum protulisset Merlinus) in hostes, ut cæperat, progreditur. Advenerat namque prope Meneviam, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [3] Greithede hem *Ar.* [4] Lete hem army swithe well, the bataille to a byde *Ar.* [5] Victory *Ar.* [6] Atten ende *Ar.* [7] Hy myghte lerny, *Ar.*

[1] Arst

[1] Arst was þe kyng y buryed, er he [2] myȝte" come þere,
Withinne þe place of þe Stonheng, þat he [3] lette rere.
For he lette þe stude halwe, for þe gode cors þat þer were,
And bischopes and worthi men ys body þider bere."

UTER, aftur ys [4] broþer deþ, þe crowne to hym nom,
And þoru þe heye men [5] of þis lond fong þis kyndom.
Of þe dragon [6] he vnderstod, þat y seye was on heye.
And of þat Merlyn hadde [7] y seid, of þe sigte þat me seye.
To riche dragones of gold he lette [8] make anon,
[9] And at þe mynstre of Wynchestre he offerede þat on.
[10] þat oþer he lette bi fore hym bere in batail wan he was.
Me clepede hym Uterpendragon þer aftur for þis cas,
þat [11] was, Uter dragone's heued, [12] &" þat was to signifie,
þat Merlyn hym clepude dragon in hys prophecie,
[13] Otte, (Hengiste sone) þat luþer Saxone,
And [14] Eose ys cosyn, heo þoȝte of treson.
þe oþ, þat to kyng Auryli heo swere by fore,
Hem þoȝte, þo he was ded, þat yt was al for lore.

---

[1] Ac er was the kyng *Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] Let furst rere. He hadde lete halwy the place, for coorses that ther were, By therchebisshopp Seynt Dobricc, and other that were there *Ar.* [4] Brother is deth, *Ar.* [5] Of the lond a veng the kyngdom *Ar.* [6] He gan by thenche, that was y seye an hegh *Ar.* [7] Y seid, thurȝh sight that he segh. Two ryche *Ar.* [8] Makie *Ar.* [9] Atte hegh mynstre *Ar.* [10] The othur *Ar.* [11] Is, *Ar.* [12] *Deest Ar.* [13] Octa (Hengiste's sone) the luthere *Ar.* [14] Osa his brother also bythoughte hem on treson *Ar.*

Heo,

Heo þozte, to do þis lond schame, to Germanye heo sende
[1] y lome,"
(þat ys lond in Alymaine, [2] from wam heo alle come)
Aftur more folk of here kynde, so þat þer come ynowe.
At Scotlond heo by gonne, and faste barnde and slowe,
And so [3] forþ toward Euerwyk þe contre [4] a doun þei caste,
And bi segede Euerwik, þo heo þider come, faste.
þe kyng Uter herde" here of, þiderward faste he drowþ.
To gedere heo come, and smyte a batail strong y now. Bellum.
Heo [5] smyten & slowe in eyther syde, þat rewþe yt was to se.
Atte laste [6] þis Saxones by gonne forto fle,
And [7] þis Britones aftur, and slowe to gronde faste;
So þat some of scapode vp monteynes atte laste,
And some in to townes, and yt drow to nyzt,
So þat [8] heo ne myzt noþer longor y se to fyzte.
And þe Britones hem wyþ drow, & þe Saxones hem reste.
Kyng Uter nom ys conseil, [9] wat red were beste.
Gorloys, erl of Cornewayl, (þat wysest was y holde,
And old, and mest hadde y seye) ys red first he tolde.
" We mote," he seyde, " be hardy, & stalworþe, & wyse,
" zef we wol habbe oure lyf, and holde oure franchise.
" Wexing euer beþ oure fon bi water and by londe,
" þat, zef we abydeth longe, we schal hem not at stonde.

---

[1] Sone, *Ar.* [2] Of wham hii furst come) *Ar.* [3] Euer to ward *Ar.* [4] Doun caste, And whan hii come to Ebracwyk by segede the toun faste. Whan kyng Uther hurde *Ar.* [5] Foughte and *Ar.* [6] The Saxones *Ar.* [7] The Brutones *Ar.* [8] Hii ne myght y se no lengor forto fight *Ar.* [9] What hym were do beste *Ar.*

" Now [1] he beþ al on ywar, heo wolleþ y swike by daye,
" þer fore [2] y ne rede in no maner þis nede lengor delaye.
" We schul hem habbe now for noȝt, y ne rede no lengor abyde,
" For he beþ naked & on ywar, [3] & to sprad wyde.
þis consel was wel yherd, heo hulde þer to echon:
Al by nyȝte he wende forþ, and soȝte out here fon.
Some heo fonde ligge [4] slepe, heo demayde hem anon.
Capcio Octæ. [5] Some hem wolde arme, ac wyle nadde he non.
So þat þeo slow þere a þousant and mo,
And nome [6] Octe and Eose, þat wroȝte al [7] þe wo,
And dude hem at London in pryson, & þat was rewþe sore
þat heo nadde hem y slawe, for sorw þei dude ȝet more.

[8] AT þe fest of Estre þo kyng sende ys sonde,
þat heo comen alle to London þe hey men of þis londe,
And þe [9] leuedys al so [10] god," to ys noble fest wyde,
For he [11] schulde crowne bere, for þe hye tyde.
Alle þe noble men of þis lond to þe noble fest come,
And heore wyues & heore doȝtren with hem mony nome.
þis fest was noble ynow, and [12] nobliche y do;
For mony was þe faire ledy, þat y come was þerto.

[1] Hii beth an vnywar, hii wole y swyke *Ar.* [2] Y rede in no wise this thyng lengour *Ar.* [3] And y sprad a wyde *Ar.* [4] A slepe, *Ar.* [5] And some wolde haue armede hem, but tyme hadde the non *Ar.* [6] Octa and Osa, *Ar.* [7] This wo, *Ar.* [8] At Ester the kyng made a feste, & sende a boute his sonde, That to *London* sholde come alle the *hegh men* of the londe, *Ar.* [9] *Ladyes* *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] *Wolde* *Ar.* [12] Nobelly *Ar.*

Ygerne,

Ygerne, Gorloys wyf, was fairest of echon,
þat was contasse of Cornewail, [1] for" so fair nas þer non.
þe kyng by huld hire faste y now, & ys herte on hire caste,
And þozte, þay heo were [2] wyf, to do folye atte laste.
He made [3] hire semblant fair y now, to non oþer so gret.
þe erl [4] nas not þer with y payed, þo he yt vnder zet.
Aftur mete he nom ys wyf myd [5] stordy med y now,
And, with oute leue of þe kyng, to ys contrei drow.
þe kyng sende to hym þo, to by leue al nyzt,
For he moste of gret consel habbe som insyzt.
[6] þat was for nozt. Nolde he nozt þe kyng sende zet ys sonde.
þat he by leuede at [7] ys" parlemente, for nede of þe londe.
[8] þo kyng was, þo he nolde nozt, anguyssous & wroþ.
For [9] despyte he wolde [10] a wreke be he swor ys oþ,
Bute he come to amendement. Ys power atte laste
He zarkede, and wende forþ to Cornewail faste.
Gorloys ys casteles a store al a boute.
In a strong castel he dude ys wyf, for of hire was al ys doute.

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] A wif, *Ar.* [3] To hure semblant fair, to non *Ar.* [4] Was nought a paid ther with, tho he *Ar.* [5] Stourdy mod *Ar.* [6] But al was nought. The kyng eftsone sende a yen his sonde *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] The kyng was, tho he wolde nought, *Ar.* [9] That despit *Ar.* [10] Be a wreke, & that he swor his oth. And but he wolde do his wille, he wolde hym a gaste. So that in to Cornewaille he greithed his ost faste. In a castel of that cost, me cluped Tyntagel, The erl let putte his wif that stored was ful wel. And in anothur hym self he was; for he wolde nought, Yf cas come hit were wonne, bothe to dethe be brought *Ar.*

In anoþer hym self he was, for he nolde noȝt,
ȝef cas come, þat heo were boþe to deþe y broȝt."
þe castel, þat þe erl inne was, þe kyng by segede faste,
For [1] he myȝte ys gynnes for schame to þe oþer caste.
[2] þe he was þer sene nyȝt, and [3] he" spedde noȝt,
Igerne þe contesse so muche was in ys þoȝt,
[4] þat he nuste non oþer wyt, ne he ne myȝte for schame
Telle yt bute a pryue knyȝt, Ulfyn was ys name,
þat he truste mest to. And þo þe knyȝt herde þis,
" Syre," he seide, " [5] y ne can wyte, wat red here of ys.
" For þe castel ys so strong, þat þe lady ys inne,
" [6] For ich wene al þe lond ne schulde yt myd strengþe wynne.
" For þe se geþ al aboute, [7] bute entre on þer nys,
" And þat ys vp [8] on harde roches, & so narw wei it ys,
" þat þer may go bote on & on, þat þre men with inne
" Myȝte sle al þe lond, er heo come þer inne.
" And noȝt for þan, ȝef Merlyn at þi conseil were,
" ȝef [9] any myȝte, he couþe þe best red þe lere.
Merlyn was [10] sone of send, yseid yt was hym [11] sone,
þat he schuldè þe beste red segge, wat were to done.
Merlyn was sory ynow for þe kynge's folye,
And naþeles, " Sire kyng," he seide, " [12] here mot to maistrie.

---

[1] *F.* he ne myghte. *Et tamen particula negativa deest etiam in Ar.* [2] Tho *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] That almost he loste his witt, ac yut he ne dorste for shame Telle hyt but to a pryue *Ar.* [5] Y can no red, what vs to don is *Ar.* [6] That y wene al this lond hym ne sholde a wynne *Ar.* [7] But on entre ther is, *Ar.* [8] An harde roche, & so narw ywis, *Ar.* [9] Eny man couth or myghte, he wolde the best lere *Ar.* [10] Fulsone *Ar.* [11] Fulsone, *Ar.* [12] Her to by houeth maistrie *Ar.*

" þe

" þe erl haþ twey men hym next, [1] Bryȝthoel & Jordan.
" Ich wol [2] make þi self, ȝef þou wolt, þoru art þat y can,
" [3] Habbe al þo fourme of þe erl, as þou were ryȝt he,
" And Olfyn as Jordan, and as Brithoel me.
þis art was al [4] clene y do, þat al [5] changet he were.
Heo þre in þe oþeres forme, [6] þe selue at yt were.
Aȝeyn euen [7] he wende forþ, [8] nuste nomon þat cas.
To þe castel heo come ryȝt as yt euene was.
þe porter y se ys lord come, & [9] ys meste priuey twei,
With god herte he lette ys lord in, & ys men beye."
þe contas was glad y now, þo hire lord to hire com,
And eyþer oþer in here armes myd gret joye nom.
þo heo to bedde com, þat so longe a two were,
With hem was so gret delyt, þat bitwene hem þere
Bi gete was þe beste body, þat euer was in þis londe,
Kyng Arthure þe noble mon, þat euer worþ vnderstonde.
þo þe kynge's men nuste amorwe, wer he was bi come,
Heo ferde as wodemen, and wende he were ynome.
[10] Heo a saileden þe castel, as yt schulde adoun a non.
Heo, þat with inne were, [11] ȝarkede hem echon, Occisio Gorlois.
And smyte out [12] in a fole wille, & foȝte myd here fon:
So þat þe erl was y slawe, & of ys men mony on,

---

[1] Bryghtol *Ar.* *Britahel Galfr. Mon.* [2] The make, if thuw wolt, *Ar.* [3] Haue the fourme *Ar.* [4] Sone *Ar.* [5] Changed hii *Ar.* [6] Hem self as hit were *Ar.* [7] Hii *Ar.* [8] Ne wiste no man this cas *Ar.* [9] His moste priuees beye, Als hym thought, and let hem yn, & his seriauntz tweye *Ar.* [10] They assailede the castel egrely, as he shold doun anon *Ar.* [11] Greithed *Ar.* [12] With a full *Ar.*

And þe castel was y nome, & þe folk to sprad þere,
ȝet, þo þei hadde al ydo, heo ne fonde not þe kyng þere.
þe [1] tyþing to þe [2] compas sone was [3] y nome,
þat hire lord was y slawe, and þe castel y nome.
Ac [4] þo þe messinger [5] hym sey þe erl, as hym þoȝte,
þat he hadde so foule [6] ylow, ful sore hym of þoȝte.
þe contasse made some del deol, [7] for no soþnesse heo nuste.
þe kyng, [8] for to glade here, bi clupte hire and custe.
" Dame," he seide, " [9] no sixt þou wel, þat les yt ys al þis?
" Ne wost þou wel ich am olyue? Ich wole þe segge how it ys.
" Out of þe castel [10] stilleliche ych wende al in priuete,
" þat none of myne men yt [11] nuste, for to speke with þe.
" And þo heo myste me to day, and nuste wer ich was,
" [12] Heo ferden riȝt as gydie men, myd wam no red nas,
" And foȝte with þe folk [13] with oute, & habbeþ in þis manere
" [14] Y lore þe castel & hem selue, ac wel þou wost y am here.

[1] Tydyng *Ar.* [2] *L.* contas. *Nam* countesse *in Ar.* [3] *Rectius,* y come, *cum Ar.* [4] *Sed cum regem in specie consulis juxta eam residere inspexissent* [*nuncii,*] *erubescentes admirabantur ipsum, quem in obsidione interfectum deseruerant, ita incolumem prævenisse* Galfr. Mon. [5] Y seigh the Erl right, as hym thought, *Ar.* [6] Y lowe, sore hit hym of thought, *Ar.* [7] But yut forsothe heo nuste *Ar.* [8] Thenne, to glady hure, clupte hure ofte & kuste *Ar.* [9] Ne seist though well, that fals hit is al this? Ne seist though well y am a lyue? Y woll telle hough hit is *Ar.* *Potest tamen* ne *idem quod* now *hîc significare, quo sensu plena distinctione, non interrogandi nota, est utendum, id quod dicendum etiam est de* no *in textu, quod idem atque* now *valere queat.* [10] Priuely *Ar.* [11] Wiste, to speke a word with the. And whanne hii faillede of me to day. *Ar.* [12] Hii ferde y wot as gidy men, with wham no red nas, *Ar.* [13] Ther oute, and haueth *Ar.* [14] I lost the castel & hem self, but y am with the here *Ar.*

" Ac

" Ac for my castel, þat ys ylore, sory ich am y now,
" And for myn men, þat þe kyng and ys power sloȝ.
" Ac [1] my power is now to lute, þer fore y drede sore,
" Leste þe kyng [2] vs nyme here, & sorwe þat we were more.
" þer fore ich wole, how so yt be, wende aȝen þe kynge,
" And make [3] my pays with hym, ar he vs to schame [4] vs brynge.
Forþ he wende, & het ys men, [5] þat ȝef þe kyng come,
þat þei schulde hym þe castel ȝelde, ar he with strengþe it nome.
þo he come toward ys men, ys owne forme he nom,
And leuede þe erle's fourme, [6] & þe kyng Uter by com.
Sore hym of þoȝte þe erle's deþ, ac in oþer half he fonde,
Joye in hys herte, for þe contasse of spoushed was vnbonde.
þo he hadde þat he wolde, and paysed with ys fon,
To þe contasse he wende aȝen, me let hym in a non.
Wat halt it to telle longe? bute heo were seþþe at on,
In gret loue longe y now, wan yt nolde oþer gon;
And hadde to gedere þis noble sone, þat in þo world ys pere nas,
þe kyng Arture, and a doȝter, Anne hire name was.

---

[1] Oure power ys now lyte, *Ar.* [2] Her ynne vs nyme, that were sorwe more *Ar.* [3] Ferst my pees with hym, *Ar.* [4] *Recte omittit Ar.* [5] Yf that the *Ar.* [6] And kyng a ye by cam *Ar.*

[1] OCTE and Eose, þis luþer Saxones twey,
In prison were at London, as ich ȝou tolde, beye.
Myd here wardeynes þei spekon, so þat þei boþ y wys
Flowe into [2] Germaine, þat in Alimayne ys,
And grete power gaderede of Saxones þer.
ȝet it hadde beter [3] y bo, þat me hadde y slawe hem er.
In Scotlond heo ariuede, and [4] werreden faste,
And barnde & slow to gronde, & townes a doun caste.
þe kyng lay þo sore syk, heo were glad for þat cas.
An erl þer was of Leycetre, Lot ys name was,
þat [5] strong knyȝt was & god, þe kyng hym by tok ys myȝt,
And þe power of þis lond, [6] with þe heþe men to fyȝte.
Also ys doȝter Anne he ȝif hym to [7] hys" wyue.
þis noble [8] erl with þe Britones aȝeyn ys fon wente biliue,
And faȝt, and slow [9] faste, and þe heþene [10] al so god.
Ac naþeles þe heþene folk fastor a ȝen stod.
For þe Brutones nolde for prude aftur þe erl do.
For he nas not kyng, & þer fore þe worse hem [11] com to.
þo þe tiþing com to þe kyng, þat [12] heo so febliche spedde,
He was so sori and so wroþ, þat he ney awedde.

---

[1] Octa and Osa, the luthere Saxones tweye, *Ar.* [2] Germanie *Ar.* [3] Y be, they hadde be queld ere *Ar.* [4] Werrede swithe faste, *Ar.* [5] Staleworth man was & good, the kyng toke hym his myght, *Ar.* [6] With hethene men *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] Erl a yenst the Saxones wende forth as blyue, *Ar.* [9] Staleworthly, and *Ar.* [10] Also good. For the hethene men strengore euer with stood. The Brutones eke for pruyte nought for the Erl do *Ar.* [11] Cam to *Ar.* [12] Hii *Ar.*

Bi fore hym he lette brynge ys men, & bi gan hem faste blame,
þat heo for heore prude brozte þis lond to schame.
þider he seide he wolde hym self, þaz he ne myzte on fote, go,
zef any horsbere wolde hym bere, to wreke hym of ys fo.
Myd god wille he wende forþ in an horse bere,
[1] And ys folc forþ with hym, þat þe balder for hym were.
þe Saxones were so prowde, þat þe kyng com so,
þat [2] vnneþe heo wolde" armes on hem do.
For heo seide, it were schame, þat we y armed were.
[3] Nys he more þan half ded y lad in a bere?
þe kyng [4] sette vp ys herte hye, & ordeyned ys men faste.
þe Saxones [5] he asailede, and to gronde caste.
So þat sone dayes hem of [6] þozte here prute,
þat heo of þe noble mon þe kyng tolde so [7] lute.
For þer was [8] Otte y slawe, and ys cosyn Oese al so, Occisio Octæ.
And so yt hadde be beter, þat me hadde er y do.
þe Saxones, þat myzte fle, bi gonne to fle faste.
þus [9] þe same dede kyng couþe hem agaste.
" [10] Lo," he seide, " þei clepude me sam ded kyng some,
" And zet ich habbe leuer sam ded hem ouercome,
" þan hol and sond be ouercome; and leuer al so me ys
" For to dye myd honour, þan [11] libbe in schame y wys.

---

[1] The folk, that wende forth with hym, the bolder for hym were *Ar.* [2] Unnethe for hure prute hii wolde *Ar.* [3] He is more than *Ar.* [4] His herte sett an hygh, & ordenyd his folk faste *Ar.* [5] Hii asaillede, and slough to gronde faste *Ar.* [6] Thought al hure gret pruyte, That hii of the noble man *Ar.* [7] Luyte *Ar.* [8] Octa y slawe, and Osa also, *Ar.* [9] The half dede *Ar. Semimortuus* Galfr.Mon. [10] "Lo " half dede kyng," he sede, " ye clupeth me somme, Yut " haue y leuer half dede hem " ouercome, *Ar.* [11] Lyue, *Ar.*

[1] þe

[1] þe Saxones [2] were þo ouercome, ac heo ne leuede ȝet noȝt
Heore schrewede dede, ac to wroþe hele wer heo to deþe y broȝt.
For heore ost euer wax hem com euer mo and mo.
Boþe bi Est and bi Norþ þei dude [3] muchel wo.
þe kyng wolde aȝen hem wende, ac he no moste for ys conseil.
For þe [4] feblor wel he was for þe oþer trauail.
þe Saxones hem hadde ymad in þis lond ywys
Kynges in þre [5] studes, þat al to on y comen ys.
Hengist [6] was first kyng of [7] Keng, & Elle in Souþsex,
And seþþe last was Certyk kyng of Westsex.
For he and Kenryk ys sone come vp at ȝarnemouþe,
And seþþe a duk, þat hatte Port, com vp at Portesmowþe.
Yt was as [8] in ȝere of grace þat God was bore, ich wene,
þat Certik com first, four hundred ȝer & four score & tene.
Kyng he was of West sex, and ys ofspryng al so,
And atte laste þilke kynde al þe oþer wan þer to.
For Port, þike grete duk, com vp here by Souþe,
Me clepuþ [9] yt," þer he first com vp, aftur hym Portesmowþe.

Primi reges Saxonum.

---

[1] The Saxones tho were ouercome, that hii by left hit nought. Hure sherewed herte hem wrother hele to deth forsoth brought. Afterwar eft the Saxones ost wax euer mo and mo *Ar.* [2] *Devicti autem Saxones, non idcirco à malitia sua destiterunt, sed aquilonares provincias ingressi, populos incessanter infestabant* Galfr. Mon. [3] Gret *Ar.* [4] Feblor he was tho for his erst travayll *Ar.* [5] Stedes, that come to on now is *Ar.* [6] Furst was kyng in Kent, and Elle *Ar.* [7] *Sic.* [8] In the ȳer *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.*

þus

þus were [1] heo" in werre and [2] wo ymenged þe Saxones,
Som tyme aboue [3] &" some tyme by neþe, [4] here myd þe Britones.
Ac al aboue [5] neuere hii nere ar aftur þe kyng Arture.
[6] Ac suþþe hii wonne al clene out, as ȝe solle here aftur hure.
Uter, þe gode kynȝe, (of [7] wan we speke bỳ vore,)
[8] Was feble after þat he was in þe hors bere ỳ bore,
þat he moste vor feblesse nede" holde hỳm stỳlle,
[9] þer vore þe luþer Saxons [10] so muche adde her wỳlle.
[11] And ȝute þo hỳỳ ne myȝte hym se, [12] hỳỳ þoȝte wyt traỳson
In some manere hỳm brynge of lỳue, oþer wyþ poyson.
Hiỳ sende her feble messagers in pouere monne wede,
þat at doles in þe court her mete mỳd oþere bede.
Hii aspỳed in þe court ouer al of þynges alle,
So þat hyi vnder ȝete [13] an welle, neỳ þe halle,
Of wat þe kỳng ofte dronc. vor he ne dronc in such cas.
Lutỳl oþer þyng bote þere of, vor þe wadyr so cold was.
Wanne he dronc ekyn wyn, þeramong yt was ỳdo.
And me made metes in þe court mỳd þulke water al so.

Deest Ar. [2] In wo menged *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Among the *Ar.* [5] Where hii neuere er after *Ar.* [6] But after hym hii wonne al clene, as ye shul after hure *Ar.* [7] Wham *Ar.* [8] Gan faste for to feble an horse bee re y bore, So that he moste for feblesse nedes *Ar.* [9] Ther fore *Ar.* [10] To muche *Ar.* [11] ỳut (*onisso* and) tho they ne *Ar.* [12] Hii thoughte in treson For to brỳnge hỳm to deth with som maner poyson. Hii sende fele messageres in poure mennes wede, *Ar.* [13] A well, negh the kynge's halle, Of which the kyng ofte dronk. For in this ilke cas Litel othur thỳng he dronk, but water that cold was. Whanne he dronk also anỳ wyne, ther on hit was y do, And mete me made in the court of thulk welle also *Ar.*

þo þe traytors ýt vnder ȝete, hii [1] en venymede wýþ ýnne
þe welle aboute in eche sýde [2] mýd her luþer gýnne.
þat þe water, þat þerof com, poýson was [3] wel strong.
þe kyng was sone apoýsond, [4] þo he þerof dronc,
An mo þan an hondred of hys men, ar me wyste were of ýt com.
Muche ssame were hii wurþe, þat doþ such [5] suýke dom.
Soþ hym sede Merlyn er, þat he solde þoru puýson deye.
þe chere men of lond, þo hii ded hym yseýe,
Deol & sorwe hii made ynou, ac þo þer nas oþer red,
Hii let hym beburye by ys broþer, as he hým sulf bede,
[6] Atte mynýstre of Ambýsbure, at Stoneheng ýwys.
Wel aȝte [7] þat he be wurþe stude, þat such sepulture ys.

ARTURE, [8] Uter sone, (of wan we tolde bý uore,)
Ye abbyth ý hurd hou he was bygete & ýbore.
þo þýs kyng was þus ded, þe heye men alle come
Of þe lond to [9] Cýlýcestre, and conseyl þerof nome
Vor to make hem a kyng. [10] Vor nede hom drof þerto.
Vor the Saxons wuste, þat þe kýng was ded so,

---

[1] *Fontem namque aggressi sunt nephandi proditores, ipsumque affecerunt veneno, ita ut manans aqua tota corrumperetur* Galfr. Mon. [2] With hure enuenymouse gynne *Ar.* [3] Full *Ar.* [4] Whan he *Ar.* [5] Swikeldom. So hým seyde Merlyn er he sholde thurgh poýson deye. The hegh men of the lond, tho hii his deth y seye, *Ar.* [6] By side the toun of Ambresbury, at Stonhenge y wis *Ar.* [7] That be a worthi stede, ther such sepulture is *Ar.* [8] Uthere's sone, (of wham) *Ar.* [9] Cilchestre *Ar.* [10] *Urgebat enim eos necessitas. quia, audito prædicti regis obitu, Saxones concives suos ex Germania invitaverunt, & duce Colgrino ipsos exterminare nitebantur* Galfr. Mon.

Hii sende uorthe to Alymayne after more poer blyue,
And þozte þys Brutons al clene of londe dryue.
So þat hii adde ẏwonne al clene þat Norþ londe,
Fram Homber to Cataneys, & adde al in her honde.
Artur was þo zong mon of vyftene zere vnneþe,
And zut al þat londe made [1] hym, after ys fader's deþe,
And [2] began suon eke er such man vorto be,
þat menessolde in none londe ys per nour ẏse.
So large he was & so hende, & [3] al[11] so de bonere;
So hardy and so gentyl, and of so vayr manere.
[4] þo so muche folc to hẏm come, [5] of kynztys zong & olde,
þat he [6] nadde nozt wel ware wyth such meyne up to holde.
Ac [7] ys herte was euere god, zong þey he were,
[8] Vor he þozte of þe Saxons ys spence vp arere.
He bẏgan þo wel sone to arere ẏs baner.
Vor ys prowesse he adde sone gret folc and poer.
He wende toward Euerwyk [9] myd vayr [10] copanye ẏ nou.
þo þe Saxons hyt vnder zete, þat he þuderward drou,
Of Scottes, and of Pẏcars, and of hym sulue hii nome,
Gret poer ẏ nou and strong, and azen hym come.

---

[1] *Subintellige*, kyng. [2] Thenne bygan such a man to be, That me myghte in non londe no whar his per se *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] And so *Ar.* [5] Of yonge and of olde, *Ar.* [6] Hadde vnnethe wharwith such a meyne holde *Ar.* [7] *Arthurus ergo, quia in illo probitas largitatem comitabatur, statuit Saxones inquietare, ut eorum opibus, quæ ei famulabatur, ditaret familiam* Galfr. Mon. [8] And euere he thoghte of the Saxones his dispenses rere *Ar.* [9] With gret power y nogh *Ar.* [10] *Sic.*

[1] þer

[1] þer was slaȝt in eyþer half, none mercy þer nas.
Ac kyng Arture atte laste (as God wolde) aboue was,
And sywede into Euerwyk [2] Colgrym her cheuenteyn,
And hym, þo he was wyþynne, byseged [3] myd al ys many.
Baldulf, Colgryme's broþer, syx þousend men myd him nom,
And, ys broþer vorto help, toward Euerwyk com.
[4] So he was fram Euerwyk aboute [5] an ten myle,
He [6] at stunte, & þoȝte, þat he wolde myd gyle
Up þe kyng Arture come anonywar by nyȝte,
And so him and al ys folc ssende, ȝyf he myhte.
þe kyng was [7] þerof ywar, he þoȝte to do bote.
Myd syx hondred kynȝtes, & [8] þre þousend men [9] auote,
Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, aȝen hym he sende,
[10] þat aȝen hym come anonyware, by awey þat he wende,
And slou and vere woundede, and monye broȝte to deþe,
So þat þys [11] Baldulf of scapede alyue vnneþe.
þe wyle [12] þat[11] þe kyng Arture biseged Euerwyk,
Me tolde hym of a gret duc, [13] þat het Theldryk,
þat out of Alemayne com [14] in to Scotlonde so
[15] Myd syx hondred syppuol kynȝtys, & al þe atyl þer to.

---

[1] Ther was slaughter gret y nogh, and mercy lite ther was *Ar.* [2] Colgryn *Ar.* [3] With his myght and mayn. Bathulf Colgryne's brother, *Ar.* [4] And tho he was *Ar.* [5] A *Ar.* [6] Astynte, *Ar.* [7] Her of y war, and thoghte her of do bote. With six *Ar.* [8] Foure *Ar.* *Sed ut Codex noster Harleyanus in* Galfr. Mon. A fote, *Ar.* [10] An vn ywar to falle on hym, by weye as hii wende. The Erl brak vp his busshment, & broghte manyon to dethe *Ar.* [11] Ilke Bathulf ascapede a lyue vnnethe *Ar.* [12] *Deest Ar.* [13] Me clupede Cheldyrk, *Ar.* [14] To Scotlonde tho *Ar.* [15] With VI. hundred shupfull of men, and hure atyr ther to. That was power

þere was so gret poyr in to an londe y lad.
þo þe kyngy's conseyl wuste þys, hyt was som dele adrad.
þe kyng Arture hii radde anon, to London vorte wende,
To nyme þer ys conseyl, wuch were best ȝende,
Leste such poer come vp hym, and him ssende.
þe kyng dude aftur her rede, and to Londone wende.
þere he hulde ys Parlement, wat were best to done.
[1] þo [2] þat he and ys conseyl at one red were sone.
[3] þo þat to þe lasse Brutayne þe kyng sone sende
To Howwel, kyng of þe lond, þat he to hym wende
To helpe hym in such nede, and that hym vnderstode
þat kunde yt wolde þat he dude, vor hii were of one blode.
þe kyng Arture's syster's sone þys kyng Howwel was,
[4] And þe kyngys sone of lasse Brytayne, & none nerer kunde þer nas.
þo þe messager wyþ þe tydyng to kyng Howwel com,
Hys conseyl wel hastelyche in such nede he nome,
Vor to helpe ys [5] neueu, and ys kynedom.
[6] Myd vyftene þousend kynȝtes into þys londe he com.

---

power wonder gret to on londe y ladde. Tho the kyng hurde this, he was somdel a dradde. The kynge's counsail radde hym a non, to London forto wende, To counsaille hogh he myght best his enemyes a shende *Ar.*

[1] So that *Ar.* [2] *Communi tandem assensu illato, mittuntur Armoricam nuncii ad regem Hoëlum, qui ei calamitatem Britanniæ notificarent. Erat autem Hoëlus filius sororis Arthuri, ex Budicio, rege Armoricorum Britonum, generatus* Galfr. Mon. [3] To the lasse Brutayne forto sende sone *Ar.* [4] The kynredene of hem no ferther nas *Ar.* ynnesman, *Ar.* [6] With XV. thousend of men to this *Ar.*

At

At Souþhamtone [1] he com vp, & þo hyi to gadere come
þys tueye kyngys hii custe hem, & hii clupte hem ỳlome.
þo hii adde her folc ỳ set, [2] as ryȝt was in such cas,
Vorþward toward Lyncolne hii wende [3] myd god pas.
þere hii come & mette hym, & strong bataỳle smyte þere,
So þat moo þan sỳx þousend of þe Saxon aslawe were,
Wat aslawe wat adrent, so þat atte laste,
þo [4] hii ne seye oþer won, hii gonne to fle vaste
In to a wode þer bỳ syde: and [5] þo hii þer in come,
Hem þoȝte hii were sỳkere ynou, & toke þe lasse gome.
þe kyng sỳwede [6] after, and bỳseged hem aboute.
[7] Ac" among þe [8] tren hii wuste hem, þat hii nadde nodoute."
þo þe kyng Arture ỳseỳ, þat hii nolde out come,
A boute þe wode he let fulle þe grete tren sone,
And leỳde ech vpe oþer aboute in ech ende,
þat ỳt was, as yt were, awal þat hii ne solde oute wende.
þre [9] dawes & þre nyȝt mete les hii wuste hem so,
þat hii nuste hou on take, ne wat vor hunger do.
þe kyng" Arture hii bỳsoȝte mercỳ [10] atte ende,
þat he granted hem in pes out of ỳs londe wende,

---

[1] This kynges tweỳne furst to gedre come. Aither othur clippe gan, and kuste to gedre y lome *Ar.* [2] As hit fel in such *Ar.* [3] A ful good pas. The Brutones and the Saxones smỳte a gret bataille there, So that sixty thousand [*sed*, sex milia *in* Galfr. Mon.] Saxones ther y slawe were, And fele ther of were a dreỳnt, so *Ar.* [4] Hii seygh non othur won, *Ar.* [5] Whenne *Ar.* [6] After faste, and *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] Trees hii kepte hem longe, for al Arthure's route *Ar.* [9] Dayes & thre nyght hii were y kepte so, That hii nuste for hunȝre What hii myghte do. Of kyng *Ar.* [10] Atten ende, *Ar.*

An

An hii granted hym al her god, þat hii hyder ladde,
Gold and seluer and tresour, al clene þat hii adde.
Hii [1] bỳhete hym eke ech ȝer, to bere hỳm truage
Out of her londe, and þerto [2] take hym god ostage.
Þe kyng þoru ys conseyl [3] encented wel her to,
An god ostage of nom, þe truage vor to do;
And atel al her god, and let him al bar wende.
And ȝut hym of þoȝte sone, þat he was hem so hende.
Mỳd her gold & seluer & myd her tresour he mỳȝte
Susteỳnỳ gode wỳle hys ost vorto fyȝte.
Ac ȝut þys luþere false men, in þe see þo hii come,
Turnede aȝen to suỳkedome, and anoþer red nome.
Atte hauene of Tottenas hii gonne [4] eft arỳue,
And dude hym alond, & rewede in Deuenyssyre blỳue.
And so uorþ in Somersete, [5] and" muche wo gonne do
Al anone to Seuerne, and to Baþe [6] so,
And bysegede þe [7] thoun, ac wyt þoute hii were.
Vor þe kyng byuore was hii bygonne her werre þere.
Vor þe kyng was toward Scotlond, & awreke hym þoȝte
Of Scottes and of Pigars, þat euer vnele hỳm wroȝte.

[1] *Promiserunt quoque, se daturos ei tributum ex Germania, obsidesque inde mansuros* Galfr. Mon. [2] Make hym good *Ar.* [3] Assentede ther to, And ostage of hem nam truage to do. At helde hem & al hure ȝood, & let hem bar wende *Ar.* [4] Up arỳue, And come a londe, & robbede in Deuenesshire as blỳue *Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] Also, *Ar.* [7] Toun, but out hii holde were. The kyng fer by Northe was forto werry there. Of Scottes & of Picardz a wreke hym he thoghte, That euermore to his lond muche shame wroghte. The tydynge to hym com of thes Saxones tho, He wiste neuere hoder turne so wo was hym tho. Of Scottes *Ar.*

þo þe tydýng to hým come of þe Saxons [1] we,
He nuste in weþer ende turne, so vol he was of wo.
Of þe Scottes" he wolde awreke be, ȝýf týme hym þerto ȝeue,
Ac he [2] nolde vor non þyng þe Saxons byleue.
[3] Howwel, ys scýster sone, kýng of þe oþer Brutaýne,
Mest in ýs herte was, vor anguýsse to plaýne,
(Vor he laý byuore sýk) þat he solde bý leue hym þere,
Laste þe Scottes hym dude ssame, oþer þat he ded were.
He byleuýd hým poer ýnou, and toward Somersete
Wende toward þe Saxons, vor þat nolde he noȝt lete."
þo he come to Somersete, and þe Saxons seý,
He houede, & spec to ys men þes wordes al an heý:
" Vor [4] þýs luþer Saxons [5] abbyt gret dedeýn
" Vorto holde me treuþe, ȝýf ých abbe ený maýn,
" Ich chýile treuþe holde to Jhesu Crist treulý (ȝýf ých maý)
" And þat blod of ýs kunde floc awreke ȝut to daý."
" Armeþ ȝou nou hastelýche, armeþ ȝou anon,
" Vor we ssolle to daý [6] mýd God help ouercome vr fon.

---

[1] We *idem est quod Anglo-Sax.* þa *sive* þæ, i. e. wo *vel* sorrow. *Sed* þo *(ut reor) est reponendum è Cod. Ar. ut prius* þo, when, *posterius* then *signet.* [2] Wolde for no thyng *Ar.* [3] But for Howel, his suster sone, kyng of lasse Brutayne, At Alclud sore sik lay, he was in gret payne, And that he moste nedely bylene hym tho there, Leste the Scottes dude hym shame, or elles that he dede were. He bileft a power with hým, and toward Somersete He wende a yen the Saxones, he wolde hit noght for lete *Ar.* [4] These *Ar.* [5] Haueth of vs dedeyne, And haueth thus y broke hure oth, yf y haue mýght and mayne, I make a vogh to Jhesu Christ, (to holde, ýf y may,) The blood, that they haueth shad, to venge yut to day *Ar.* [6] Thurgh Gode's help ouercome oure fon. The kýng at the gynnynge let an hange anon

Ac þe kỳnng atte bygỳnnyg let hang echon
Her ostages vor þe treson, he ne bỳleuede noȝt on.
þo þỳs [1] godē folc ȝare was [2] in to batayle rỳde,
Seyn Dubrỳc, þe archebyssop of Carleon, gan abỳde,
And wende [3] vp a lute hul amỳdde þys companye:
" ȝe Crystỳne men," he seyde, " of [4] soō noble seỳnore,
" þat beþ Gode's owe lỳmỳs, þoru ȝoure Crystendom,
" [5] þenc he on God, þat vor vs deỳde, & on [6] þỳs kỳnedom.
" Fyȝteþ vor ȝure [7] kunde, and defendeþ ȝoure ryȝte.
" þencheþ þe nede of þe londe, & of [8] vr louerdē myȝte.
" And ȝyf enỳ of ȝou ys aslawe here in þỳs fyȝte
" To sauỳ [9] þe lond folc vor þe londe's rỳȝte,
" He sywеþ purlỳche God, þat ȝef ỳs owe lyf here,
" To sauy vs synneuol men fram þe deuele's poer.
" And wo so here ys aslawe, ỳs deþ hym sal be
" In [10] lesnesse of al ỳs synnys, & ỳs soule ssalle fle
" And be ybroȝt bynore God, ar [11] þat bodỳ be cold.
He [12] asouled al þỳs folc, þo he adde al þys ỳ told.
[13] þat folc þoru ys prechynge so god wylle nom þere,
[14] þat hem þoȝte echewỳle fỳue, in batayle ar hii were.

---

anon Alle hure ostages, he lefte a lyue non *Ar.*

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] In bataille for to ryde, Therchebisshop Dobryght bade hem alle abyde, *Ar.* [3] Upon a litel hulle among this *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] Thenketh on God, *Ar.* [6] His *Ar. sed rectius* þỳs. [7] Kynde blod, and also for your ryght *Ar.* [8] Our Lorde's *Ar.* [9] The Christene fey, and his Lorde's ryght, he sỳweth purly God, that yat *Ar.* [10] Foryieuenge *Ar.* [11] The body *Ar.* [12] Asoil ede *Ar.* [13] The people *Ar.* [14] That euery while hem thoghte ten, er hii were there. The kyng thanne let arme hym self in hauberk noble & riche. An helm of gold vpon his hed, nowher non bitt liche *Ar.*

þe [1] kynng was aboue yarmed wyþ haubert noble & ryche,
Wyþ helm of gold on ys heued, (nas nour hym ylyche)
þe fourme of a dragon þeron [2] was ycast.
Hys sseld, þat het Prydwen, was þanne y honge wast
Aboute ys ssoldren, and þeron y peynt was and ywort
þe ymage of our Lady, inwan was al ys þogt.
Myd ys sucrd he was ygurd, þat [3] so" strong was & kene,
Calybourne yt was ycluped, [4] nas nour no such yc wene.
In ys rygt hond ys lance he nom, þat ycluped was Ron,
Long & gret [5] & strong ynou, hym ne mygte atsytte non.
He þogte al [6] on Jhesu Criste, and ys men cchon,
Upe þe doune aboue Baþe hii [7] mytte myd her fon.
Hii smyte batayle strong y nou, þat al long day ylaste.
þe Saxons in her syde stode euere agen vaste.
Mychc folk þer was ynou aslawe in eyþer syde.
þo þe nygt vp hem come, þat hii ne mygte no leng abyde,
[8] Up an toret of an [9] herre hulle þe Saxons wende þere,
þat þe heye hulle to hym was a castel, as yt were.
Amorage, þo yt day was, adoun eft hii alygte,
And in batayle strong ynou bygonne ef sone to fygte,

[1] *Ipse vero Arthurus, lorica, tanto rege digna, indutus, auream galeam, simulachro draconis insculptam, capiti adaptat* Galfr.Mon. [2] Was his crest. His shild, that het Pridewen, aboute his nekke he kest. A cros ther on was peynt, and on a corner An ymage of oure Lady on that sheld he ber. With his sweord *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Perlees as y wene *Ar.* [5] And poynted wel, myght hit of sitte non *Ar.* [6] In *Ar.* [7] Mette with *Ar.* [8] Up the cop of an hull the Saxones wende there, For to be refuyt to hem, and castel, as hit were. A morwe as sone as hit was day, doun hii a light, *Ar.* [9] *L.* heye.

And

And slowe vaste in eyþer half, þat reuþe ýt was ýnou.
þo þe kyng Arture ý seý, þat me so vaste ýs men slou,
Hýs herte he gan vp arere, þat he nadde þe maýstrye,
And dude ýs wýlle [1] al to God, & on ýs moder Marie,
And Calýbourne, ýs gode suerd, [2] mýd gode ernest adrou,
And smot aboute [3] in euþer syde to grounde & hard ýnou,
And four hondred men, ar he reste, ýs owe honde he slou,
An syxtý and ten al so, þe asaut was somdel tou.
And þer to nadde he oþer help, bote God & Seýnte Marie,
An Calybourne ýs gode suerd, to do suche maýstrýe.
þo ýs men ýseýe þýs, after vaste hii drowe,
And to grounde aboute smýte, & þe Saxons vaste slowe.
Colgrým, þat her maýster was, and [4] Baldulf, ýs broþer,
Aslawe were at þulke asaut, & also moný [5] a noþer.
Vor moný þousend þere were aslawe, & Teldryc atte laste,
Hýs felawes þo he seý aslawe, býgan to fle vaste."
þo þýs batayle was ýdo, to þe kyng com message,
þat þe Scottes & [6] Pýgars dude hým gret out rage,
[7] And syre Howwel ýs neueu, kyng of þe oþer Brutannýe,
[8] þat sýk [9] daý, as ých seýde er, byseged mýd al her maýne

---

[1] Al on God, and his moder *Ar.* [2] With ernyst vp he drogh, *Ar.* [3] In aither half to grounde and faste slogh. Foure hundred vnder his hond with his sweord gon deýe, Thurgh the help of our Lord and his moder Marie. The kynge's men seigh this, & after hym faste drogh, *Ar.* [4] Bathulf *Ar.* [5] Anothur. Than thes men thus were slawe, Cheldrik atte laste, Tho he segh non other won, gan to fle faste *Ar.* [6] Picardes *Ar.* [7] And that Howel *Ar.* [8] That sik was, as I seyde er, hy seged with hure mayne *Ar.* [9] *Lege*, lay.

þo þe kyng hurde þys, hym longede þuder sore,
[1] He ne myȝte þer leng abyde, þe Saxons to sywe more.
Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, he [2] bỳleuede þere
[3] Mỳd ten þousend men [4] vorto sỳwe hem, þat of scaped were.
The erl sywyde [5] mỳd ys men þe Saxons vaste ynou,
And strong bataỳle smot, and [6] Teldrỳc þe prince slou,
And ys compaỳnye þe mestedel, bote auewe atte nende
Mercỳ hỳm crỳde, þat hii moste in to her owe lond wende,
And suore [7] & toke hỳm ostage, þat hii ne ssolde neuere ỳwỳs
Thỳs lond [8] eft asaỳlỳ, ne ssame don amỳs.
þo þat þe folc of Saxons [9] namore hỳdỳr [10] ne'' come,
þe wỳle þe kỳng Arture [11] wuste þỳs kỳnedome.
Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, þo he adde ỳdo al þys,
To þe kyng ys louerd wende, to Scotlond ywys.
þe kyng adde [12] er'' among þe Scottes ỳsturyd hym vol wel,
[13] And delyuered of hỳm, or he come, ys neueu sỳre Howwel,
And ỳslawe of hem monỳon, so þat [14] in an ỳle
Hii [15] of scapede atte laste [16] bỳ uore mony amỳle,
[17] þet water geþ al aboute, and þer ynne eke beþ
[18] Sỳxtỳ heỳe roches, as men þere ỳseþ.

---

[1] Ne myghte he ther no lengor byde, the Saxones to werry more *Ar.* [2] By lefte *Ar.* [3] With *Ar.* [4] To folwe hem, that a scaped were *Ar.* [5] With *Ar.* [6] Cheldrik *Ar.* [7] And ostages yeue, hii sholde neuere y wis *Ar.* [8] A saily more, ne shame, ne do a mys. So that *Ar.* [9] No more *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] Wardede *Ar.* [12] *Deest Ar.* [13] And remewed the sege, er he come, fro his cosyn Howel, *Ar.* [14] In to an *Ar.* [15] A scapede *Ar.* [16] Byfore hym many *Ar.* [17] The water by goth hit al *Ar.* [18] LX. roches in that ile, ho that cometh ther seth *Ar.*

þer

þer ynne noman ne wonyeþ, ac in eche roche þer ys
In tyme of ȝere an [1] erne's nest, þat hii bredeþ in ywys.
Ech ys in a roche hym sulf, vor hii ne mowe nozt ne be.
Vor hem byhoueþ muche mete, & hii ne mowe nozt wel fle
Vor feblesse of her brode, ac wan her bryddys rype beþ,
þere hii fyndeþ more mete, in londes aboute hii fleþ.
þe kyng [2] bylay þys Scottes [3] þere myd al wo,
þat þer deyde of hem vor honger a þousend and mo.
And ȝut nolde þe ssrewen to none pes go.
Gyllam, kyng of [4] her londe, to hem wende þo
Wyth gret per in þe water, to helpe hym in þys cas."
þo kyng Arture yt wuste, prest aȝen hem he was
And slou of hem to grounde, so þat hii gonne with drawe,
And hii, þat myȝte come aȝen, alyue were wel vawe.
þo þe kyng hem adde afayted so, þat hyi ne kepte nanmore hym mete,
ȝut he þozte asayty þe Scottes, ar he hem lete.
He bysette hem vaste ynou, so þat atte laste þere
þe byssopes and oþer prelats, þat of londe were,
[5] Some with grete processyon in gret anguysse and fere
Wepynde byuore þe kyng, & her relykes myd hem bere,

---

[1] Egle's *Ar.* *At in marg.* ¶ Iles of Ernes *ab ead. manu, licet adjecerit manus admodum recens*, or Iles of Eagles. *Et quidem voci* Eagles *adstipulatur* Galfr. Mon. [2] Bisegede *Ar.* [3] Ther and dude hem muche wo, So that of hem for hunger deide a thousand & wel mo. And yit wolde noght the sherewes the kynge's wille do. The kyng of Irlond Gwillamour to Scotlond com that while With gret power by water, to helpe hem in this Ile *Ar.* [4] *L.* Irlonde. [5] *L.* come *cum Ar.*

And oþer holy chyrche þynges [1] bare vorþe echon.
Hyy [2] welle alle adoun eke byuore þe kyng anon,
And bed hym, vor ys suete loue, þat deyde on þe rode,
þat he hadde reuþe of hem, & of [3] ys" soule vnderstode.
[4] Wanne he adde þer byuore of hem yslawe y nowe,
[5] þat he soffrede þulke lybbe, þat he follyche alle ne slowe;
And þat he som hurne of þe londe grauntede hem þere,
War ynne hii leuede, & euermo seruage hym bere.
þe kyng, vor pyte [6] herof, bygan to wepe sore,
And nom of hem sykernesse, þat hii ne soldę mys do nanmore,
And graunted hem [7] annende lond, to wonye ynne in seruage,
To bere [8] þerof hym and ys eueremor truage.
Nou [9] were þer myd hym þre men, (þat of ryzte kunde come
Of kynges of þulke lond, [10] vorte Saxons hem bynome)
Auncel, and Vryan, and Lot þe þrydde was,
þat spousede þe kynge's [11] suster, (ze abbyþ yhurd þat cas,)
And adde by hyre tueye sones, syre Wawen þe hende,
þe oþer het Modred, þat þe kyng bytrayde [12] atte nende.

---

[1] *Lege*, bare votte, *sive*, *ut in Ar.* barfot. *Nam* nudis pedibus *in* Galfr. Mon. [2] Felle *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] And suthe he *Ar.* [5] A fewe, that lefte, hii prayde hym saue, and holde hem al his owe. And that som heorne of the lond he wolde hem graunte there, Wher inne hii myghte lyue, and euere aftur truage hym bere *Ar.* [6] Hadde reuthe, he segh hem wepe so sore *Ar. aliter atque* Galfr. Mon. [7] An ende of lond, to lyue inne in seruage, *Ar.* [8] Ther fore hym *Ar.* [9] *Aderant ibi tres fratres, regali prosapia orti, Loth videlicet, atque Urianus, nec non Auguselus, qui antequam Saxones prævaluissent principatum illarum partium habuerant* Galfr. Mon. [10] Fort Saxones it hem by nome) Aguissel, & Urien, and Loth *Ar.* [11] Anne *addit Ar.* [12] After atten ende *Ar.*

þe kyng Arture þys þre men kynges made þere
[1] Ech of ys rygte ertage, as her elderne were.
[2] Auncel kyng of pur Scotlond, and [3] Vryan ys broþer
[4] Kyng of lond of Murýfycens, vor he was ner þen anoþer,
Of þe contreye of [5] Ledeneseye Lot he made kyng,
[6] And of al contreye þat þerto vel, & þat was muche þyng.
þo he adde al þys lond ybrogt and Scotlond al so
Al clene in rygte to ys wylle, anoþer he moste do.
He spousede a noble wyf [7] Guerwar her name was
Of þe heye kunne of Rome, no vayror womman nas.

AS sone as Somer come, to Yrlond he gan wende,
Vor to afaytý þat lond, [8] & to wynne ech ende.
Gyllam, kyng of lond, ar he þuder com,
Volc, as ýt were wyþoute noumbre, agen hym he nom.
Hii com [9] & ýmette hem sone, & gret batayle hii smýte,
Ac þe kyng Arture was aboue, as me maý wel ýwyte.
And þe kyng Gýllam was ýnome, and so al þat lond
[10] By certeý conuenant was in kyng Arture's hond.
[11] Fram [12] þan he wende sone to þe lond of Ys lond,
And wan hýt al clene to hým, and al þat he wond."

[1] Euery in his heritage *Ar.* [2] Anguissel *Ar.* [3] Vrien *Ar.* [4] Kyng he made of Moreff, for he was ner than othur, *Ar.* [5] Liones Loth he *Ar.* [6] With al the portenaunce ther to, and that was gret a [*l.* a gret] thing *Ar.* [7] Gunnore *Ar.* [8] And wynne in euery ende. Gwillamour, kyng of that lond, *Ar.* [9] And mette with hem sone, & gret bataille smyte, *Ar.* [10] By acordement *Ar.* [11] *Hæc duo carmina omittit Ar.* [12] *Subjugatis itaque totius Hyberniæ partibus, classem suam direxit in Yslandiam, eamque debellato sibi populo subjugavit* Galfr. Mon.

[1] So

[1] So [2] such tythýnge aboute com, as ech sende oþer sonde,
þat so noble man he was, þat ne myȝte no lond at stonde,
Doldam wende anon to hým, þat was kyng of Godlonde,
And [3] Gumýas, kýng of Orcadas, ýs grace vorto fonde,
And býcome ýs men, & býhete hým, to bere hým truage
Eche ȝer, and holde of hym and of hýs in seruage.
[4] Of þýs Brytanýe he was þo kyng, & adde also Scotlonde,
And ýs londe and Orcadas vnder hým, and ýr londe.
þo wynter was al ýdo, in to þys londe he wende,
To brynge þýs londe in god pes, and þe lawes amende.
Tuelf ȝer he býleuede þo here wyth nobleye y nou,
And [5] hexte men of mony londes aboute hým vaste drou.
[6] And býgan to astrengþý ýs court, & to eche ýs maýnýe;
And mýd so gret plente holde ýs hous, & myd so gret cortesýe,
þat me ne mýȝte [7] of so noble los man neuere vnderstonde.
And þat þer [8] nas þere aboute [9] kýnȝt in none lond,
þat [1] me tolde of ený þýng, bote he of sýwte were
Of þe kýng Arture's hous, oþer som sýgne [11] þer of[11] bere,
Of robes oþer of armes, & þe god man was so hende,
þat he [12] aueng vawe echon, þat to hym wolde wende.

---

[1] Kynge's a boute ech to other sende thanne hure sonde, Of the dedes that he dude, non myght hym a stonde. Doldyn *Ar.* [2] *Exinde divulgato per ceteras insulas rumore, quod ei nulla provincia resistere poterat, Doldanius, rex Gotlandiæ, & Gunvasius, rex Orcadum, ultro venere, promissoque vectigali subjectionem fecerunt* Galfr. Mon. [3] Gwýnas *Ar.* [4] Thanne was he of Brutayne kyng, & hadde al Scotlonde, Godlonde and Orchadas vnder hým, and Irlonde *Ar.* [5] Beste *Ar.* [6] He gan to strengthi his lond, & encreste his mayny; *Ar.* [7] Of such a los no man vnderstonde *Ar.* [8] Was *Ar.* [9] Knyght *Ar.* [10] Men *Ar.* [11] *Desunt Ar.* [12] Faire vnderfenge alle, that to hym *Ar.*

Bote

Bote to segge ssortlyche, þer [1] nas ver ne ner,
Of prowesse [2] ne of cortesye, in þe worl ys per.
Hys los sprong so wyde sone of ys largesse,
Of strengþe and of corteysye, and of ys prowesse,
To þe verrost ende of þe world, þat such man nas nour non.
So þat oþer grete kynges douted hym echon
Bygende see in eche stude, and dradde ver and ner,
þat he come and by nome her londes, oþer her poer.
[3] Hii bygonne her heye tounes strengþy vaste aboute,
Her castles & storys, þat hii myzte be ynne in doute.
þo þys gode tydyng com to þys noble kyng Arture,
Myd god herte he wolde such tydyng yhure.
He þozte come by hem, & brynge hem somme to lure,
And to ywnne zut al Europe, zyf he myzte dure.
þe þrydde del of al þe world Europe yclyped ys,
[4] þat tylþ fram ver byzonde Rome to þe West worle's ende ywys.
Hym þozte he adde yrest ynou, [5] no leng he nolde abyde.
Hys poer he let sumny, þat ysprad was wel wyde,

---

[1] Was non fer ne nere, *Ar.* [2] And of courtaisye, *Ar.* [3] Hii lete hure tounes strengthe faste, for hii hadde gret doute, By cause he myghte with hym lede of knyghtes such a route *Ar.* [4] That is bi hidere the Grekissh see al Cristendom y wis *Ar.* [5] He wolde no lengor abide. He let of sende his power, that sparpuled was ful wide. And whan that they al redy were, thei went forth in hure weye, And dude hem so in to the see, and sutthe to Noreweye. So fell, er thei thuder come, the kyng of Noreweie dede was, And Loth, Arthure's othom, his heir was by cas, And hadde ordeyned hym ther to by fore his deth longe. But the men *Ar.*

And

And greyþede ys noble ost, and dude hym in þe weye,
And dude hym so in to see, and vorst to Norþweye.
Nou was þe kyng of Norþweye ded þer by uore by cas,
And Lot,§ þat was ys oþom, þe kynge's neueu was,
And þe kyng hym adde mad ys eyr þer byuore longe:
Ac þe men[1] of Norþeweye nolde vor prute hym vnder uonge,
Ac adde ymad anoþer man kyng of þe londe,
þat agen þe kyng Arture hopede wel at stonde.
Chyld[2] Waweyn, Lotys sone, þulke tyme was
Bote of tuelf ger, & þe pope of Rome bytake was
To norys þoru þe kyng Arture, & þulke tyme rygt
þe pope hym tok armes, & ys owe honde made hym[3] kyngt.
[4] As þe kyng Arture, as ych seyde, to Norweye com,
þe kyng of londe agen hym þen wey sone nom
Myd ys poer, and smyte an batayle strong ynou,
And ssedde blod in eyþer half, and muche folc me slou.
Ac her poer of Norweye ydo was anon,
þe kyng hym sulf was sone aslawe, & [5] ys men monyon.
þe Brutons hym sturede þo, and slowe and barnde vaste,
So þat hii wonne al clene Norþweye atte laste.
þer after hii wonne Denemarch, vorto do seruage
To þe kyng Arture euermo, and to bere hym truage.
He [6] made Lot ys oþom kyng of Norþweye,
þer [7] after toward France hii dude h m in þe weye.

---

[1] A vonge *Ar.* [2] *Erat tunc Walwanus, filius prædicti Loth, XII. annorum juvenis, obsequio Sulpicii papæ ab avunculo traditus, à quo arma recepit* Galfr. Mon. [3] Knyght *Ar.* [4] Whan the *Ar.* [5] His men negh echon *Ar.* [6] *Quibus subactis, cum Loth in regem Norguegiæ promovisset, navigavit Arthurus ad Gallias, factisque turmis patriam undique vastare incepit* Galfr. Mon. [7] Afterward toward France he dude *Ar.*

[1] Nou

[1] Nou adde France þulke tyme þe emperour Leon ;
And he bytoc yt in warde an duc, þat het Follon,
þat hardy body was and god, and poer adde y nou.
þo he wuste, þat þe þyng Arture þuder drou,
[2] Alle þe kyngtes and þe folc, þat in ys poer were,
He nom, & mette þe Brutons, & smyte batayle þere.
Ac al þat hem was lute wurþ, vor agen þe kyng Arture
And ys poer hii mygte lute wule dure.
Vor [3] euere, wanne he [4] nom alond, al þe bachelerye,
þat agt was in þe lond, he [5] nom in ys companye
[6] And of ys maynage vp ys coust, & vor he was so hende,
Ech noble man vawe was myd hym vorto wende.
[7] And beste partye of Fraunce to hym al so drou.
[8] Vor he was so large & hende, þat to hym com poer ynou.
Vor me ne tolde welneȝ of no mon, noþer here ne þere,
Bote he myd þe kyng Arture in som manere were.

---

[1] Nogh hadde Fraunce thulke tyme a lord, het Frollon, (That vndertok the gouernaunce thurgh emperour Leon) That hardy man was & strong, and hadde power y nogh *Ar.* [2] Alle maner of men, of his power that were, He toke, and with the Brutones mette, & smyten a bataille there *Ar.* [3] *Nam Arthurum juventus insularum omnium, quas subjugaverat, comitabatur. unde tantum perhibebatur habere exercitum, quantus erat difficile ab ullo posse superari.* Galfr. Mon. [4] Wan a lond *Ar.* [5] Toke *Ar.* [6] And of mayne at his cost. and for he was so hende, Euery noble man was glad with hym forto wende. And the best part of Fraunce *Ar.* [7] *Famulabatur quoque ei melior pars Gallicanæ provinciæ, quam sua largitate sibi obnoxiam fecerat* Galfr. Mon. [8] For his largeste & hendeneste, that hym com folk y nogh *Ar.*

[1] þo

[1] þo þe duc Follon ysey, þat ys poer noþyng nas,
He flen in to Parys myd wel quyc pas,
And astorede [2] þen toun, and strengþe hym aboute.
Kyng Arture and ys poer aseged hym wyþoute.
So þat wyþynne [3] a monþe þe duc Follon yseȝ;
þat ys men, vor defaute and vor hunger, deyde ny,
And þat ys poer nas noþyng, azen kyng Arture
[4] He þozte do ys owe body, wyle he myȝte dure.
Vor he was strong man & hardy, þe strengoste of ys londe.
To þe kyng Arture he sende, þat he ssolde [5] hym vnder stonde
[6] To do an batayle hem sulue tuo myd her owe honde,
And weþer so myȝte aboute be were louerd of oþere's londe.
þo kyng Arture hurde [7] þys, no gladdere man nas.
He sende word, þat al prest to such batayle he was.
Sykernesse [8] & trouþe [9] yplyȝt, of þys vorewarde hii nome.
So þat, at certeyn day yset, to þys batayle hii come
A lute wyþoute Parys, [10] atyled wel y nou.
Muche was [11] þat folc aboute, þat to þys batayle drou.

[1] Whan that Frolle vnderstod, that he sconfited was, He flegh in to Parys with a quyke paas, *Ar.* [2] The toun, and strengthed hym a boute *Ar.* [3] A monthe day duk Flolle y seigh, That his men in defaute for honger deide negh, *Ar.* [4] He thoghte with his owene body, while he myght endure *Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] And do the bataille, yf he wolde, with his owen honde, And whether myghte a boue be were maister of othere's londe *Ar.* [7] This, gladder neuere he nas *Ar.* [8] *Dato igitur in amba parte fœdere, conveniunt uterque in insulam, quæ erat extra civitatem, populo expectante quid de eis erat futurum* Galfr. Mon. [9] Hii plight, and hure forward nome. So that at a day sett to bataille hii come *Ar.* [10] Arayed wel y nogh *Ar.* [11] The folk *Ar.*

[1] Hii fondede her steden vorst, & her lancen suþþe hii nome,
And wyþ hard dunt & gret yre to gadere suþþe hii come.
[2] þe kyng Arture azen þe brest ys felawe uorst anhytte
Azen þe breste, þat he vel, & ne myzte noleng sytte.
As sone as he myzte turne ys hors, ys suerd he drou þer,
Vor to asayly hym þerwyþ, ac þe oþer was vppe er,
And [3] zef þe sted myd ys sper azen brest deþe's wounde,
So þat boþe stede and kyng leye sone at grounde.
[4] þo þe [5] Brutons seye þys, hii vor bere vnneþe,
þat hii ne breke þe couenant, & brozte þen oþer to deþe.
Ac kyng Arture keuerede vp, & asayledе Follon vaste,
And smyte eyþer oþer her & þer, & harde duntes caste,
So þat Follon myd a stroc þe Brutons sore azaste,
Vor þe kyng Arture azen þe frount he smot atte laste,
þat, zyf he nadde wyþ þe selde somdel þe dunt yhent,
Syker he hym adde aslawe, oþer al out yssent.
þo kyng [6] Arture yt yuelde, and yseý al so ys blod
Vp ys haubert & ys sselde, he was neý vor wraþþe wod.

---

[1] Hii a saide hure stedes furst, hure lances *Ar.* [2] And kyng Arthur on the brest Frolle so hitte, That he fel doun to grounde, he myghte no lengor sitte *Ar.* [3] Smot his stede in the breste, & yaf hym dethe's wonde *Ar.* [4] *Desunt aliquammulta in Ar. utpote in quo folium unum integrum* (fol. sc. LXIX. *quatuor duntaxat versibus exceptis) hic loci excisum esse, particulamque unius paginæ (sive facieisecundæ folii* LXVIII.) *plane vacuam, video, in cujus tamen particulæ vacuæ margine* The rounde table of Arthur *scriptum legitur.* [5] *Britones ut regem prostratum viderunt, timentes eum peremptum esse, vix potuerunt retineri, quin rupto fœdere in Gallos unanimiter irruerent* Galfr. Mon. [6] *Manante igitur sanguine, cum Arthurus loricam & clipeum rubere vidisset, ardentiori ira accensus est, atque erecto totis viribus caliburno, impressit eum*

He drou syre Calẏbourne ys suerd, þat was so gode,
And anowarde þe helm wyþ wel stourdẏ mod
þen oþer he smot, and to clef þat heued myd þe wounde.
He vel and ssoc þe helm, and deẏde in astoundle.
þo þẏs dede was ẏdo, and þere oþer was ded,
þut conseẏl of France sone nom ys red,
And to þe kẏng Arture hẏm ȝolde ech man þat was wẏs,
And ȝolde hẏm vp al þat lond, & þe keẏen of Parẏs.
þys was lo þe Cornwellẏssebor, of wan Merlẏn spec ynou,
And clere leme of þe sterre, þat ouer France drou.
Som was ẏcome, as he sede, of þe noble kyng Arture,
Wel me ssal her after of hẏm ȝut ẏhure.
þo he adde ẏwonne France þus, & al þẏs was ẏdo,
þẏs noble kẏng Arture delde ẏs men atuo.
[1] þe kẏng Howwel he bẏtoc, and þe oþer princes al so,
þat odel of ẏs ost to wende to Peẏto
Vor to wẏnne þat lond, and hẏm sulf he wolde wende
Vor to wẏnne seẏnorẏe aboute in oþer ende.
Kyng Howwel wyþ ẏs poer wan sone Peẏto
Al to kẏng Arture's wẏle, and Gascoẏne al so.
þe kẏng won Normandẏe, and also god Aungeo,
And wẏþẏnne anye ȝer al þẏs was ẏdo.

---

eum per galeam in caput Follonis, quod in duas partes dissecuit. Quo vulnere cecidit Follo, tellurem calcaneis pulsans, & spiritum in auras emisit Galfr. Mon.

[1] *Et unam partem Hoelo duci commisit, præcepitque illi, ut, ad expugnandum Guitardum, Pictaviensium ducem, iret; ipse vero cum reliqua parte ceteras provincias sibi subjugare vacavit* Galfr. Mon.

þe kyng wende þo to Paryś, þo he adde ydo al þys,
And al hey men of lond þuder come ywys.
Her homages of hem, and her seruyse, he nom,
And þe lawes, as he wolde hym sulf, sette on þe kynedom.
He zef þat lond of Normandye Bedwer ys boteler,
And þat lond of Aungeo [1] Kaxe ys panter,
And oþer þyng oþer heye men, & syker yt made ynou,
And suþþe aboute Leynte toward þys lond drou.

ÞO þe kyng Arture com here in þys londe,
And so muche lond adde ywonne, & adde al so an honde,
In yoe & blysse he was ynou, & alle þat wyþ hym were,
And azen Wyttesonetyd yt was in þe zere.
He þozte þe heye feste of Wytesontyd do
Wyþ honour among ys men, and þat alle come þer to,
Boþe kynges and dukes, and erles echon,
Barons and kynztes, squeers monyon,
Laydyes and maydens, and ech mon þat azt were
In eny lond, þat ys was, þat hii were alle þere.
Of ys rounde table ys ban aboute he sende,
þat eche a Wytesonetyd to Carleon wende,
A toun þat ys in Glammorgan vp þe water of Osc ydo,
A lute bysyde Seuerne, in murye stede al so.
Vor me may þere in þe Souþhalf al by the see lede
Fram oþer londes god ynou, to endy such a dede.
[2] In oþer alf beþ grete wodes, lese and mede al so,
So þat þer vas no defaute such noble þyng to do.

[1] *F.* Kaye. *Nam* Gaioque Dapifero *in* Galfr. Mon. [2] *Hic denuo pergit Cod. Ar.*

þer come to þys rounde table, as he sende ys ban,
[1] Aunsel kyng of Scotlond, and al so Vryan,
þat was kyng of Murýfycens, & also of Norþ Walys
Cadwal, and also [2] Scater kyng of Souþ Walys,
Cador kyng of Cornwayle, and erchebyssopes al so
Of Londone, and of Euerwyk, and of [3] Carlen þer to.
Erles þer come ek monyon, as þe erl of Gloucestrye
[4] Morond, and Ingomer erl of Leycestre,
[5] Maron erl of Warewyk, and Cursal of Cycestre,
Galluc erl of Salesbury, Jonatal of Dorcestre,
Kymmar erl of [6] Canterbury, of Baþe syre [7] Vrgen,
Bose erl of Oxenford, þat were alle noble men.
þe barons & the kyngtys, þat of hys londe aday
At hys rounde table were, noman telle ne may.
Kynges þer were eke of ylys, [8] ar þe kyng of yrlonde
[9] Gyllam, and also Malueys kyng of yslonde,
Lot kyng of Norþeweye, and [10] Doldam of Godlond,
And þe kyng of Orcadas, & of Denemarch ych vnderstonde.
Kynges eke of bygende see, as Kay of Aungeo,
Bedwer of Normandye, Guyder of Peyto,
Lygger of Colonye, and al so the [11] dosse pers
Of France were þere echon, þat so noble were and fers.

---

[1] Anguissel *Ar.* [2] Estanter *Ar.* [3] Carlyon *Ar.* [4] Morwid *Ar. in quo &* Dude ywan *pro* Ingomer. [5] Mauran of Wircetre, [*Maren Gwigornensis, quæ nunc Warguic dicitur*, Galfr. Mon.] Cursal erl of Chestre, Aleth of Salesbury, Jonathas of Dorchestre, Kynmar *Ar.* [6] Kent, *Ar.* [7] Vrbygen, Boso *Ar.* [8] As *Ar.* [9] Gwillamour, & Maunsel kyng of Islonde, *Ar.* [10] Doldan *Ar.* [11] Dusze *Ar.*

Hys

Hÿs neueu kÿng Howwel of þe lasse Brutenÿe al so
[1] Mÿd so vaÿr folc þuder com, & mÿd so gret charge þerto
Of mules, of cartes and of hors mÿdde alle gode,
þat þer nas non so wÿttÿ man, þat ÿt al vnderstode.
[2] þer nas [3] bÿtuene þys & Spanÿe no prince wiþoute al þÿs,
þat nas at þÿs rounde table, & at þÿs feste ÿwÿs.
And no wonder. Vor þe kynge's los so wyde sprong ÿnoũ
Of godenesse & of cortesye, [4] þat her herte to hÿm drou.

ÞO þÿs heÿe men were alÿcome, & þe heÿe tÿme also
Of Wÿtsontyd, þe feste vor to do,
[5] þe herchebyssopÿs were ÿbrozt, to sette þe kÿnge's croune
On ÿs heued. Ac [6] Seÿn Dubrÿc of sulue tÿme
Was erchebÿssop. hÿm byuel þe croune on hÿm do,
And þe seruÿse of holy chÿrche ek, þat byuel þer to.
Þo croune was on ÿs heued, and ÿdo was ech oþer þÿng,
Tueÿe erchÿbÿssopys ladde þys noble kÿng

---

[1] With muche poeple thuder com, and gret nobleie ther to *Ar.* [2] Ther was no prynce by twixte Spayne & Alemayne of pris, *Ar.* [3] *Præter hos non remansit princeps alicujus pretii citra Hispaniam, quin ad istud edictum veniret. Nec mirum. Largitas namque Arthuri, per totum mundum divulgata, cunctos in amorem illius illexerat* Galfr. Mon. [4] That euery man to hym drogh *Ar.* [5] Thre Erchebisshopes were come, to sette on the kynge's croune. But Seynt Dubrice, that Erchebisshop was of the selue toune, (As hit was his costume that offys te do) Dude the seruise of holi churche, that byfel ther to. Tho the croune [6] *Dubricius ergo, quoniam in sua diocesi curia tenebatur, paratus ad celebrandum obsequium, hujus rei curam suscepit* Galf. Mon.

To þe chyrche of heye munstre. And þer ȝeode byuore hym þere
Four kyngs, and four suerdes of golde byuore hym bere;
Vorst þe kyng of Scotlond, and þe kyng of Norþwalys,
And þe kyng of Cornwale, and þe kyng of Souþwalys.
[1] Oþer byssopys and prelats by uore þys kyng Arture
And clerkes songe as ryȝt was, þat joye yt was to hure.
In [2] oþer alf þe quene was [3] of erchebyssopys al so
ylad, and ycrouned eke, as ryȝt was vor to [4] do,
And to noþer munstre ylad, & four quenes by uore hyr wende,
þe four kynges wyues, þat we by uore nemde,
[5] And foure wyte colfren byuore hyr also bere.
þe companye of laydyes wel grete also were.
þo [6] hii were to chyrche ybroȝt eyþer in ys syde,
[7] So gret & murye was þat song, þat me song þer inne wyde,
þat þe folc stod, þat þer were, as hii were y nome,
Ne hii nuste to weþer chyrche murgorye yt was to come.
þe kyng was to ys paleys, þo þe seruyse was y do,
Ylad wyþ [8] þys menye, and þe quene to hyre al so.

[1] And bysshopes, and other prelates, to fore the kyng Arthure Songe with hure clergie, that joye it was to hure *Ar.* [2] The othur *Ar.* [3] Of therchbisshop also *Ar.* [4] Do, To a nother munstre there, & iiii. quenes by fore wende *Ar.* [5] And euery of hem in hure hond a whit coluere bere. Ladies fele and faire y nogh also ther were *Ar.* [6] *Postremo peracta processione, tot organa, tot cantus in utrisque fiunt templis, ut præ nimia dulcedine milites, qui aderant, nescirent quod templorum prius adirent* Galfr. Mon. [7] So noble and mery was the song and melody that tyde, That men thoghte also murye as thegh hii hadde be nome, Ne hii ne wiste to whather churche meryer it was to come *Ar.* [8] His meyne, *Ar.*

Vor

Vor [1] hii hulde þe olde vsages, þat men wyþ men were
Bẏ hem sulue, and wymmen bẏ hem sulue al so þere.
þo hii were echone ẏ set, as ẏt to her stat bycom,
Kaẏ, kẏng of Aungeo, a þousend kynȝtes nome
Of noble men, ẏ cloþed in ermẏne echone
[2] Of on sẏwete, and seruede [3] as þẏs noble feste a non.
Bedwer þe botẏler, kẏng of Normandẏe,
Nom al so in ẏs half a uaẏr companye
[4] Of on sẏwẏte, vorto seruy of þe botelerẏe.
Bẏ uore [5] þe [6] quene ẏt was also of al suche corteẏsẏe,
Vorto telle al þe noblẏe þat þer was ẏ do,
þey mẏ tonge were of [7] stel, me ssolde noȝt dure þerto.
Wẏmmen ne kepte of no kynȝt as in druerẏ,
Bote he were in armẏs wel ẏprowed, & atte leste þrẏe.
þat made, [8] lo! þe wẏmmen þe [9] chastore lẏf lede,
And þe kẏnȝtes þe stalwordore, & þe betere in her dede.
Sone after þys noble [10] mete, as rẏȝt was of such tẏde,
þe kẏnȝtes atẏled hem aboute in eche sẏde,

---

[1] *Antiquam namque consuetudinem curiæ servantes Britones, consueverant mares cum maribus, mulieres cum mulieribus festivos dies celebrare separatim* Galfr. Mon. [2] Alle in ou sewte, to serue the feste a non *Ar.* [3] *Malim*, at. [4] Of a nother siwte, to serue the butelrie *Ar.* [5] *In palatio quoque reginæ innumerabiles ministri, diversis ornamentis induti, obsequium suum præstabant, morem suum exercentes. Quem si omnino describere pergerem, nimiam prolixitatem historiæ generarem* Galfr. Mon. [6] Quene eke also ther was such courtaisye, *Ar.* [7] Stel, hit nolde suffice ther to. Wommen tolde of no knyght tho as in loue and druerye, But he were in armes preued atte leste thrye *Ar.* [8] Tho the *Ar.* [9] Chaster lyf to lede, *Ar.* [10] Mete, ech wende in his syde, Knyghtes and squyers eke, and buskede hem to ryde, In the feldes and in the medes *Ar.*

In feldes and in medys to preue her bachelerye.
Somme wyþ lance, some wyþ suerd, wyþ oute vylenye,
Wyþ pleyynge at [1] tables, oþer atte chekere,
Wyþ castynge oþer wyþ ssetynge, [2] oþer in som ozyrt manere.
And [3] wuch so of eny game adde þe maystrye,
[4] þ kyng hem of ys zyfteþ dude large corteysye.
Vpe þe alurs of þe castles þe layde þanne stode,
And byhulde þys noble game, & wyche kyngts were god.
Alle þe þre hexte dawes ylaste þys nobleye
In halles and in veldes, of mete and eke of pleye.
þys men come þe verþe day byuore þe kynge þere,
And he zef hem large zyftys, euere as hii wurþe were.
Byssoprýches and cherches [5] clerkes he zef somme,
And castles and tounes kynztes þat were ycome."
Seyn Dauid was þe kynge's vncle, hym he [6] zef aday
þe herchebyssopryche of Carleon, as he wel bysay.
Vor he was suyþe holy mon, [7] and munstre let rere,
þat me clepuþ in Walys Seyn Dauid, & zut he lyþ þere.

---

[1] The tables, & the eschekere, *Ar.* [2] Othur som othur manere. What man of any game hadde *Ar.* [3] *Quicumque ergo ludi sui victoriam adeptus erat, ab Arturo largis muneribus ditabatur* Galfr. Mon. [4] *Sic Codex* Harleyanus; *at in Ar. plane*, The kyng hem yaf yiftes grete, & dude hem courtaisye. An hegh vpon alures ladies gonne by holde, To waite ho so dude best, & most was of tolde. [5] Alle fulle fower daies last thus hure pleye In valeis aboute, and faire feldes, & mete eke of nobleye. The v. [6] day come thes men bifore the kyng there, *Ar.* [5] To clerkes he yaf sone, Castelles to knyghtes eke, as best hym thoght to done. *Ar.* [6] Yaf that day *Ar.* [7] And let a munstre rere In the cite of Meneve, and lith nogh buryed there *Ar.*

þe bỳssoprỳche of Wỳnchestre a god mon he ȝef þo,
Of Chychestre anoþer, and ȝut oþer mo.
þe wule þe kỳng and ỳs men aboute þỳs nobleye were,
þer come in tuelf olde men mỳd [1] euene pas þere,
Men of wel vayr semblant, and branchỳs hii bere
Of olyue, as in sygne þat hii of pes were.
A letter [2] he toc þe kyng, þat þo he yt let rede.
Fram þe cenatour of Rome hii come, and þys seỳde:
" Lucie, þe cenatour of Rome, to Arture þe kyng,
" [3] Send, þat he [4] ofte serued aþ, wyþ oute gretỳnge.
" Muche [5] me wondreþ and ouer muche of þy reuerỳe,
" Of þyn cruel luþer hede, and of þỳn robberỳ;
" And namelỳche of þỳn vn rygt ychabbe gret dedeỳn,
" þat þou to þe noble stede of Rome dest mỳd al þỳ mayn.
" And þat þou nelt [6] hỳm ỳknowe, ne do þyn seruage,
" Ne vnder stonde hou luþer yt ys, to [7] do enỳ outrage
" [8] Oþer wernỳ out þe noble stude, þat al þe world [9] abueþ to.
" Vor þyn auncetres dude al, þat we þe hoteþ do.
" And þou, as in gret despyt of so noble seỳnorỳe,
" [10] Ne at halst noȝt one þy truage, ac myd þy reuerye

[1] *Moderatis passibus* Galfr. Mon. [2] Hii toke to the kyng, and he than let hit rede. Fro Lucỳe the senatour hit come, and thus hit sede: " Lucie senatour *Ar.* [3] Sendeth, as he hath deseruyd, with oute gretyng. Muche wonder we haueth of thi reuerỳe, *Ar.* [4] *F.* of deserued aþ. [5] *Admirans vehementer admiror superbiam tuæ tirannidis protervia. Admiror, inquam, & injuriam, quam Romæ intulisti, recolligens indignor* Galfr. Mon. [6] Hure *Ar.* [7] Do hure eny *Ar.* [8] Or greuy oght that noble stede, *Ar.* [9] Boweth *Ar.* [10] Noght only at halst hure truage, but dost also roberie, By reuynst Fraunce and othur londes, *Ar.*

" Rauysest France & oþer londes, þat bý Weste beþ echon,
" þat bere [1] truage to Rome, & þoru þe ne doþ noȝt non.
" Vor þanne of þe gret despýt þe noble court of Rome
" Ryȝt wole habbe of þe ýwys, þat þou hym dest ýlome.
" Amydde haruest we þe setteþ day of þýs nexte ȝere,
" At Rome vorto ansuerýe, and þat þou be þe sulf þere
" We þe hoteþ, vorto auonge þat þe court þe wole deme.
" And bote þou do [2] of one þyng nym wel ȝode ȝeme,
" þat ýchylle my sulf þe seche out, & þoru suerd restore
" Al þat þý reuerýe vs aþ by nome, and more.
þýs was a prout mandement, [3] and an heýnol dede.
þe kyng adde þerof gret despýt, þo he hurde ýt rede.
Vor þe vorste truage, þat he sende to Rome, of seluer oþer of golde,
þat was Lucýe's bod aslawe, burýe ȝyf hii ýt wolde.
The kyng cluped ac noȝt vor þan ys conseyl wel sone,
To ansuerýe to þýs [4] mandement, wat were best to done.
Cadour, erle of Cornwayle, stod somdel and lou,
And verste seyde ys auýs mýde gode wylle ýnou.

---

[1] Som tyme truage to Rome, & nogh bereth hii non. And for this ilke grete despit the noble Court of Rome Ryght wole haue of, that thugh hast mysdo ofte y lome *Ar.* [2] Of that y seighe take ryght nogh good yeme, Elles my self y wole the seche, and thurgh my sweord restore Al that thugh vs hast bynome, and yut ther to wel more *Ar.* [3] And gret manassynge. The kyng hadde foul scorn of this ilke bostynge. For in stede of truage of siluer and of goolde He sende hem Lucie's body, burie hit ho so wolde *Ar.* [4] Ilke lettre, what *Ar.*

" Syre,

" Syre," he sede, " her [1] bỳuore ychabbe ỳbe sore drad,
" Laste [2] þat ỳdel lyf, þat þỳne men [3] abbỳþ ỳ lad,
" Nou monỳ day out of los and in sleuþe hem brozte.
" Vor wanne men beþ al ydel, þat er bataỳles sozte,
" Her ỳdelnesse hem ssal brỳnge to synne lecherye,
" To tauerne, and [4] to sleuþe, and to hasarderỳe.
" Hyt ỳs neỳ vỳf zer, þat we abbỳþ ỳlyued in such vyce,
" Vor we [5] nadde nozt to done, and in suche delỳce.
" And þer wỳþ [6] nỳs nozt God ỳpaỳd, þer vore he aþ ybrozt
" þe Romeỳns [7] in suche wỳlle, þat we nere to ỳdel nozt,
" Ac þat we come to vr stat azen of vre verste prowesse,
" Lest we felle in dedlych sunne vor vr ỳdelnỳsse.
þo he adde ysed ỳs auỳs, & oþere hỳm bere wỳtnysse,
[8] þe kyng Arture sede ys al in gladnesse.
" ze louerdỳnges," he sede, " þat ychabbe in conseỳl & in batayle
" ỳ fonded as vor azte men, þat me nolde neuere faỳle,
" Doþ nou [9] al zoure wyt þerto, me wel to consayle,
" [10] And ych hopỳe we ssolle þe lasse recche of þe Romeyns tayle.

---

[1] *Huc usque in timore fueram, ne Britones, longa pace quietos, otium, quod ducunt, ignavos faceret, famamque militiæ, qua ceteris gentibus clariores censentur, in eis omnino deleret* Galfr. Mon. [2] The ydel *Ar.* [3] Longe haueth y lad, Nogh out of hure good loos in to slouth hem broghte *Ar.* [4] To drunkenesse, & othur hasardrie *Ar.* [5] Hadde noght to done, and haue had oure delice *Ar.* [6] Is noght God a payd, *Ar.* [7] In to such a will, that we be ydel noght *Ar.* [8] Than seide kyng Arthur in murthe & in gladnesse. " Ye lordynges, that y preued haue in consail and bataille, And as noble men founde, & wolde me neuere faille, *Ar.* [9] *Facilius ergo inquietationem Lucii tolerare poterimus, si communi studio præmeditati fuerimus, quibus modis eam debilitare*

" Vor me þencheþ myd vn ryȝt hii [1] esseþ vs truage.
" Vor [2] July Cesar yt nom vorst myd strengþe & myd outrage,
" þoru descord & contek, þat bytuene vr elderne vas þo.
" He nom verst myd vnryȝt, & broȝte þat lond in wo.
" And þyng þat ys myd strengþe ynom, hou myȝte yt be myd ryȝt?
" Vor he [3] naþ reson non, bote robberye and myȝt.
" [4] And [5] myd as reson we mowe of hem esse ywys.
" Bere he þanne þe oþer truage, þat bynebe ys.
" Vor July and oþer emperours, hii seggeþ, com þer to,
" þat emperors were of Rome. ych may segge al so,

---

tare instituerimus. Quam non multum timendam nobis existimo, cum irrationabili causa exigat tributum, quod ex Britannia habere desiderat Galfr. Mon. [10] And casteth, hogh to make a knotte in the Romaynes taille *Ar.*

[1] Axeth *Ar.* [2] Julius Cesar alther furst tok hit with outrage, For a contek that bytwyne oure eldrene was tho. He nom hit furst with vnright, & broght the lond in wo. That thyng, that with wrong is nome, hogh myght hit be with right? *Ar.* [3] Hath no reson to, but *Ar.* [4] And with also good reson we mowe of hem y wis Abere thilke truage, that as thyng robbed is. For by Julie and other emperours hii thenketh come ther to, And we in the same manere may seye also, That oure auncetres of this lond som tyme wonne Rome, As Belyn & Brenne, noble men that ye haue hurd of y lome, *Ar.* [5] *Quoniam ergo id, quod injustum est, à nobis præsumpsit exigere, consimili ratione petamus ab illo tributum Romæ, & qui fortior supervenerit ferat quod habere exoptavit. Nam si, quia Julius Cæsar, ceterique Romani reges Britanniam olim subjugaverunt, vectigal nunc debere sibi ex illa reddi decernit, similiter nunc ego censeo, quod Roma mihi tributum reddere debet, quia antecessores mei eam antiquitus obtinuerunt. Belinus etenim &c.* Galfr. Mon.

" þat

" þat myn auncetres of þýs lond wyle wonne Rome,
" As Belý þe noble kyng, þat ȝe abbeþ ýhurd ý lome,
" And Constantyn, Eleyne sone, [1] hii wuteþ wel Rome nom,
" And suþþe Maxymýan, and of [2] beyre blod ych com,
" Mýn auncetres [3] were alle þre, & kynges of þýs londe,
" [4] And wonne þe emperýe of Rome, & boþe adde an honde.
" Of [5] France & [6] oþer londes, þat we wonne myd vr myȝte,
" We mowe segge, þat we [7] nabbeþ to ansuerýe nozt myd rýȝte.
" Wanne hii for soke ýs, & for slewþed, & to non defence ne come,
" þo we þoru chyualerýe out of her poer ýs nome.
" Vor hii ne mowe nozt segge, þat with treson, oþer stalþe, ýt were do.
" Vor wýþinne nýe ȝere non of hem ne com enes þer to.
Howwel, kyng of þe oþer Brýtaýne, þo he hurde þýs he sede:
" þeý ech of vs sete aldaý, þe beste red to rede,
" Betere ansuere ne ssolde we fýnde, [8] þan ge abbeþ nou ysed.
" þere vore we aȝte honoury wel of so noble wýt þý red.

[1] Ye witeth *Ar.* [2] *F* heyre. *Nam* hure *in Ar.* [3] Hii were alle *Ar.* [4] Hii wonne themperie of Rome, & tho hii hitte hadde an honde *Ar.* [5] *Censetisne ergo vectigal ex Romanis petendum? De Gallia autem sive collateralibus insulis non est respondendum, cum illas diffugeretur defendere, quando easdem potestatis eorum subtrahebamus* Galfr. Mon. [6] Of other londes, that we wonne with vnryght *Ar.* [7] Ne mogh answere ther to with ryght. When they forsoke and for sleuthede, and to non defence come, Tho we thurgh chiualrye out of hure hondes hit nome. For hii ne mogh seye with treson, ne with stalthe, hit was do, For thes ix. yer non of hem ones come ther to *Ar.* [8] Than that that ye han sede. Wel oughte the man honoured be, that is so noble of rede *Ar.*

" Vor

" Vor [1] ȝyfwe in þys manere wendeþ, we ne faỳleþ [2] anone wyse,
" þat we ne ssolde abbe þe maystre, wanne we defendeþ oure franchise.
" And wo so anoþer monne's [3] god bynyme wole myd vnryȝt,
" Myd ryȝt he may ys [4] owe lese, ȝyf þe defendor aþ þe myȝte.
" And [5] wanne þe Romeyns aboute beþ, vs to bynyme vr ryȝte,
" Wyþ reson we [6] wolle hem bynyme, ȝyf we mowe to gadere fyȝt.
" Nou yt worþ [7] ȝended, þat Sybyle þe sage sede by uore,
" þat þer ssold of Brutayne þre men be ybore,
" þat ssold wynne þe emperye of Rome, [8] & þe tueye ydo yt ys,
" As of Bely and Constantyn. & þou art þe prydde ywys.
" Hye [9] nou vaste vorto auonge þys noble honour al,
" To brynge hem vnder þe, [10] þat þe wolde make her þral.
" Hye [11] nou to anhansy vs alle, & ynelle noȝt be byhynde,
" Ten þousend hors [12] ywrye, ych þe wolle fynde.

---

[1] *Nam si, juxta prædictam rationem, Romam adire volueris, non dubito quin triumpho potiamur, dum libertatem nostram tueamur; dum juste ab inimicis nostris exigamus, quod à nobis injuste ipsi repetere inceperunt. Quicumque enim sua alteri eripere conatur, merito, quæ sua sunt, per eum, quem impetit, amittit* Galfr. Mon. [2] In non wise, To haue the maistre, in defence of oure owene franchise *Ar.* [3] Good taketh with vnright, *Ar.* [4] Owene leose, & the defendour haue myght *Ar.* [5] Sut. the the Romeynes beth aboute to reue vs of oure right, *Ar.* [6] Wolleth hem hure bynyme, & to gederes fight *Ar.* [7] Fulfuld, that *Ar.* [8] Of the two do hit is, *Ar.* [9] The faste for to *Ar.* [10] That wolde the make thral *Ar.* [11] Blyue to a vaunce vs alle, y wole noght be by hynde, *Ar.* [12] Heled ther to y wole the fynde *Ar.*

Aunsel,

Aunsel, þat þe kyng adde ymad kyng of Scotlonde,
Glad y nou was [1] myd þys word, & vor joye held vp ys honde.
" Vor þat," he sede, " ychabbe yhurd, so gret joye ychabbe and blys,
" [2] þat y nabbe non tonge, þat mowe al yt ssewe ywys.
" Vor al, þat we abbyþ of londes and of kynges byuore
" y wonne myd chyualerye, yt þynch me al vor lore,
" Bote we of Romeyns be awreke & of Saxons al so,
" þat vre elderne er þys so muche ssame abbeþ ydo.
" And nou þe tyme ys icome, þat we mowe ben awreke,
" So glad ycham, [3] þat y not, wat vor joye speke.
" Vor y ne wylnede neuere þyng so muche, as ych do her blod,
" [4] Ou! Jhesu! þat þulke day worþ me suete and god.
" Suete wolleþ þe wounded be to me, & noþyng stronge:
" Suete wole ek my deþ be, zyf ych ym auonge
" Vorto awreke [5] hor faderes, & to holde vp oure franchyse,
" And vorto [6] anansy our kyng, as we ssolde in al wyse.
" Seche [7] we out þulke halue men, ne abyde we nozt to longe,
" þat [8] we after her wrecche deþ her londes auonge.
" And ycholle our ost eche, and our bachelerye,
" Wyþoute archers & vot men, wyþ tuo þousend hors y wrye.

---

[1] For that word *Ar.* [2] That I haue no tonge, to telle hogh joyful my herte is *Ar.* [3] That I ne wot, what *Ar.* [4] Me thinketh, to haue to do o day with hem wold do me good. Softe wolde the woundes be to me, and no thyng stronge: Swete wolde also be my deth, yf y hym shal a fonge *Ar.* [5] Oure *Ar.* [6] A vaunce *Ar.* [7] *Aggrediamur igitur semiviros illos, & aggrediendo perstemus, ut, devictis ipsis, eorum honoribus cum læta potiamur victoria* Galfr. Mon. [8] We mogh, when they beth dede, hure faire londes fonge *Ar.*

Of

Of men here of þýs lond þe kýng adde þer wyþoute
Sýxtý þousend hors [1] y wrye, & þat was a uaýr route.
þe kynges of sýx ýles ek, as Norþewey & Yrlonde,
Godlond and Orcadas, Denemarch and Yslonde.
Sene kynges ek aboute Fraunce, as Brutayne & Normandýe,
Gascoýne and Aungeo, and al so Pýcardye,
Of Peyto, and of oþer tuo, and [2] dozze pers of France.
Among hem alle [3] hii were sýker al, wýþoute balance,
Of an hondred þousend hors, & four score þousend þerto,
And þre [4] sousend wel ywrýe, & tuo hondered also,
Wyþoute fot men, þat were so vale, þat þer nas of non ende,
þýs was a uaýr compaýnýe, þoru al þe world to wende.
þo þýs was sýker & byspeke, þe kyng hem het [5] echom,
þat hii wende ech in ýs syde to her contreýe anon,
And þat hii alammasse daý mýd her poer come
Echone to Barbesflet, and þes veage nome.
þe kýng bed þe messagers, þat hii þe senatour sede,
þat he wolde to Rome come, ac no truage hým to lede,
Ac vorto conquerý of hým þulke sulue seruage,
þat hii askýeþ of hym [6] vyllýche, and mýd outrage,

[1] Y heled, and that *Ar.* [2] Dusze *Ar.* [3] Syker hii were, with oute variaunce. An hundred thusend hors he led, of fotmen was non ende. Ther was a faire companye thurgh al the wordle to wende. Tho that al this was byspoke, and syker were alle at on, Euery man to his contre highede sone anon, I charged a Lammasse day with hure power hii come Euery man to Barbefleet, and this viage nome. Thanne to the messagers answerd Arthur the kyng, That to Rome he wolde come and no truage bryng, But forto wynne ther of hem thulke self seruage, *Ar.* [4] *Sic.* [5] *L.* echon. [6] Spitously, *Ar.*

And

And þat he wolde to Rome come þe day þat hii hym sette
[1] þe rygte abbe weþer so mygte, wanne hii hem to gadere mette.
þus [2] departede [3] þo" þe court, and [4] eche in ys syde
garked hem agen þe day, vor hii [5] mygte leng abyde."

LUCYE þe senatour, þo he wuste þys maundement,
Sone he adde wyde aboute ys messagers [6] ysend,
Vorto gadery to ys help al [7] þat poer of Rome,
So þat agen Lammasse alle þes kynges to hym come,
Of Affryc and of Grece, of Spayne and of Syrye,
Of Medes and of Perces, [8] of [9] Ytours, of Lybye,
Of Egypt and of Babylonye, and of Frugye,
And al so of [10] Mesopot, of Bytynie, of Boecye.
Alle þes kynges, and al oþer þat were by Este Rome
And al þat to Rome ssolde seruyse, to hym come,
So þat fourty þousend hors & syxty hondred also
þer were, [11] þo hii gare were, þys chyualerye to do.
Kyng [12] Arture bytok Modred, ys syster sone, ych wene
[13] þys lond to loke, þo he wende, & Gouernewaur þe quene.

---

[1] And ryght haue ho so myght, when hii to gederes mette *Ar.* [2] *Digrediuntur ergo legati, digrediuntur reges, digrediuntur proceres, &, quod eis præceptum fuerat, perficere non differunt* Galfr. Mon. [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Euery man wende on his syde, And euery man to holde his day a rayde hym thanne to ryde *Ar.* [5] *F.* ne mygte leng. [6] Sent *Ar.* [7] The power *Ar.* [8] Of Tharce and of Libie *Ar.* [9] *Iturœorum* Galfr. Mon. [10] Mesopotanie *Ar.* [11] Tho hii were alle redy, this *Ar.* [12] *Composito igitur adventu ipsorum, Arturus, Modredo nepoti suo conservandam Britanniam atque Gannumaræ* [Sic Codex MS. quem mihi perquam benigne

Vor he truste to [1] hym mest, as me þyngþ he wel ꝫte,
[2] And, as ꝫe ssolde her after yhure, hii broꝫte hym suþþe to naꝫte.
Myd al ys ost of þys londe to Souþhamptone he wende,
And dude hym [3] in see, myd wynd þat God hym sende.
þo he come ver in þe see, and he aslepe was,
[4] At tyme of mydnyꝫt of þe nyꝫt, hym mette a greuous cas.
Hym þoꝫte he seȝ a gryslych beore [5] fle in þe eyr anheȝ,
[6] þat alle þe þauenes quakede of þe flyꝫt hym þoꝫte he seȝ.
And an dreduol dragon fram þe West come myd hym to fyꝫte,
þat [7] þe leom of ys eyen al þe contreye [8] lyꝫte.
An þe dragon [9] velde þulke bere, & to grounde hym caste.
[10] An noþer dragon com fram Est, & myd þulke dragon faꝫt vaste."
þo þe kynge awok, he told ys meyne of þys cas.
And some byþoꝫte, and tolde wat þe [11] bytokne was,

---

nigne donavit amicissimus Gravesius, licet alii *Guennoveram* & *Guenheram*, vel *Gonnoram* sive *Gouernwauram* appellent] *reginæ committens, cum exercitu suo portum Haȳmonis adivit, ubi tempestivo ventorum flatu mare ingressus est* Galfr. Mon. [13] Hys lond to kepe, tho he wende, & also Gonnore the quene *Ar.*

[1] *F.* hem. [2] Ac, as ye schulle her after hure, to most sorwe he hym broght *Ar.* [3] Forth in the see, *Ar.* [4] Euene a boute mydnyght, hym mette a wonder cas *Ar.* [5] Fle out of the Est an hegh, That alle men, that negh hym were, quaked, whan they hym segh. A grisly dragon fro by Weste *Ar.* [6] *Cujus murmure tota littora intremebant* Galfr. Mon. [7] Thurꝫh the lightnesse of his eyen *Ar.* [8] A light *Ar.* [9] Ouercome this bere, *Ar.* [10] *Loco hujus versus hæc habet Ar.* And ded left hym in the feld, this Arthur sore a gaste *Ar.* [11] Bitoknyng *Ar.*

þat þe dragon of bỳ Weste bytokned þe kỳng Arture,
And þe beore som foul geant, þat me ssolde of ỳhure:
[1] þat he ssolde ouercome þe geant; & þe dragon of bỳheste
Bỳtokned þe emperour of Rome, & þe bataỳle of the beste
Ouercome bỳtokned þat þe Romeỳns ssolde al so.
Ac þe kỳng ne jugede noȝt, þat ỳt ssolde be so ỳ do,
þer after hii come" to Barbesflet, & pỳȝte þer by sỳde
Her tentes and pauỳlons, her compaỳnỳe to abỳde.
Under þat þer com word to þe kyng Arture,
þat þe meste geant, þat mon ssolde of ỳhure,
Out of þe lond of Spaỳne com, & adde [2] ynome" Eleỳne,
þat was so vaỳr, þe kỳnge's nece Howwel of Brutayne,
And vpe þe mount of Seỳn Mỳchel ỳre lede atte laste,
And þe kynȝtes of þe lond sỳwed after vaste,
Ac hii ne myȝte nout aȝen hỳm do. Vor [3] weþer so hii wende
Bỳ water, oþer bỳ londe, anon rỳȝt he hem ssende,
[4] Mỳd gleỳue oþer mỳd roches, and uewe alỳue he let.
And some he mỳd strengþe nom, & al quyc hem fret.
[5] Al stylleỳche wỳþinne nỳȝt þe kỳnȝ nom ys boteler
Bedwer, þat nomon yt wste, and Gaỳ ys panyter,

---

[1] Some seide also, that the kyng sholde with honour Fighte er longe were with the Cenatour, And seide, the Cenatour bi tokned the best of by Est, And Arthur to the dragon that com fro by West. Ther after hii come *Ar.* [2] Rauesshed *Ar.* [3] *Nam sive mari, sive terra illum invadebant, aut naves eorum ingentibus saxis obruebat, aut diversorum generum telis interimebat. Sed & plures capiebat, quos semivivos devorabat* Galfr. Mon. [4] With speres & stones also, fewe a lyue he let *Ar.* [5] Al stillely, whan hit was nyght, Arthur clepede a part Bedwer his boteler, and Kay his stiward, And two squyers with hem also, that he muche triste,

(Vor he truste to hem meste) and wende vorþ as alone,
Vor [1] he volde to such geant verdes lede vone
Vor o bodẏ, as we seyþ, and so muche ek he truste
To hym sulue & to hardẏssẏ. Ys men wanne hii ẏt wuste,
þo he come toward þẏs hul, a gret fur þeruppe he seẏ,
And anoþer vppe a lasse hul, þat þer bẏsẏde was neẏ.
Nou [2] nuste hii" to soþe, vppe weþer þe geant were;
Bedwer he sende vorto aspẏe stẏlelẏche verst þere.
Verst to þe lasse hul [3] mẏd [4] assẏp, þat he vond,
He wende al bẏ water, vor he ne [5] mẏȝt noȝt alonde.
þo [6] he com [7] vp þe hul an heẏ, he hurde atte bẏgynnẏg
Of a womman a deoluol crẏ, and a pẏtos wepẏnge."
Verst he was sore adrad, þat þe geant were þere neẏ,
And naþeles he [8] hente herte, & drou more an heẏ.
[9] þo vond he [10] ȝere þet fur, and a lute þer bẏsyde
[11] An [12] burẏels al nywe ẏmad, & a womman, þat so crẏde,

---

triste, And wende forth al priuely, that his ost hit nyste. Whan thei negh the hulles come, a fure uppon they segh, And vppon the lasse hulle a nother that were somdel negh. Than nuste hii *Ar.*

[1] *Tanta namque virtute præ-valendo negligebat contra talia monstra exercitum ducere, cum & suos hoc modo inanimaret, & solus ad illa destruenda sufficeret* Galfr. Mon. [2] *Dubitantes illico super quem eorum habitasset gigas, Beduerum dirigunt, ut certitudinem rei exploraret* Galfr. Mon. [3] In a bot, that he fond, *Ar.* [4] *Navicula* Galfr. Mon. [5] Myght by lond *Ar.* [6] *Cujus [montis] dum cacumen incepisset ascendere, audito desuper femineo ululato* [Sic Codex ille, quem mihi dono dedit amicissimus Gravesius, non *ululatu*] *primo inhorruit, quia dubitavit monstrum adesse* Galfr. Mon. [7] Up to the hulle an hegh, at the bygynnyng, Of a womman he hurde a cry pitously playnyng *Ar.* [8] Tok good herte, *Ar.* [9] Tho he fond ther a fuyr, and a lytel *Ar.* [10] *Sic quidem Codex (quem sequimur) Harleyanus, pro quo alii (ut*

in

Alner holded sytte þere, and anon, so heo ẏ seẏ
þe kẏng Bedwer, heo sẏȝte, and bẏgan to grede an heẏ,
" Alas! alas! þou wrecche mon, wuch mẏs auenture
" Haþ þe ẏbrozt in to þẏs stede, alas! hou ssalt on dure?
" Alas! þe pẏnes, þat þou ssalt sone þolẏe, deþ!
" þe pẏte, þat ẏchabbe of þe, þoru out mẏn herte geþ.
" Vor þys verbroẏde geant, abbe he of the an sẏȝt,
" þẏ faẏre bodẏ so gentẏl vor suolwe he wole to nẏȝt.
" Vor he wole sone come þulke verbroẏde pece,
" þat nom Helene, noble maẏde, kẏng Howwel nece,"
" þat ẏchabbe nou rẏȝt her ẏbured, was norẏse ẏch was,
" þat was al mẏ soule, & al mẏ lyf, ẏch wene non such nas.

---

in Ar.) þer (*sive* þere) *forsitan malint. Sed* ȝere (*quod* paratum *notat*) *retineo.* [11] A burieles newe made, & the womman, that cride, Al for olded & for wope, and tho heo segh Bedewer, " Lord haue mercy," sheo sayde, " on the man, " what dost though nouth her? " Alas!" sheo seide, " though " wrecche man, what mys a " venture Hath broght the to " this stede, hogh shalt though " longe endure? The pite, " that y haue of the, thurgh " my herte it geth. Sory I " am, that though shalt suffre " sone deth. For this foule " Geant, haue he of the a- " syght, Thi body, that so " gentil is, wole sone be to " twyght. For hider he wole " come right sone that ilke " foule pece, That rauesshede " faire Eleyne, kyng Howele's " nece *Ar.* [12] *Inspexit quoque tumulum recenter factum, & juxta eum quandam anum flentem & ejulantem. Quæ ut eum aspexit, conspectum fletu impediente in hunc modum profata est:* " *O infelix* " *homo, quod infortunium te* " *in hunc locum subvectat?* " *O! inenarrabiles mortis* " *pœnas passure! miseret me* " *tui, miseret, quia tam detes-* " *tabile monstrum florem ju-* " *ventutis tuæ in hac nocte* " *consumet* Galfr. Mon.

" [1] And [2] þe wule he wolde þys tendre þyng wemmy foule
ỳ nou,
" And heo ne myȝte ỳt soffry noȝt, mỳd lecherỳe he ỳr slou.
" þo eode he to me olde [3] werche, to endỳ ỳs [4] floule cas,
(" To wytnesse God ỳch take, þat aȝen my wylle ỳt was)
" And dude bỳ me ỳs lecherye, alas! þulke stounde!
" þer uor fle þou hendy mon, vor sỳker be þou ỳ founde,
" Wanne he comþ bỳ me to lỳgge, he wole þe lỳme mele
" To drawe and vorsuolwe, perauntre at one mele.
Bedwer" bỳgan to comfortỳ þe womman in þe place,
And bỳ het ỳre bote of hyre wo bỳtỳme, þoru Gode's grace,
And wende aȝen to þe kyng, and tolde al þys cas.
þe kỳng was sorỳ, þo he wuste, þat [5] þet maỳde aslawe was,
[6] Ac anauntre he þoȝte hym do, & dude hỳm [7] in weỳe,
þỳs clene maỳde vorto [8] awreke, and ỳs felawes beỳe.

---

[1] And as this foule Geant wold haue leye hure by, This ilk faire mayde he slogh thurgh his lechery. Tho yede he to me, olde wrecche, his lechorye to fulfille, I take God to witnesse hit was a ye my wille, So that euere wole, whan hym lust with me haue a do. And thus I lyue in this penance, and dury moch wo. Wel sone he wole come her to me, and if though her be founde, Though shalt sey waillaway, & curse the harde stounde. Bedewer *Ar.*. [2] *Namque, recepto infra tenerrimum pectus timore, dum eam nefandus ille amplecteretur, vitam, diuturniore luce dignam, finivit. Ut igitur illam, quæ erat mihi altera spes, altera vita, altera dulcedo jocunditatis, fœdo coitu suo deturpare nequivit, detestanda venere succensus, mihi invitæ (Deum & senectutem meam testor) violentiam ingessit. Fuge, dilecte mi, fuge, &c.* Galfr.Mon. [3] *L.* wrecche. [4] *L.* foule. [5] The *Ar.* [6] In a venture *Ar.* [7] In his weye, *Ar.* [8] A wreke, with his felawes tweye *Ar.*

Ar

Ar hii come vpe [1] þys hul, arst he was ycome
þys grysslyche geant, & hadde an vatte baru ynome,
And yspyted hym þoru out myd an yrene spyte,
And rostede in þys grete fure, to abbe þe folle byte.
Artur bed ys [2] felawes, talate hym yworþe alone,
Ac zyf hii seye hym in nede, þat hii ne made targynge none.
Kyng Artur hym blessede, and baldelyche ynou
Toward þys zryslyche [3] fourme myd gode herte hym drou.
þe [4] zeant, þo he sey hym come, bygan ys mace adrawe,
þat tueye stalwarde men ne ssolde nozt [5] enes wawe.
Toward [6] þe heued þe kyng he smot, ac he hente myd ys sselde.
Ac zut he bryde aladoun, and wel harde yt velde.
Vor yt [7] þorte al þe hul myd þe stroc was astoned.
Artur was lyzt ynou, as he was ywoned.
He hupe vp, þo he wroþþe was, and ys suerd adrou,
And smot [8] þen ssrewe in the frount, myd gode ernest ynouz.

---

[1] To the hul, the Geant was come, And hadde broght a gret swyn, that he hadde nome, *Ar.* [2] Felawes tho to lete hym al one, *Ar.* [3] Gest with good hert he drogh *Ar.* [4] *Mox illos ut, nihil tale præmeditatus, aspexit, festinavit clavam suam sumere, quam duo juvenes vix à terra erigerent. Evaginavit ergo rex gladium suum, & prætenso clipeo, quantum velocitas sinebat, properabat eum præcedere, antequam clavam cepisset. At ille, non ignarus meditationis, jam ceperat eam, regemque interposito clipeo tanto conamine percussit, quod sonitus ictus & tota littora replevit, & aures ejusdem ultra modum hebetavit* Galfr. Mon. [5] Ones *Ar.* [6] The kynge's hed he smot, he hept hym with his shelde. But yut he bowede hit al doun, and wel harde hit felde. For hit ferde of the strok al the hulle was stoned. Arthur was light a fote, as he was woned. And lept vp, tho he wrathed was, *Ar.* [7] *F.* þozte. [8] The *Ar.*

Ac þe vel & fless was so [1] bard, & þe scolle hard & þycke,
þat, vor þeȝ ẏt ne come noȝt þoru, þe dunt nas noȝt wẏcke.
And ẏs mace he dude ek bẏtuene, [2] ac þet blod adoun wende
So vaste in eye, and in face, þat hym neȝ ablende.
þe kyng [3] hupte her & þer, & leẏde on euere vaste,
So strong vas þe ssrewe, þat no dunt ne myȝte hym adoun caste.
He vemde, & grunte, & stod aȝen, as ẏt were a strong bor,
þat euere wole aȝen þe stroc, vorte he ne maẏ namor.
þe kẏng smot euere her and þer, so þat atte laste
Ernest of herte he nome to hẏm, and adrou so vaste
Calẏburne, ẏs god suerd, þat he scolle clef a tuo,
þat þe suerd was al þer inne ẏhud, [4] þat braẏn ornout also.
þo [5] grẏslẏch ȝal þe ssrewe þo, þat grislẏch was ẏs bere.
He vel dounȝ as a gret ok, þat bẏneþe ẏcorue were,
þat ẏt þoȝte þat al hul mẏd þe vallẏnge ssok.
þo stod þe kẏng and lou, þeȝ ech lẏme hẏm ok,
Vor he was werẏ ẏfaȝt. Bedwer he het þere,
þat he [6] croune of þe grislẏch heued, & to castel bere.
So þat hii come to her felawes [7] in dawẏnge.
So noble [8] los nas neuere yhurd, as me bar þo þe kẏnge.

---

[1] Togh, and the scolle so thicke, That hit greuede hym noȝt ful muche, thegh he harde hitte *Ar.* [2] And yut the blod out wende, And ran in his eyen so, that hit hym muche a blende *Ar.* [3] Lepte *Ar.* [4] The brayn orn out also. So grisly yul the sherrewe, and grisly was his bere, And fel doun as an oke, that for torne were *Ar.* [5] *Exclamavit vero invisus ille, & velut quercus, ventorum viribus eradicata, cum maximo sonitu corruit* Galfr. Mon. [6] Smyte of *Ar.* [7] In the dawenynge *Ar.* [8] A los was neuere *Ar.*

Hẏs

Hys men truste þe bet to hym, and mony blessynge
He adde, vor he delyuerede men of an so voule þynge.
þo kyng Arture's men y come were echon,
Sone hii drowe hem toward France, vorto seche her fon.
Hem com tytynge, þat [1] emperour to France ycome was
Myd so gret folc hym to seche, þat such neuere yseye was.
þer of nas nogt þe kyng adrad, [2] ac vorþore he wende bysyde,
And bygan to [3] puthe ys pauylons, hym vorto abyde.
þe erl of Oxenford he nom, and anoþer erl al so,
And syre Waweyn, ys syster sone, þo al þys was ydo,
And to Lucye þe senatour in þys manere hem sende,
To hote hym, þat hastelyche out of France he wende,
Oþer þat he come [4] amorwe, bataylc vorto do,
Vorto cuþe, weþer adde beterre rygt þer to.
[5] þys noble kyngtes wende vorþ, and hete Lucye so
Vorto wende out of France, [6] oþer bataýle do.
Quyntylyan, ys neueu, ansucrede atten ende,
þat he nas nogt þuder ycome, out þanne vorto wende,
Ac to gouerny France, [7] þat of rygte of Rome ys,
And þat bote gulpynge and bost noþyng myd Brutons nys.
[8] Syre [9] Waweyn, þe gode kyngt, was þo wroþ ynou,
And among al þat folc hupte ner, and ys suerd adrou,

---

[1] Themperour *Ar.* [2] Ac wende ther by side *Ar.* [3] Picche his pauelones, themperour to a bide *Ar.* [4] On the morwe, *Ar.* [5] Thes *Ar.* [6] Or elles the bataille do. The senatour's cosyn Quincian answerede gayne attende, *Ar.* [7] That holden of Rome is, *Ar.* [8] Sire Wawayn the good knyght was tho wroth y nogh, God wot, And sodeynly drough his sweord, & of his hed he smot, And with that hed to hors he lepte, ther folwede hym y nowe

And smot of þat heued, & anon þat heued mỳd hỳm nom,
And wỳþ ỳs felawes to ỳs hors vor hem all ȝut he com.
Ac wat an horse, wat a vote, þe Romeỳns hỳm sỳwỳde ỳnouȝ,
Vorto awreke her gret maỳster, þat sỳre Waweỳn slou.
Gerỳn, erl of Carcoỳs, þat mỳd kyng Arture was,
He bỳturnede hỳm þo he seỳ þe Romeỳns luþer pas,
And on þoru out þat bodỳ he smot mỳd ỳs lance.
þe erl of Oxenford ek þoȝte of ys cheance,
And bỳturnde hỳm, & mỳd ỳs lance þoru þe þrote smot on.
And þus þỳs þre gode kỳnȝtỳs stured hem among her fon.
þo was þer on, þat het Marcel, þat fondede mỳd al ỳs maỳn,
Forto [1] awreke Quintỳlỳan, to sle syre Waweỳn.
Syre Waweỳn hỳm bỳturnde, & an stroc hỳm ȝef,
þat al [2] þat heued & þe brest [3] clanlỳche hỳm to clef.
"Go," he seỳde, "to [4] Quintỳlỳan in helle þer he ỳs,
"And seỳe hỳm, þat sỳre Waweỳn hỳm sende word þỳs,
"þat suche strokes þe Brutons conne ȝỳue ỳwys,
"[5] þat he seỳde, þat myd hỳm bote ȝulpỳnge & bost nỳs.
"Vor [6] ỳchot wel þuder þou ssalt, þỳn del þou myȝt hỳm ssewe.
Hỳs felawes he bed turne aȝen, [7] al þeỳ hii were vewe.

---

nowe Of Romeyns, to haue wreke hure maistre, & made gret a vowe. Geryn Erl of Chartres, that messager alsowas, Byturnde hym, whan he sey the Romaynes folwe such a paas, And thurgh the body on he smot with his good launce *Ar.* [9] *Iratus illico Gwalguanus, ense, quo accinctus erat, irruit in eum, &, ejusdem capite amputato, ad equos cum sociis regreditur. Insequuntur itaque Romani, partim pede, partim equis, ut concivem suum in legatos omni nisu diffugientes vindicent* Galfr. Mon.

[1] A venge Quincian, and quelle sire *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] Al clene he to claf *Ar.* [4] Quincian *Ar.* [5] For he seide, but ỳilpyng and bost with Brutons is *Ar.* [6] Ywot *Ar.* [7] Al thogh they *Ar.*

Hii turnde aȝen, & ech of hem atte leste one slou.
Ac euere þe Romeyns after sywede vaste ynouȝ.
So þat þer com out of an wode, as yt was byspeke,
An syx þousend of Brutons, her felawes vorto awreke.
Hii come out myd god eyr, and asaylede vaste
The Romeyns, & monye slowe, & somme adoun caste.
Þo to Petreye, a gret Romeyn, þys tydynge come,
Ten þousend of hors y wrye myd hym sone he nome,
Vorto helpe ys felawes, and þo oþer ne myȝte be,
Toward þe wode, fram [1] wanne he come, þe Brutons gonne to flc.
Ac þo hii come among narwe heggys, hii stode aȝen anon,
And turnde [2] þe breste aȝen, & vaste slowe her fon.
And þe Romeyns stod aȝen þo, þat þer was gret slaȝt.
[3] þe erl of Oxenford yseȳ, þat þys fare nas noȝt,
Þulke, þat he mest truste to, as a gret companye,
He bed hym sywy, trweiyche to do chyualerye.
Þo þys vorewarde was ymad, þoru out [4] ost he drou,
And percede þe ost þoru out, and vaste aboute slou.
So þat to her mayster Petreye he come,
And vaste, as he adde yþoȝt, by þe necke hym nome,
And [5] þraste hym adoun of ys hors, & hym sulue al so
[6] Anowarde hym vel adoun, as he adde yþoȝt to do."

[1] Whennes that hii come, *Ar.* [2] Toward hure enemyes, & faste leyde hem on *Ar.* [3] So that the Erl of Oxenford seygh hure fare was noght, *Ar. Adeo ut in Codice etiam Harleyano* was *pro* nas *forsitan sit repo.* *nendum.* [4] This *ost* *Ar.* [5] Wrast *Ar. quo modo etiam in Codice Harleyano potest legi, si litteram primam non pro þ sed pro p (nam in hoc codice eodem modo hæ litteræ effinguntur) habeas.*

þe Romeyns sturte [1] to// anon, her prince vp to rere,
þe Brutons to helpe [2] her alf, vaste aboute were.
þer was pultýng and ssouýng, and stroc mony one.
So þat þe Brutons atte laste, among alle her fon,
Mýd strengþe ladde vorþ Petreýe [3] her prince þere.
þo þe Romeýns were wyþ out chef, dýscomfortd hii were
[4] And to spradde hem her & þer, & þe oþere after vaste,
And slowe & despoýlede, and to grounde hem caste,
And astored hem mýd her armes, & þe hexte alýue nome,
So þat mýd gret prowesse to [5] þe// kyng Arture hii come.
[6] Welle þat þe kýng was þo glad, vor he nuste her of nozt,
Vaýre zýftýs he hym zef, and wel mo he adde yþozt.
þe prýsons amorwe to Parýs he sende,
To holde in prison, & wyþ [7] hým god condut þer wende.
þe Romeyns [8] þozte þýs wel, and, as þe maýstres hete,
Výftene þousend þer wende, þýs prisons vorto mete.
þo þe Brýtons come mýd þe prisons þar,
þe Romeyns come azen hem al anonýwar,
And wende hem to ssende anon, ac þe Brutons azen stode,
And defended hem wýle hii mýzte mýd wel stourdy mode.
So þat, vor defaute of help, hii were al ney ýssend.
Ac þo com þe duc of Peyto, as God adde þe grace ýsend,

---

beas. Fel doun euene vp hým, and ley ther bothe two *Ar.*

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] Hure lord, faste *Ar.* [3] The Romeynes prince there *Ar.* [4] And dis-parpled her & ther, the Brutones after hem faste, *Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] The kyng was tho glad y nogh, for he wiste ther of noght, *Ar.* [7] Hem *Ar.* [8] Thoght her on wel *Ar.*

Mýd

Mýd þre þousend hors ywrýe, & þer of was [1] y war.
þo were þe Brutons glad ýnou, & þen feld made bar,
And þe kyng of [2] Sýrge, and mony oþer hii slowe,
And louerdýnges, þat hii nome, to prison vaste hii drowe.
þo hii to þe kýng come, and ssewed her stalwardhede,
þe kýng wos þo glad ýnou, vor hym þozte he nadde no drede.

LUCÝE þe senatour in þozt was he sone,
In such ard cas as hým vel, wat were best to done.
So þat he þozte [3] stýllelýche, to a strong cýte wende,
Vorte þe emperour hým mýzte more poer sende.
Kýng Arture was her of ýwar, and þozte, ar he slepe,
Mýd al ýs poer bý þe weý somwar hým [4] kepe.
Vorþ he wende mýd ýs ost, and þo he was ý come
To þe stede, þer he wolde bee, cheueteyns he made somme;
As þe kyng of Cornwaýle, and of Scotlond al so,
Of Norþweýe, of Denemarch, of Bruteýne, of Peýto,
Of Gascoýne, of Normandýe, and erles zut þerto
Of Cartoýs, of Oxenford, of Leýcestre al so,
And sýre Wawein ýs neucu, flour of corteýsýe.
Hýs ost he delde a seuene, and in ech companýe
Výf þousend and výf hondred he dude of bacheleýe
And výfty and výue, and þat was vaýr seyngneýe.
þe eýzteþe ost to hým sulue he adde þer wyþoute,
Sýx þousend and sýx hondred þere were in þulke route

---

[1] *Id est*, he was aware of the trap of the Romans. *Nam*, "*Guithardus etenim, dux Pictavensium, comperto "dolo cum tribus milibus "advenerat*," *in* Galfr. Mon.

[2] Sirie, *Ar.* [3] Priuely, *Ar.* [4] To kepe *Ar.*

And

And syxtỳ and syxe, and ỳs dragon yrerd of golde,
As in stede of ỳs baner, and þanne, ȝỳf eny wolde
Come as to defense, þat ner wounded were,
Oþer werỳ, as in a castel recetted were þere.
þo he adde þỳs ost ỳset, he bỳgan hem rede,
And in þỳs bataỳle to conseỳly, and þes wordes seỳde:
" Myn [1] leue [2] priue kỳnȝtes, þat gode abbỳþ euere y be,
(" Vor non, as wỳde as ỳs þe worl, me ne ssal ȝoure per yseỳ)
" [3] ȝe abbeþ ỳ mad leuedỳ, Brutaỳne ȝoure owe lond,
" Of þrettene kỳnedoms, þat we abbeþ in vr hond.
" Vor þeỳ ȝe abbỳþ nou vỳf ȝer [4] of bataỳle vn vsed be,
" ȝut in ȝoure noble prowesse wel [5] durỳnde ỳch ȝou se,
" þat so gret folc of Romeỳns ȝe vewe mad ſle
" In to þỳs toun her bỳuore, þat sone wolleþ out te.
" And ȝe ssolle hem mete & quelle, as so monye ssepe, vor noȝt.
" Hii [6] wende wel her owe sleuþe on ȝou abbe y caȝt,
" Wanne hii wolde of ȝoure lond so vỳllỳche abbe truage
" And noble men, as ȝe beþ, brỳnge in so vyle seruage.
" Nuteþ hii noȝt þe chỳualerỳe, þat ȝe abbeþ in France ỳdo,
" In Norþweỳe, & in Denemarch, & in oþer londes al so,
" Of her stỳnkỳnge seruỳse þat ȝe abbỳþ out ỳbroȝt?
" þỳs alue men ȝe ssolle wỳnne wel lyȝtloker & vor noȝt.

---

[1] *Domestici mei, qui Brittanniam terdenorum regnorum fecistis dominam, vestræ congratulor probitati, quam nullatenus deficere, immo magis vigere, considero &c.* Galfr. Mon. [2] Preuede *Ar.* [3] Ye haueth wonne to Brutayne, that is our kynde lond, Thritty grete kỳngdomes, and beth nogh in oure hond *Ar.* [4] Out of bataille be, *Ar.* [5] Duryng *Ar.* [6] *Sane orientalium gentium segnitiam in vobis esse existimabant, dum patriam vestram facere tributariam, & vosmetipsos subjugare affectarent* Galfr. Mon.

" [1] Wuch

" [1] Wuch onouers wolde ȝou come, ȝyf ȝe hem ouercome?
" Vor we wolde anon þer after vorþ and wynne Rome.
" Of þe tresour, þat ȝou þanne [2] worþ," ne of tounes, ne of tours,
" Ne of londes, non ende ne worþ, ne of oþere honours.
þet folc bỳ hete hỳm þo echon, prest vor to be
To deỳe raþer in [3] feld, þan þe bataỳle fle.
Lucye þe cenatour al so in ys dede
Ordeỳned and radde ỳs ost, and þes wordes seỳde:
" Mỳne noble kỳnȝtỳs, to was poer and heste
" Alle londỳs ssolle abouỳe [4] to" by Weste and bỳ Este,
" þencheþ on ȝoure elderne, þat were of so noble mỳȝte,
" [5] Ne dradde noȝt to ssede her blod, vorto wynne her rỳȝt,
" Ac euere foȝte, [6] as hem nere deþ ỳssape none,
" An so hii wonne her seỳgnerye, & ouercome her fon,
" And adde seruage of al þe world, were ỳt nou wel bỳgonne,
" þat we lore þe nobleye, þat hii so noblỳche wonne?
An ern, in stede of ỳs baner, he sette vp of golde,
And wende toward þỳs bataỳle, abỳde woso wolde.
Hii made her crỳ in eỳþer half, & to gader esmỳte,
Wo nuste neuere of slaȝt, þere he mỳȝte ỳwỳte.
[7] þat folc vel doun to grounde aslawe, as leues doþ of tre,
þe Brutons adde þe worse [8] vorste, vor hem was loþ to fle.

---

[1] Gret honour yogh wole byfalle, the Romeynes and ye ouercome, For we wole a non ther after wende to wynne Rome *Ar.* [2] Shul haue, *Ar.* [3] The feld, *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] That dradde *Ar.* [6] As thogh hem nere deth shape non, *Ar.* [7] The folk *Ar.* [8] Fight *pro* vorste *in Ar.*

þe kyng Bedwer was þere aslawe, vor þe kyng of Medes him slou
Wyd an lance þoru þe þrote, as he toward him drou.
Kaỳ ys felawe hym wolde awreke, kyng of Aungeo,
And to deþe was in þulke [1] verde ywounded al so.
And zut, as a noble kyngt, hys felawe's bodỳ he nome,
And þer wyþ, ded as ỳt was, to þe kynge's dragon come.
Ou! louerd! þe deol þat þer was of hem of Normandỳe,
þo hii seỳe her kyng aslawe, flour of chyualerỳe!
þe deol ek of hem of Aungeo, þo hii her kyng yseỳe
[2] Wyþ wounden to raunced so, þat he moste nede deỳe!
Hyrel, Bedwer's neueu, þo ys vncle aslawe he seỳ,
[3] He verde as a wytles mon, yt was deol to be hym neỳ.
Myd þre hondred hors ywrỳe in ys wod rage he wende
Vorto awreke ys [4] vncle deþ, as ver ys herte tende.
He perced ost and oþer, vorto he ysey ynou
þe kyngys baner of Medes, þat ys vncle slou.
So gret was ys herte, þat of deþ he ne rozte noþyng.
[5] To grounde he smot he & ys, & aslowe þen kyng,
And þer, as ys vncle ded laỳ, ys foule caroyne he brozte,
And ryzt þer bỳ pece mele hakked ỳt al to nozte.
þo gradde he to ys felawes, myd gode herte þere,
To legge on vaste þe luþer men, þe wule hii [6] versse were.

---

[1] Route wounded *Ar.* [2] With his woundes alto raced, that *Ar.* [3] He ferd, as he were wod, myght noman come hym negh *Ar.* [4] Uncle's deth, so his herte tende *Ar.* [5] But atte laste the kyng Mede to his eynde he broghte, And thuder, that his vncle laỳ, his caroigne broghte *Ar.* [6] Fresh *Ar.*

Vor

Vor þe prowesse þat he adde ẏdo, hii stured hem alle vaste,
[1] And foȝte in eyþer alf, and þet folc adoun caste.
In þe Romeyns alf to deþe þer were ẏdo
þe kyng of Babyloyne, & þe kyng of Spayne al so,
And þe kyng of Medes, & tueye gret scenatours, & folc wyþ-
oute ende.
[2] In þys half þere were aslawe þe noble men and hende,
Syre Lyger duc of Babyloyne, & anoþer duc al so,
And þe erl of Salesbury, and of [3] Cycestre þerto;
And also þe erl of Baþe, so þat þoru þys cas
þe compayny e [4] aþes half muche aneþered was.
þo com þe kyng of Brutayne, & syre Waweyn þe hende,
Myd her nywe ost al [5] verss, & stured hem in ech ende;
So þat þer were among hem þere to deþe ẏ do
A gret duc, and tuo þousend, and oþer myd al so.
[6] þe" kyng Howwel, & syre Waweyn, [7] þat" so gode bodyes
were,
[8] Euere hii were ylych verss, & slowe here & þere.
Bote hii som mon broȝte adoun, newe duntes hii smyte.
Weþer of hem betere were, [9] strong ẏt was to wyte.
Syre Waweyn wylnede euere myd al ys myȝte
Myd Lucye þe scenatour in batayle to fyȝte.
[10] Lucye ne wylnede naþemo, noþyng so muche alonde,
As to fyȝte myd a such kynȝt, hym sulue vorto fonde.

[1] So that ther was in aither side much folc doun caste *Ar.* [2] In Brutones side *Ar.* [3] Chestre *Ar.* [4] Of Brutones half much a peired was *Ar.* [5] Fressh *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] *Omittit Ar.* [8] That place hii made whar hii come, and stured her and there *Ar.* [9] Wonder it *Ar.* [10] Lucie welnede also no thyng more in londe, Than forto fight with sire Wawayn hym self forto fonde *Ar.*

So

So þat hii mette hem þer, boþe hii were wel vawe.
[1] þer were duntes aryȝt, and suerdes wel ẏdrawe.
þe Romeẏns come to her maẏster sone, to helpe hem in such cas,
So þẏcke, þat syre Waweyn ney ẏbroȝt to grounde was.
þe kẏng Arture ẏt vnder ȝet, and come sone in astounde.
" Wat do [2] ȝe," he seyde, " syre kẏngtẏs? Quelleþ on to grounde.
" Wẏ lete ȝe [3] þẏs alue men þus longe alẏue go?
" þencheþ on þe bataẏles, þat ȝe abbyþ ar þys y do,
" On vr elderne, þat þẏs wrecches [4] worrede mẏd vnrẏȝte,
" On vre franchẏse, þat hii wolde bẏnẏme vs, ȝyf hii mẏȝte.
" Ne lateþ none alẏue go, to grounde smẏteþ ȝoure fon.
Sẏre Calẏbourne ẏs suerd he bẏgan to ssake anon,
And slou to grounde her & þer, ac he ne smot noȝt one,
þat he ne slou hym oþer ẏs hors, &, among hem echon,
þe kẏng of Lẏbẏe & of Bytẏnie hym sulf he gan quelle
Myd Calybourne, & sende her heþene soulẏs to helle.
þe Brutons, as hii versse were, to grounde þo slowe,
And þe Romeyns in her alf vaste ek aȝen drowe.
Lucye, to hardẏ ẏs men, prẏkede her and þer,
And bẏgonne as anẏwe bataẏle ryȝt as hii versse were.
Morond, erl of Gloucestre, mẏd ys ost bẏ syde
In an valeẏe houede, þe endẏnge vorto abẏde.
Atte laste myd ys versse volc to hem he come þar,
And bẏclosede [5] þẏs Romeyns bẏ hẏnde anonẏwar.

---

[1] Duntes þer were grete y smyte of sweordes that were drawe *Ar.* [2] Ye nogh my knyghtes alle? quelleth *Ar.* [3] Thes halue men *Ar.* [4] Werred *Ar.* [5] The *Ar.*

þo were þe Brutons al aboue, hii slowe þo to grounde
ȝe mony þousend of þe Romeyns in a lutel stounde.
þe [1] scenatour was wyþ a sper Lucye þoru ysmyte.
þo adde þe Brutons þe maystrye al byȝyte,
þe Romeyns, þat myȝte of scapye, flowe vaste sone,
And þe Brutons after, vorte hii were alle ouercome.
[2] Armes hii adde þere & hors, & alle rychesse y nou.
þe kyng, þo hal þys was ydo, toward reste drou,
And let þe bodyes of ys men, þat aslawe were,
Gaderȳ out and burye noblyche ynou þere.
Kyngys in to her owe londe he let lede al so,
As Bedwer in to Normandie, and Kay to Aungeo,
And anoþer in to Flandres, and oþere of þe route
Kyngtys he let burye in abbeyes þer aboute.
Men bysyde of þe lond he het to burye ys fon.
Vor he ne kepte vor reuþe, þat þer wer vnbured non.
Ac Lucye's bodȳ he sende [3] hym to Rome,
And bed hem, þat her maystre's bodȳ vor ys truage nome,
And þat he nolde neuere more oþer truage hem sende,
Ac he wolde hym sulf ȝut þuder come, & seche hem in ech ende.
Grettore batayle þan þys was, ych wene, nas neuere non,
Bote yt were þulke of Troye, vor þer nas vnneþe non
Prince in al þe world, þat ne moste be þer, oþer sende
Fram þe West side of þe world to þe Estmost ende.

---

[1] Cheuenteyn *Ar.* [2] Armure the Brutones hadde & hors and rychesse y nogh *Ar.* [3] Hit *Ar.*

þo adde þe kyng Arture ỳ wonne fram þe Westmost see
[1] Anon to þe mouns al þat lond, ar he come aȝe,
He þoȝte [2] wynne al clene Rome, & al þe lond þer aboute.
And vorto [3] passỳ vorþ þe mouns, he ȝarkede vaste is route.
And as he was prest to do þulke noble dede,
A messager com fram þỳs lond, & nỳwe tỳdỳnge hym seyde,
þat Modred, ỳs neueu, [4] wan he bỳtoc þỳs lond,
Adde ỳnome ys kỳnedom clanlỳche in ỳs hond,
And ỳcrouned hym sulue kỳng, þoru þe quene rede,
And huld hỳre in [5] spousbruche in vỳl flesse's dede.
Alas! þe luþer tricherye! hou mỳȝte [6] be more?
þo was þe kỳng Arture vol of sorwe and sore,
[7] In wuch alf turne he nuste þo, weþer Est þe West,
Ac to wreke hỳm [8] of ỳs luþer neueu, ys herte ber euere best.
þe veage toward Rome he [9] bỳleuede vor þỳs cheance,
And þe kỳng Howel of Brutaine mỳd þe poer of France
He [10] bỳleuede þer, towardy ỳs londes bỳȝonde see,
And hopede to wỳnne Rome, wanne he come eft aȝe.
Mỳd þe poer of þys londe hỳderward he drou,
And mỳd [11] þe kynges here bỳsỳde hỳm þoȝte [12] er longe ỳnou.

[1] A non to the mountes to ward Rome non was hym a yee, *Ar.* [2] To wynne *Ar.* [3] Passe ouer the mountes, he grethed faste his route *Ar.* [4] Wham he bytoke *Ar.* [5] Spousbreche in vil lechores ded *Ar.* [6] Hit be *Ar.* [7] In whather half tourne he myghte he nuste Est or West, *Ar.* [8] Of Mordred, his herte *Ar.* [9] Lefte *Ar.* [10] Bilefte, to kepe his londes ther by yonde the see *Ar.* [11] — *dimisso Hoëlo, duce Armoricorum, cum exercitu Galliarum, ut partes illas pacificaret, confestim cum insulanis tantummodo regibus, eorumque exercitibus, Britanniam remeavit* Galfr. Mon. [12] Erst *Ar.*

Ac

Ac Modred, þe luþer suỳke, þer bỳuore bỳsozte
Chelrỳk kỳng of Saxons, þat [1] he hem help brozte,
And he byhet hym and ỳs al Kent ver and ner,
Al þat Hengỳst adde wule [2] wyþe kỳnge's daye Vortỳger:
He bỳhet hỳm and ys also al Norþomberlond,
[3] Al þat lond fram Homber anon into Scotlond.
[4] þo þat eỳzte hondred ssỳpes into þys lond he brozte
[5] Vol of Saracens ỳarmed, as he hỳm bỳsozte.
Gret poer of Yrlond Modred hỳm [6] wan al so
Of Pỳcars, and of ech maner men þer to,
þat he wuste þat no loue to þe kyng Arture bere.
So þat eỳzte score þousend of hors ỳwrỳe þer were
In [7] ỳs ost, þo hii were gadered in þỳs cas,
Wat of Cristỳne, wat of payns, & al to muche þat was.
þo Arture mỳd ys poer ariuede in þỳs londe,
Modred bỳgan mỳd ỳs ost azen vaste stonde.
Atte hauene an batayle hii smỳte mỳd gret maỳn,
þer was aslawe [8] þen hende kỳnzt þe noble syre Waweỳn,
And Aunsel þe kyng of Scotlond, and monỳ þousend also.
Ac luþer Modred atte laste, þo al þỳs was ỳ do,
Flen mỳd al ỳs poer to Wỳnchestre vaste,
So þat þe kyng Arture þe veld adde atte laste.
þo [9] Guanỳaur, þe luþer quene, hurde of þys cas,
Fram Euerwyk to Carleon heo flen mỳd quyc pas,

[1] He som help hym broght, *Ar.* [2] By kynge's *Ar.* [3] And the lond toward Humber *Ar.* [4] So that vi. hundred shipes *Ar. at Galfridus Mon. plane ut Codex Harleyanus.* [5] Ful of mysbileued men, as he *Ar.* [6] Gat also *Ar.* [7] This ost, whan hii *Ar.* [8] The curteys knỳght Walwayn *Ar.* [9] Go. noure, *Ar.*

And bỳ com nonne þer, to lỳbbe in chaste lỳue.
[1] Som wat heo was er adrad, ar heo hỳede so blỳue.
Heo ne hỳede nozt azen ỳre louerd, to wolcome hym to londe.
[2] zut ỳre was betere nonne be, þan come vnder ỳs honde.
þo kỳng Arture adde ỳbured ỳs folc þat ded was,
He sywed after þe traỳtor mỳd wel quyc pas.
þe ssrewe [3] zarked ỳs ost, and azen hỳm com,
And wỳþout Wỳnchestre anoþer bataỳle he nom.
þer hii dude sorwe ỳnou, and slowe to grounde vaste,
Ac þe traỳtor was [4] bỳneþe, and flen atte laste
To Cornwaỳle myd god eỳr, he ne dorste no ner abyde.
þer he gadered hỳm nỳwe ost, aboute in eche sỳde,
So þat he adde [5] vnder al, mỳd þat hỳm bỳleued er,
Sỳxtỳ þousend hors [6] ỳ wrỳe, al to muche was þer.
Hys ost he [7] dỳzte suyþe wel, al hou ỳt ssolde be,
And snor he wolde raþer deỳe, þan euer eft to fle.
Kỳng Arture was anguỳsous [8] in ỳs companỳe,
þat þe luþer traỳtor adde of scaped hỳm so tuỳe.
He sywed hym mỳd ỳs folc to Cornwaỳle vaste,
Bỳsyde þe water of Camble hii mete [9] hem" atte laste.
þer hii smỳte an bataỳle deol uol ỳ nou,
þat deol ỳt was so muche folc in eyþer sỳde me slou.
Vor þer ne byleued in noþer sỳde none heỳ mon vnneþe,
Kỳng, ne duc, ne oþer, þat nas ỳbrozt to deþe.

---

[1] A gast heo was to religion, er heo highed so blyue. Heo ne yede a yenst hure lord, *Ar.* [2] Beter hure thoghte nonne to be, than to come, *Ar.* [3] Yut ordeỳned his ost,' *Ar.* [4] Ouercome, and flegh, *Ar.* [5] Under hym, with that hym leuede er, *Ar.* [6] Heled, alto *Ar.* [7] Gan a raye faste, hugh hit sholde be, *Ar.* [8] And his *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.*

Ac

Ac Modred þe traỳtor adde more folc [1] of" ỳ nou.
þo þe kỳng Arture ỳseỳ, þat me ys folc so slou,
And þe kyng of Denemarch was aslawe, & þe kyng also
Of Norþweye, & of ys oþer men mony þousend þerto,
And he scy, þat ỳs fon stode euere aȝen vaste,
To þe lutel folc þat he adde he spec atte laste.
" [2] Sulle, he seyde, " vr lỳf dere ar we be ded,
" [3] And ỳchelle sulle mỳn dere ynou, wanne þer nỳs oþer red,
" Abbe ych slawe þe false suỳke, þe luþer traỳtor,
" Hyt worþ me þanne vorto deỳe gret joỳe & honour.
He drou Calyborne ys suerd, and in eỳther sỳde slou,
And vorte he to þe traỳtor com, made hym weỳ gode ỳnou.
He hente of verst ỳs helm, and suþþe mỳd wylle god
Anne stroc he ȝef hỳm, mỳd wel stourdỳ mod,
And þoru haubert and ys coler, þat nere noþỳng souple,
He smot of ỳs heued as lyȝtlỳche as ỳt were a lute stouple.
þat was ỳs laste chỳualerỳe, þa vaỳre ended ynou.
Vor þe folc so þỳcke com, þe wule he her louerd slou,
Aboute hym in ech alf, þat among so monỳ fon
He aueng deþe's wounde, and wonder nas yt none.
Ac ouercome vas he noȝt, þeỳ ỳs wounden dedlỳch were.
þo [4] he adde ỳs laste chỳualerỳe þus noblỳche ydo þere,
He [5] ȝef þe croune of þỳs lond þe noble Constantyn,
(þe erl Cadore's sone of [6] of" Cornwaỳle,) þat was ỳs cosyn

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] " Selle we," he seyde *Ar.* [3] Myn shal be dere bought, ther is non othur red *Ar.* [4] *Sed & inclitus ille Arturus rex lethalitèr vulneratus est, qui illinc ad sananda vulnera sua in insula Avallonis advectus, cognato suo Constantino, & filio Cadoris ducis Cornubiæ, diadema Britanniæ concessit anno ab incarnatione Domini* D. XLII. Galfr. Mon. [5] *Desunt hîc bina folia in Ar. in quibus, præter alia,*

And let hym lede in to an yle, vorto hele ys wounde,
And deyde as þe beste kyng, þat me wuste euere yfounde.
Ac naþeles þe Brutons and þe Cornewalysse of ys kunde
Wenyþ he be alyue gut, & abbeþ hym gut in mynde,
þat he be to comene gut, to wynne agen þys lond.
And nogt, vor þan at Glastynbury ys bones suþþe me wond,
And þer touore þe heye wened, amydde þe quer ywys,
As ys bones lyggeþ, ys tumbe wel vayr ys.
In vyf hondred ger of grace, and fourty and tuo,
In þys manere in Cornwale to deþe he was y do.

CONSTANTYN was þo kyng, after þe kyng Arture.
[1] As þe Saxons sette agen hym, þe wule hii mygte dure;
And Modrede's tueye sones, þe wule hii dorste abyde,
Ac Constantyn [2] hem to drof, eyþer in ys syde,
þen anne in to Wynchestre, and þer wyþ sorwe y nou,
In chyrche to vore þe heye wened Constantyn hym slou.
þe oþer flen to Londone, and þoru Constantyn al so
þer by uore þe heye wened to deþe he was y do.
Conan [3] slou suþþe Constantyn in þe þyrdde gere.
At Stonhenghe he was yburyd, as ys elderne were.

---

oratione solutâ quædam concepta fuisse è fragmento quodam plane colligo. [6] *Dele.*

[1] The Saxones werred faste on hym, *Ar. omisso* as, *pro quo* a *malim.* [2] A boute hem drof ech on his side, And wente to Wynchestre, *Ar.* [3] *Exinde tertio anno interfectus est* [*Constantinus*] *à Conano, & juxta Utherpendragon infra lapidum structuram sepultus fuit, quæ haud longe à Salesbiria mira arte composita Anglorum lingua* Stanheng *nuncupatur* Galfr. Mon.

Seyn

Seỳn Dauỳd deỳde þer bỳuore, bỳssop of Walỳs,
And þer he was vaỳre ỳburỳd, in ys owe chỳrche ỳwỳs.
Constantyne's neueu Aurelỳ was kỳng þo,
And leuede in ỳs kenedom tuo ȝer and nanmo.

VORTỲPOR was þo kyng vour ȝere vnneþe.
þe Saxons he broȝte al bỳneþe, & monỳ on to deþe.

MALGO com þo after hỳm, þat þe vaỳroste kỳng was,
þat me wuste euere in þỳs lond, & al so þer nas
Strengore mon non bỳ ỳs daỳ. vor he wan ek to þys londe
þe sỳx ỳles þat beþ aboute, and heldỳs adde an honde,
As Godlonde, and Orcadas, and al so Yrlonde,
Norþweỳe, and Denemarch, and al so Yslonde.

CARỲC was kỳng after hỳm, þat stalworde mon was,
Ac to prout he was & to fals, þat ssende þỳs londe alas!
Vor þe Saxons & þe Englỳsse men were euere in þỳs londe,
And adde aȝen þe Brutons euere worre an honde.
þo hii seỳe þe falshede of þe kỳng Carrỳc,
Hii wende after [2] Godmond, þat was kỳng of Affrỳc,
To helpe hem wynne þys londe, & bỳ hete hym vayre ynou.
þe kyng Godmond mỳd vaỳr ost hederward sone drou,
And mỳd hondred þousend men, & sỳxty þousend þer to,
He come here mỳd þe Saxons þe worre vor to do.

---

[1] Katerik *Ar.* [2] *Qui tunc in Hibernia erat, ut è* Galfrido Monumetensi *liquet.*

þe Saxons, and [1] þet grete folc, þat come so of Affryc,
Asaỳled vaste þe Brutons, and her kyng Carryc.
Monỳ bataỳle hii smỳte, & sỳwỳde vpe hỳm vaste,
And fram toune to toune hỳm drỳue, so þat atte laste
Hii drỳue hỳm to [2] Cỳrencestre, & bỳsỳged hỳm þer inne.
þen toune hii barnde vpen hỳm, ar hii mỳȝte [3] hym wynne.
þer hii smỳte an bataỳle. suþþe hii drỳue ywỳs
Caryc ouer Seuerne Weste in to Walỳs.
Vor þe [4] kunde men of þỳs londe recetted were þer
Euere, wanne of strangemen ỳworred hii were.
þet luþer heþene folc [5] varnde þo vaste,
And [6] desturde al þỳs londe, and tounes adoun caste.
Wat mỳd fure, wat mỳd suerd, hii destrude al þat hii founde.
Hii ne sparede prest, ne chyrche, that hii ne broȝte to grounde.
Hii, þat myȝte of scapỳe, vaste flowe þere
To Walỳs, and to Cornwaỳle, and hudde hem vor fere.
þe erche bỳssop of Londone, and of Euerwỳk al so,
þo hỳi seye, þat Cristendom to grounde was al ỳdo,
And chỳrchen alle ỳcast ỳdoun, þe relỳkes hii nome ỳwỳs,
þat hii adde of holỳ men, and flowe in to Walys.
þe relỳkes nolde hii noȝt bỳleue, ac bere wỳþ hem vor fere.
Vor raþer hii wolde ỳmartred be, þan hii [7] ỳperỳsed were.
And into þe lasse Brutaỳne men flowe al so þycke,
So þat here nas noȝt bỳleued, bote heþene folc and wỳcke.

---

[1] This much folc, *Ar.*
[2] Circetre *Ar.* *cum* i. civitas passerum *supra lin. ab ead. manu.*
[3] Hit *Ar.*
[4] Kynde *Ar.*
[5] *Pro* barnde. *Nam* brende *in Ar. sed* u *pro* b *sæpissime in vett. libris.*
[6] Destruyde *Ar.*
[7] A peyred *Ar.*

So

So þat fram Norþ into þe Souþ no Cristendom nas,
Ne fram Seuerne to þe Souþ see, ac pure heþenesse was.
Alas! alas! þe god Arture, to [1] ver he was þo.
Hys deþ brozte to þys lond muche sorwe and wo.

[2] SAXONS & þe Englysse, & her compaynye,
Adde þo of þys londe al clene þe maystrye,
And made hem kynges of þys lond, as hii adde byuore,
Ac þe Brutons nadde so clene er neuere her poer uerlore.
þe Saxons and þe Englysse in pes hulde þo
Ech kyng ys kynedom, þat hii dude er in wo.
Syx kynges hii were some tyme, as of Kent, of Westsex,
Of Estangle, of Norþhomber, of þe Marche, of Estsex.
In bygynnynge of þys boc me may rede, and nozt lye,
Hou muche lond ech of hem adde to ys partye.
þe verste kyng þat of Saxons was, was verst kyng of Kent
Hengyst, þoru wan þys lond verst was yssend.
Hyt was [3] eyzte & fyfty zer after Hengyste's kynedom,
Ar eny kyng of Saxons in Westsex com.
Vor Hengyst was kyng fourty zer, & in þe eyzte zere
After ys deþ at zernemouþe aryued þer were
Vyf ssypuol of Saxons, y armed wel y nou,
Certyk het her cheuenteyn, þat to þys lond hem drou.
Wel sene zer þer after, a duc, (þat wyde was couþ,)
Y cluped Port, myd ys ost [4] atte hauene of Portesmoþ,

---

[1] Fer *Ar.* [2] The Saxones *Ar.* [3] xlviii. yer after *Ar.*
[4] Aryued at the hauene *Ar.*

And

And after Port, þat was ỳs name, þe hauene me clupeþ so.
So þat her poer euere wax, þe Brutons ssame to do,
And monỳ a bataỳle hii smyte. So þat atten ende
þe Saxons wonne of þỳs lond al þe Souþ ende
Euere by Souþe Temese fram Est into West.
Certyk hii made þer kỳng, vor he was þerto best.
Westsex hii clupede ỳs kỳnedom, as ȝe abbyþ yhurd ỳlome.
þỳs was a lute byuore ar kyng Artur come.
þe verste kỳng of Norþhomber in þe ȝer of grace bỳgan
Vỳf hondred & seuene and fourtỳ, [1] as me telle can.
After kỳng Arture yt was, and þo was Kynryc
Noble kỳng of Westsex, after ỳs fadỳr Certyc.
Vor þo þe Englysse men adde in þys londe poer,
Hii worrede Norþward, and wonne ver and ner.
So þat hii wonne Homberlond, & a noble bachỳler,
þat het Ydc, hii made kỳng, þer nas naur þo ỳs per.
He come of Woden þe olde louerd, as [2] in teþe kne,
þat þe [3] Saracens weneþ, þat he a gret God be.
Vor þulke Woden," þe grete louerd, sones adde þre,
Weldeg, and Wỳȝleg, and Beldeg þat was so fre.
Of Weldeg come þe kỳng of Kent, & þe kỳng of þe March of þe oþer.
þe kỳng of Westsex & of Homber of þe þrỳdde, þat was her broþer.
þulke Woden adde a wỳf, þat ycluped was dame Frye,
[4] A Latyn dame Venus, as ỳchabbe ỳseỳd nou tueỳe.

---

[1] As y wel telle can *Ar.*
[2] In the tethe gre, *Ar.*
[3] Mysbileued poeple wende, a God he hadde be. This Woden *Ar.*
[4] In Latyn *Ar.*

[1] þer

[1] þer uore þe Englysse clupede, after Woden, Wodnesday,
þat ys day in þe wouke, and, after Frye, Frydaỳ.
Vor þe heþene Englysse men, þat mys byleued were þo,
Byleuede, þat in heuene Godes hii were bo,
And þat to tueye sterren, þat me sucþ ylome
Venus and Mercurỳus, hii weneþ þat hii bycome.
þe Saxons and þe Englysse come in to þys londe,
As we seỳþ, at otỳme, as ych vnder stonde.
[2] Her londes suþþe, þo hii mygte, hii delde as hii couþe,
þe Englysse þe Norþalf, þe Saxons bỳ Souþe,
As Estsex and Mỳddelsex, and Souþ ward al Souþsex,
And al West bỳ [3] Norþe Temese, al clene Westsex.
þe Englysse Norþuolc & Souþuolc adde al in her hond,
And al West bỳ Norþe Temese, & al Norþ Homberlond.
And þe kỳnges of Westsex lengost gonne dure,
And alle þe oþere wonne to hem, as ge ssólle her after ỳhure.
þe Brutons, as ychabbe ỳtold," in West Walys were,
And worrede euere, as hii dorste, fram gere to gere.
Vor bỳ þe kynge's daye Chenlyng, þat was Kenrỳke's sone,
Hii dude hem verrore in þys londe, [4] þat hii were in wone,
And wonne þe myddel of þys lond to Bedeford anon,
And strengþede casteles and astorỳde monỳon.

---

[1] The olde Saxones, after *Woden*, cleped Wodenesday, And, after dame Frye, his *wiff*, me clepede the Friday *Ar.* [2] Hure lond sutthe by twixt hem *hii* delde as hii couthe, The Englissh in the Northhalf, & the Saxones by Southe. And nempned the contreys after hem, & lefte the names olde. As of Estsaxones Estsex, of Estenglissh Estangle, that is yit holde. The Brutons, as y haue told, *Ar.* [3] *F.* Souþe. [4] Than hit was hure wone, *Ar.*

So

So þat at Bedeforde come þe Saxons,
And smyte an batayle, and to dryue þe Brutons,
And nome þre of her gode castles, þat stronge were al so,
Eynesham, and Bunsyntone, and Aylesbur þerto.
So þat Cristyndom was al clene ver lore,
And heþenesse [1] in to al þys lond, as ych seyde byuore,"
And yt laste aboute an fourty ȝer, forte Seynt Austyn com,
And þoru Seyn Gregory þe pope broȝte Cristendom.

SEYNT Austyn myd ys felawes to Engelond com
þoru þe pope Seyn Gregory to prechy Cristendom.
Maurÿce was þo emperour, & þer adde ybe byuore
Vyfty emperours at Rome, [2] suþþe God was ybore.
In þe vyf hondred ȝer of Grace Seynt Austyn hyder com
And four score ȝer and tuo, to prechy Cristendom.
And aboute an hondred ȝer yt was, and fyfty al so,
After þat Saxons & Englysse verst come þys lond to.
And after kyng Arture's deþe aboute an fourty ȝer
þat so noble kyng was of þys lond, as we abbeþ ytold er.
þo Seynt Austyn & ys felawes þus come to þys lond,
[3] Wyppe was kyng of þe Marche, & [4] Adelfred" of Homberlond;
Celryc was kyng of Westsex, & of Kent kyng [5] Aylbryȝt.
And of Estsex ys syster sone, þat me clupede kyng [6] Sebryȝt.
Wel an fourty holy men, and monekes [7] echone,
Seynt Austyn adde wyþ hym, & þo nas he noȝt [8] one.

[1] In to al this lond bygan to catche more, *Ar.* [2] Ar God *Ar.* [3] With *Ar.* [4] *Deest in Ar.* [5] Etherbert [*l.* Ethelbert] *Ar.* [6] Sebert *Ar.* [7] Negh echone, *Ar.* [8] Al one *Ar.*

þo

þo hii come in to þýs lond, to kyng [1] Aylbrýȝt of Kent,
In was lond hii aryuede, hii sende her maundement,
þat hii were fram Rome ycome, in heý message ywýs,
þat so gret joye ssolde turne, to hym and alle hýs,
And to joye wyþouten ende, ȝýf he hem vnder stode.
" Suche býhestes," quaþ þe kyng, " me þencheþ beþ gode,
" Lateþ hem vynde mete ýnou, & þat hii abbeþ nede to,
" Forte ychabbe wyþ hem yspoke, [2] & wyte wat hii wolleþ do.
For þe kýng wel vnderstod of þe Cristýndom,
þat by uore hem was in þýs lond, & þoru hem to grounde com.
So þat atte laste, (wat halt yt to telle longe?)
þe kyng býgan and ys folc Cristendom auonge.
And of Seýnte Peter & Seýn Poul an chýrche he lete rere
[3] In Est ende of Kanterbury, þat þe [4] chef chýrche were.
Erchebýssop of Kanterburý Seynt Austýn was þer
þe verst þat euer was, vor at London þe se was er.
þo com Merlyne's word to soþe atte ende,
[5] þat þe dýgne se to Kanterburý of London ssolde wende.
At Roucestre, þat ys [6] toune in Kent of grete fame,
Seynt Austyn made a býssop, Seyn Juste was ys name,
þat was a monek ys felawe. So þat atte fyn
[7] Sýn Juste was þe vorste býssop, after Seynt Austýn.

---

[1] Ethelbert *Ar.* [2] To wite *Ar.* [3] In the Est *Ar.* [4] Hed churches were *Ar. sed alibi in eod. Codice (in quo sane multæ, minus necessariæ, repetitiones)* hed churche were. [5] That the se of London to Canterbury sholde wende *Ar.* *sed alibi* the dignyte *pro* the se [6] A toun *Ar.* [7] Seýnt Just was 'Erchebisshop made after Seynt Austyne. Seynt Mellyt *Ar.*

Seyn

SEYN Mellỳt þe holy mon in to Estsex wende
To prechỳ þer Cristỳndom, as Seynt Austyn hym sende.
Nou departeþ [1] euere// Temese Estsex fram Kent.
[2] Sebrỳȝt he vond þer kyng, þo he was þuder ywent.
He turnde hym to Cristyndom, and þe contreỳe al so.
Sebrỳȝt and þe kỳng of Kent, þo al þỳs was ỳ do,
At Londone of Seyn Poul an heued chỳrche gonne rere,
þat ȝut ys, and Seyn Mellyt [3] byssop made þere.
þus come, lo! Cristendom aȝen in to þỳs londe
Among þe heþene Saxons, as ych vnder stonde.
Ac among þe Brutons in Walỳs was eucre Cristendom
Suþþe yt verst þoru þe kyng Lucie hỳder come.
And þat was bỳuore þulke tỳme four hondred ȝer,
An aboute an four & tuentỳ, as we abbeþ ỳwrỳte er.
þe pope Eleuþerỳ, þat sende verst hỳder Cristendom,
Was þe [4] þretteþe pope, þat after Seỳnte Peter com.
þe decỳples, þat he hỳder sende, Cristendom to brỳnge,
[5] Bỳleuede in a wỳldernesse, after her prechỳnge,
þat me clepuþ nou Glastỳnbury, þat desert was þo.
And þer hii bỳcome monekes, and nome to hem mo,
And þer mỳd her owe honde hii rerde hem verst [6] anchyrche
Of herdles, and of [7] ȝerden, as hii couþe wurche.

---

[1] Deest *Ar.* [2] Sebert *Ar.* [3] Hii made bishop there *Ar.* [4] xiii. *Ar.* [5] By lefte *Ar.* [6] *Cujus figuram cum alibi, tum etiam in libro præclaro (ab Antiquario pererudito contexto, &) non ita pridem à nobis edito, cui tit.* The History and Antiquities of Glastonbury, *videsis.* [7] Yerdes, *Ar.*

And

And þat was þe verste churche, þat in Engelond come,
And þe aldest hous al so, as in lawe of Cristendom.
þeruore me yt aþ euere ycluped, þe olde chýrche, ýwýs.
Monỳ ys þe [1] holy halwe, þat her ý bured ýs,
[2] Nour so monỳ in Engelonde, to soþe ých segge þys.
[3] And, as me aþ wule ýsed, grettore oþ non nýs,
þan by þe olde chýrche of Glastynburỳ, wo so dep oþ nome."
For þer was chýrche four hondred ȝer, ar Seynt Austyn hýder come,
And Seyn Patryc was þer monek, & abbeþ suþþe þer,
ȝe ar Seynt Austyn come mo þan an hondred ȝer.
And in ryȝt alf of þe wened ýbured he was þer al so.
Sýx score ȝer and on he was old, ar deþ hym come to.
[4] þus was at Glastýnburỳ verst ýholde vp Cristendom,
And suþþe nou, after þat þet folc of Englyss hýder come,
And þe Brutons were ýdrýue al in to West Walýs,
Hii helde vorþ þer Cristendom, and býssopes ýwys.
So þat, þo Seynt Auslyn com among hem, he vond
Byssopes and monekes monỳ on in þe lond.
In þe cýtỳ of Bangor a gret hous þer was,
þat were vnder [5] sene cellen, and þer of non nas

[1] Good seynt, *Ar.* [2] Nowhar *Ar.* [3] And, as me by olde daye seide, gretter oth was [*f.* nas] holde, Than by the olde church of Glastynbury ho so swery wolde *Ar.* [4] Thus alther furst at Glastynbury sprong vp Cristendom, That sutthe that Englissh men to this londe com, That hethene were, the Brutons dryue in to West Walis, And ther hii hulde hure Christendom, that furst they toke ywis. So that whan Seynt *Ar.* [5] vii. celles, & ther of non ther nas, That ccc. monekes nere inne othur mo. And alle lyuede by hure swynch, loke whare they do now so. Dinoc het *Ar.*

þat þre hondred monekes [1] were inne, oþer mo.
And alle leuede by her suenche, loke ȝyf hem nas wo.
Dynok het her abbod, þat gret clerc was and god.
Seynt Austyn was wel y payd, þat her bylyue was so god.
And naþeles he hem en yoynede [2] bocsomnesse do
To þe herchebyssop of Kanterbury, & to Englysse men also,
[3] And among Englysse men vorþ myd hym Cristendom to amende,
And wende aboute and prechy, as þe pope hem sende.
þe byssop hym ansuerede, and þe abbod Dynok,
Al myd grete resons and wyt of her boc,
þat wan hii adde hem sulue erchebyssop and kyng,
Hii ne ssolde to Englysse men abue ryȝt noþyng.
For þe folc of Englyss & Saxons [4] her lond hem bynome,
And her kunde erytage, myd trayson & suyke dome.
War vor hii nolde for non man nanmore to hem wende,
þan to so mony houndes, bote yt were hem to ssende.
" ȝyf ȝe nolle," quaþ Seyn Austyn, " wyt ȝoure breþeren in peys be,
" þat beþ, as ȝe wyteþ wel, Crystyne as wel as ȝe;
" And ȝyf ȝe nolle Englysse men Gode's lawe teche,
" And vorþ myd me among hem Cristendom preche,
" ȝoure fon ssolle her poer [5] amorȳg ȝou wyde reche,
" And bryng ȝou to deþe monyon, & þat ssal be ȝoure wreche.

[1] *Malim*, nere, *ut in Ar.* [2] Obedience to do *Ar.* [3] And go with hym to Englissh men, Cristendom to mende, And helpe hym preche amonges hem, as the pope hem sende. The bisshopes hym answerede, *Ar.* [4] Hure lond hem hadde bynome With gile, and hure heritage with falsnesse and tresone. Wherfor hii wolde *Ar.* [5] Among *Ar.*

After

After Seynt Austỳne's daỳe to soþe com al þỳs,
Ac þe wule he was alỳue nozt, as ȝe nowe ỳhure ỳwỳs.

KỲNG [1] Aỳlbryȝt gret despỳt adde in ỳs þozt,
þat þe Brutons nolde Seynt Austỳn abue nozt.
[2] Edelfred, þat was kỳng of Norþhomberlond,
He entỳced and oþer kỳnges here of þỳs lond,
þat hii wende to Walys, and þe Brutons ssende.
þe kỳnges, þo hii preste were, myd poer þuder wende.
At þe cỳtỳ of Cayrleon þe Brutons ost þer was.
þe Englỳsse anon þuderward drowe mỳd god pas.
A gret bataỳle hii smỳte þer in a lute stounde.
Ac Brocmayl, duc of Brutons, was þer ỳbrozt to grounde.
Vor he flen and bỳleuede ys folc, þo he nuste oþer won,
Somme aslawe and somme ỳwounded, and bỳ neþe echon.
Nou were þer ỳ come fram Bangor monekes monỳon,
In vastyng and in orỳsons, to [3] bydde aȝen her fon.
And ermỳtes and monekes of oþer [4] studes bỳsyde
Bede God, þat þe Brutons þe maỳstrỳe moste bỳtỳde.
þo such folc of þys holymen kỳng Elfred ỳseỳ,
Sỳtte and [5] bỳdde vor her folc, and crỳe [6] on God an heỳ,
And me sede hỳm, þat hii [7] dede vor þe Brutons echon:
"ȝyf yt so ỳs," quaþ þe kỳng "þat hii [8] byddỳþ vor vr fon,
"þanne vỳȝteþ hii aȝen vs, as muche as ỳs her mỳȝte,
"Mỳd her armes to God, þeỳ hii mỳd [9] arme ne fỳȝte.

---

[1] Ethelbert *Ar.* [2] Elfrid, *Ar.* [3] Praye *Ar.* [4] Houses bisyde. And prayed to God the Brutones *Ar.* [5] Praye *Ar.* [6] To *Ar.* [7] Prayed for hure Brutones *Ar.* [8] Prayeth for oure fon *Ar.* [9] Armes *Ar. sed alibi* wepne *in eod. Codice.*

" Sleþ hem [1] hastelyche anon, as oure pure fon.
þat folc was [2] prest þer to, & to grounde slowe anon.
So þat tuelf hondred holymen hii martrede þere,
And aboute an vyfty of scapede alyue vor fere.
þo was yt to hem ycome, þat Seynt Austyn hem seyde,
And nogt vor þan God dude wreche [3] of þe luþer dede.
Vor þe kyng Edelfred wende toward Bangor þo,
Vorto destruc þe Brutons [4] wat he founde mo.
þe [5] louerdynges, þat þer were, garked hem anon,
And ordeynede her ost, to fygte agen her fon.
Ac Bledder duc of Cornwayle, and Cadwan of Walys,
And Margad anoþer duc, and her poer al y wys,
And oþer Brutons þat þer were, smyte hem out anon,
And a batayle strong ynou smyte myd her fon.
So þat mo þan ten þousend were of Englyss ybrogt to deþe,
And þe kyng [6] Adelfred was wounded, þat of scapede alyue vnneþe.
Ac Bledder, duc of Cornwayle, aslawe was þo,
And mony of þe Brutons, [7] & of þe Englysse wel mo.
And þe Englysse flowe ouer Homber vaste.
A parlement þe Brutons made [8] þo atte laste,
To chese hem anywe kyng, & chose þe duc Cadwan,
þat was among hem alle þe stalwordoste man.

---

[1] Boldely a non, *Ar.* [2] Redy *Ar.* [3] Of thulke luther dede. Forth went kyng Elfrid of Northhumberlonde tho To Bangor, to destruye *Ar.* [4] That *Ar.* [5] Lordes of the Brutones raide hem anon, *Ar.* *Sed alibi* garkede *pro* raide *in eod. Cod.* [6] Elfrid *Ar.* [7] Ac of *Ar.* [8] Att Chestre atte laste, *Ar.*

þo

þo þys kyng ycrouned was, hii [1] zarked hem anon,
And into Homberlond sywede [2] vp her fon.
þe kyng [3] Edelfred & ys alf myd þe poer of ys londe
And of oþer londes [4] zare was azen hem vorto stonde.
þo hii were to þys bataýle prest in eyþer syde,
Some [5] frend hym byþozte bet, & bytuene hem gonne ryde,
And made acord bytuene hem, þat þe kyng [6] adde al þat lond
[7] Eldelfred byzonde Homber, alclene in ys hond,
And kyng Cadwan by Souþe Homber, & ys owe lond Walys.
þoru hard oþ & god ostage yconfermed was al þys.
Bytuene þys tueye kynges anon so gret loue þer was,
þat her noþer nadde no þyng, þat to oþere's wylle nas.
Bytuene þe kyng [8] Edelfred, and þe quene ys wyf,
þer after, þoru [9] luþer wylle, wax a gret stryf,
þat þe kyng hyre drof awey, myd chylde as heo was,
And nom hym anoþer wyf, and þat was a deluol cas.
To þe kyng Cadwan þe quene wende þo,
And cryde on hym, þat he [10] ssolde helpe hyre in yr wo.
þe kyng Cadwan was þo aboute, bytuene hyre & [11] kyng
To make acord by ys poer, and ne myzte vor noþyng.
So þat he hulde vorþ þe quene in ys owe house,
Myd chylde helples as heo was, myd þe quene ys owe spouse,
þat myd chylde was as wel as heo, and of one tyme ney.
And þo þe chyldren were ybore, þat of [12] kunne were so hey,

---

[1] Raide hem *Ar.* [2] Upon *Ar.* [3] Elfrid in his side with power of *Ar.* [4] Redy *Ar.* [5] Men *Ar.* [6] Shold haue *Ar.* [7] Elfrid *Ar.* [8] Elfrid, *Ar.* [9] Yuel will, *Ar.* [10] Wolde *Ar.* [11] The kynge *Ar.* [12] Kynne *Ar.*

Hii clupede Edwỳne þe þỳnge's sone of Norþhomberlond,
And Cadwal þe kỳnges sone here of þỳs Souþlond.
þỳs chỳldren were wel ȝonge ỳsend to Salomon, þe kyng
Of þe lasse Brutaỳne, to gode norỳsỳnge.
þe kyng hem norỳsede wel, & wyþ hỳm priue ỳnou,
And þo hii to elde come, to armes hem drou.
So þat stalward [1] kỳntes boþe hii bỳcome,
[2] And wel ỳfonded in armes, & in bataỳles ỳ lome.

EYLBRỲT kỳng of Kent, þat þoru Seynt Austyn nom,
As we abbỳþ ỳtol bỳuore, verst Cristendom,
Deỳde as in þe ȝer of grace sỳx hondred & sỳxtỳne,
And he was syxe and vỳftỳ ȝer kỳng, as ỳch wene.
ỳs sone was kyng after hỳm, Edbald was ys name,
þat spousede [3] suþþe ỳs fader wỳf, hỳm to grete ssame,
And ne tolde noȝt of ys Cristendom. And þe kyng Sebryȝt also,
Crỳstỳne kỳng of Estsex, þo he was of lyue ỳdo,
Hỳs þre sones he bỳleuede eỳrs of ỳs kỳnedom,
þat were panỳs alle þre, and aȝen Cristỳndom.
So þat hii come at one tỳme, in her luþer rede,
To seỳnt Mellỳt, bỳssop of þe lond, & at ỳs masse hym seyde,
" Syre bỳssop, [4] wy ne ȝỳfst us of þỳne wyte brede,
" þat þou est þe sulf at þỳ masse, in þỳne vaỳre wede,

---

[1] Knightes *Ar.* [2] And a saied in armes ofte were and lome, Ethelbert kyng of Kent, *Ar.* [3] His owene fader wif, *Ar.* [4] Whi nelt þou yiue vs of thulke white brede, That thou etyst ech day in thyne white wede, *Ar.*

" þat

" þat þou ȝeue our [1] fader wyle, & ȝut ȝyfst þat folc al so?
" ȝyf ȝe [2] wolde," quaþ þe bỳssop, "as [3] ȝoure fader dude, do,
" And be ỳuolled in holy water, & mỳd Cristendom monge,
" ȝe mowe sauflỳche þet holỳ þỳng, as he dude, auonge.
" We nolleþ noȝt," quaþ þỳs oþer, " þey þou vs bede,
" Wyþỳnne þulke water come, for we nabbeþ non nede,
" Ac in alle manere we wolleþ ete of þulke brede.
þe bỳssop ỳt nolde grante, ac [4] outlỳch yt wỳþ seỳde
To gỳue hỳm þulke holỳ þỳng, botè hii ỳ uolled.
Hii suore anon in wraþþe, ȝyf he ensentan nere,
To ȝỳue hỳm so lute þỳng, & bote he ỳt hem ȝeue,
þat he ne ssolde in her lond in non manere bỳleue,
Hii drỳue hym out of her lond, & ỳs men echon.
þỳs holy man, seyn Mellỳt, to Kent wende anon,
To speke wỳþ þe erchebỳssop Laurence, and al so
Wỳþ ỳuste, bỳssop of Rouchestre, wat were best to do.
[5] Seỳnt Austỳn nou al bỳ ỳs daye to erchỳbỳssop nom
Laurence, & made after hym to susteỳne Cristendom."
þỳs þre byssopes bỳtueỳne hem nom hem þus to rede,
þat hii mỳȝte in her owe lond holỳor lyf lede,
And wỳþoute [6] perỳl sỳkerore, þan to byleue þere
Among mỳs bỳlỳuede men, bote þer enỳ bote were.
So þat seỳnt Juste & seỳnt Mellỳt to France þo wende,
And lete þe luther men [7] ỳworþþe vorte God ỳt wolde amende.

[1] Faderes, & yit yiuest þe And peple also? *Ar.* [2] Wolleth, *Ar.* [3] Other haueth, do, Be fulled with colde water, and the feỳ a ỳonge, Then mowe ỳe partỳ of that bred take oþer amonge, *Ar.* [4] Outerly *Ar. Vide supra, pag.* 66. [5] *Bina hæc metra omittit Ar.* [6] Perile sikeror to be there Than a mong hethene men, fort hit a mended were *Ar.* [7] Worthe *Ar.*

[1] Ac nas noȝt long þer after, aþ God wreche of hem nome,
þat, after her fader deþe, worrede Cristendom.
For aȝen þat folc of Westsex hii nome an bataýle,
And þerc hii were ýbroȝt to grounde, & [2] ýssend wýþoute fayle.
Vor her folc was muche aslawe, and ybroȝt to deþe,
And hii, vor [3] her luþerhede, of scapede alýue vnneþe.
Laurence, þe erchebýssop, al prest hým made also,
Vorto wende out of þýs lond, as ýs felawes adde ýdo.
þe nýȝt, þet he [4] adde in mud vort abbe ýwend amorwe,
He laý muchedel of þe nýȝt in wo and in sorwe,
To [5] býddę God vor holy chýrche and vor Cristendom.
So þat aslep atte laste vor werýnýsse hým nome.
Seýnt Peter to hým come, as þe slep hým toke,
And tormented hým sore ýnou, þat [6] hech lyme hým oke.
And [7] eþste of hým, wý he adde so výllýche ýs ssep vorsake,
Wýþoute warde, among þe wolues, þat in warde hým were
býtake?
And wý of God, ne of hým, ensample he ne nom,
þat deýde boþe [8] in rode, to susteýný Cristendom?
þýs erchebýssop was adrad welsore, þo he awok:
[9] He hýede to þe kýng, vor ech lýme hým ok,
And ssewed hým al þat cas, and ys wounden some,
And bed hým ýs lýf amende, oþer vp hým sulf ýt ssolde come.

---

[1] But sone fel hit afterward, that God wreche nom. For theý after hure faderes de h s werrede Christendom *Ar.* [2] Shent *Ar.* [3] Hure luth rnesse, skapede *Ar* [4] Hadde mette to wende his wey a morwe, *Ar.* [5] Praye *Ar.* [6] Every lyme *Ar.* [7] Axede *Ar.* [8] On rode, to saue *Ar.* [9] And blyue he hyed *Ar.*

[1] þe

[1] þe kyng anon for drede ys false wyf vor soke,
þat he huld in such hordom, and Cristendom toke.
And after Seyn Just & Seynt [2] Mellyt þe tueye byssopes sende,
So þat agen to þys lond þys gode men boþe wende,
And hii of Rouchestre Seyn Just to her byssop [3] vayre toke,
Ac þe Londres Seyn Mellyt [4] ac clanlyche versoke,
[5] Ac huld hem to her heþenesse, & in þys manere com
Kyng Edbald, after ys fader, vorst to Cristendom.
After Laurence's deþe, as God zef þat cas,
Erchebyssop Seyn Mellyt of Kanterbury was.
Erchebyssop he was vyf zer, and after hym me nom
Seyn Just to erchebyssop, to sauy Crystendom.

CADWAL, [6] þe kynge's sone, þat was of þys lond,
As ych seyde er, & Edwyne of Norþhomberlond,
þat in Brutayne were, [7] hem hii gonne wende,
After her [8] fader deþe, [9] eyþer in ys ende,
And auonge her erytage, and [10] louede hem wel boþe
Atte bygynnynge wel ynou, & suþþe somdel wroþe."
For þo hii adde antuo zer ybe lourdes in her [11] londes,
Edwyne sende to Cadwal, þat hym ssolde vnderstonde,

[1] The kyng of Kent Edbald his false wif tho forsoke, *Ar.* [2] Mellyt in to Fraunce he sende, *Ar.* [3] A yen toke, *Ar.* [4] Al *Ar.* *Vide Bedæ Hist. Eccl. lib. II. cap. VI.* [5] And *Ar.* [6] The kynge's sone Cadewan of this londe, And Edwyne kynge's sone of Northhumberlonde, *Ar.* [7] Homward gonne *Ar.* [8] Fadres *Ar.* [9] Aither to his ende *Ar.* *& è regione, ab ead. manu,* i. contre. [10] Louede to gedere y nogh, And afterward, as ye shul hure, hure loue clene a drogh *Ar.* [11] Londe *Ar.*

And soffry hym in ys owe lond, þat he ycrouned were
As ueruorþ as he in ys, & as rygt was croune bere.
[1] Kyng Cadwal nom ys conseyl, & sende hym word so,
þat ys conseyl ne gef hym nogt, ne ensentede þerto,
þat in one kynedom, þat of one croune were,
þat yt were departed, & þat me tueye crounen bere.
Edwyne was wroþ vor þys, and suor ys more oþ,
To be ycrouned wyþoute hym, [2] nere hym no so loþ.
Cadwal suor ys oþ agen, gyf he croune bere,
Vorto smyte of ys heued vnder ys croune þere.
þus wax stryf bytuene hem, hii greyþed her host vaste,
And by Norþe Homber [3] mette hem atte laste.
Mony þousend þer were ybrogt of Cadwale's men to deþe,
And he hym sulf wyþ vewe men of scapede alyue vnneþe,
And flen hym vorþ in to þe see, al þoru Scotlond,
And so vorþ euere in to þe see, vorte he com to yrlond.
Edwyne wende þo anon out of ys owe lond,
And destrude wyde aboute þat Cadwal adde an honde,
Alle ys stedes, ver and ner, and to grounde caste.
Cadwal in yrlonde ys ost garkede vaste,
And vorþ toward þys lond þe veage nome.
Ac euere wanne he myd ys ost to eny hauene com,

---

[1] And when þat Cadewall hurde þis, he send word þo To Edewyne, þat he nolde assente þer to, And þat in on londe, o kyngdom þat were, Any partyng so were mad, þat me two crounes bere. And seide, hit was a yenst the wone of his faderes olde. For thi assente ther to, he seide that he nolde. Edwyne was tho wroth y nogh, and swor his more oth, *Ar.* [2] Were hym neuere so loth *Ar.* [3] They mette atte laste *Ar.*

Ed-

Edwỳne was aȝen hỳm, and drof hym aȝe.
So þat he ne mỳȝte arỳue, ac huld hỳm in þe see.
Ac anchanteor Edwỳne adde of Spaỳne wỳþ hym þo,
þat couþe hỳm segge of ỳs dedes al hou ỳt ssolde go
þoru ỳs chantement, so þat Cadwal
Ne dude noþỳng, þat Edwỳne þoru hỳm yt nuste al.
Cadwal nuste þo oþer rede, bote mỳd al ys maỳne
Wende to porchacỳ hỳm help to þe lasse Brutaỳne.
[1] Tempest hỳm drof in þe see here and þer vaste,
So þat in þe ỳle of Gerneseỳe hii arỳued atte laste.
þo Cadwal com to reste, þer so gret deol he nome,
þat he adde so ỳs folc vorlore, and ỳs kỳnedom,
þat he laỳ sỳke in ys bed vor deol and vor sore,
þat he ne ete non mete [2] þre dawes þer vore.
þe [3] verþe daỳ to veneson hỳm þoȝte ỳs herte drou,
Brỳan, [4] ỳs owe priue man, was þerof glad ỳnou.
Hỳs bowe he nom, & soȝte a best aboute mony a mỳle,
[5] And he ne mỳȝte, ssolde he deỳe, vỳnde non in al þe ỳle.
Sorỳ was þỳs Brỳan þo, [6] þat he non grace nadde,
For he hopede ỳt were ỳs louerde's hele, vor þe wỳlle þat he adde.
He ne vnderstod of non oþer flesс, þat þe kỳng ỳknowe ne couþ
þat ỳt nere non veneson, wanne ỳt were in ỳs mouþe.

---

[1] A tempest *Ar.* [2] iiii. *Ar.* [3] v. *Ar.* [4] That priue with hym was, therof was glad ynogh *Ar.* [5] But *Ar.* [6] For he no grace hadde. For he hopede his lorde's hele, yf he eny hadde, He vnderstod of non other flessh, that he knowe couthe, That hit nere veneson, whan hit were in his mouthe *Ar.*

He

He bỳþozte hỳm of harde ỳnou, to abbe ys louerde's lỳf.
A gret pece of ỳs owe þỳ he [1] kerf out wỳþ a knỳf,
And helde þe [2] wounde, he mỳzte loke zỳf he nas trewe.
þe kỳng he brozte yt wel ỳrosted vor veneson newe.
Newe and verss ỳt was ỳnou, þe kỳng ete þerof anon.
Hỳm þozte, þat so suete mete he ne ete neuere non,
Ne so sauerỳ in ỳs mouþ, so þat he turnde to hele,
And hol was þe þrỳdde daỳ, vor þulke suete mele.
Hỳm longede after veneson þer after longe sore,
Ac ner gode of þulke beste ne com in ỳs mouþ nanmore.
To þe lasse Brutaỳne wỳþ ỳs folc þo he drou,
And of þe kỳng Salomon was [3] vnderuonge vaỳre ỳnou,
And byleuede wỳþ hỳm alle wỳnter, vorte after þe zere's ende,
[4] And greỳþede her poer hỳder vorto wende.

KYNG Edwỳne adde ỳwonne er alout the Brutons lond,
More þan enỳ Englỳss kỳng euere er adde an hond,
Al byzonde Seỳn Dauid, & al Walys al out.
Bỳ uore hỳm nas non Englỳss kỳng so rỳche ne so prout.
Heþen man he was ỳwỳs, and to Cristendom
þoru erchebỳssop of Euerwỳk Seyn [5] Paulym he com.

---

[1] Kutt of *Ar.* [2] Wounde, whan he myghte loke wher he nere trewe. To the kyng *Ar.* [3] Undernom *Ar.* [4] And than homward a yen he cast hym to wende *Ar.* [5] *Sic.*

Cadwal

CADWAL kyng þat agte be of Brutons londe,
Myd poer, þat kyng Salomon hym adde ytake an honde,
(þat was ten þousend kyngtes,) & myd ys owe poer,
Aryuede bysyde Toteneys, and come somdel ner.
In þe toun of Exestre mony Brutons were,
And a luþer kyng of þe Marche byseged hem þer,
Penda, þat heþene was, vnder Edwyne þe kyng.
Cadwal, þo he wuste þys, ne made no targyng,
Ac smot to hym myd ys ost, & þer wyþoute fayle
At Eccestre strong ynou hii smyte an batayle.
Penda þys heþene kyng was sone ouercome,
And ys folc muche aslawe, & he hym sulf ynome.
þo he in prison was ydo, [1] and oþer couþe ne yse,
He byhet Cadwal myd hym myd al ys poer be,
And þat he ssolde vor hym þe bet kyng Edwyne ouercome.
Of þys was sykernesse [2] ydo, and ostages y nome.
Penta garked ys poer, and Cadwal ek ys route
Of Brutons, þat vor defaute of help to sprad were wyde aboute.
þo þys ost al gare was, vorþward vaste hii drowe,
And in Norþhomberlond þat folc vaste hii slowe.
Kyng Edwyne adde al so in ys half gret poer
Igadered of Englysse kynges, & of ys owe ver & ner.

---

[1] And other ne couthe by se, He by het Cadewalle with hym for to be, And helpe that Edwyne kyng sholde be ouercome *Ar.* [2] Made, *Ar.*

In

In to þe veld of [1] Haduele ech of hem drow
Mýd her ost, & smýte þer an bataýle strong ý nou.
Kýng Edwýne was þer aslawe, and [2] Osfrýd ýs sone also,
And Godbold kýng of Orcadas, & her folc neý þerto.
And Cadwal was al aboue, þe wule yt wolde ýlaste.
þe Englýsse and þe Saxons he slou þo wel vaste.
He ne sparede olde ne ȝong, ne [3] womman, ne chyld,
þat he ne slou, [4] wanne he vond. he nas noþýng myld.
Anoþer bataýle suþþe he smot [5] aȝen Osryc strong ynou,
þat kýng was after Edwýne, & þer [6] he hým slou,
And ýs tueye neueus, þat after hým kýnges ssolde be,
And Cadan kýng of Scotlond, ýslawe hii were alle þre.
[7] Eufrýd, Edwýne's broþer, þo he seý [8] þýs wo aboute,
To Cadwal he wende, & mercý crýde vor doute.
Cadwal hým, & tuelf þousend þat mýd hým com, slou.
þýs ȝer was among hem of feble grace ý nou.
And þat was of hem lute harm. vor after her Cristendom
And to heþenesse hii turnde aȝen. & þus such wreche hem nome.
Kýng Cadwal and þe Brutons her wýlle adde also,
And stured hem among her fon, þat hem adde er ssame ýdo.

---

[1] Hedefeld *Ar.* [2] Ostryd *Ar.* [3] Wommen with childe, *Ar.* [4] Whan he hem fonde, & was no thyng mylde *Ar.* [5] With *Ar.* [6] He tho hym *Ar.* [7] Confrid *Ar.* *& in ora Codicis, è regione hujus carminis,* Confrid kyng of Berewýciens, *idque equidem ab eadem manu. Infra autem in hoc Codice* Emfryde *scribitur.* [8] This wogh, Forto haue mercy to Cadwal he drogh. And he of hym no mercy haue wolde tho, But hym xii. þousend men he let to dethe so. Lýtel force hit was of hem. for after hure Cristendom To hethenesse hii tournde a ye. for thy God wrech nom *Ar.*

Seyn

SEYN Oswald, Eufrỳdỳs broþer, kỳnȝ was ỳmad þo
Of al Norþhomberlond, among al þỳs wo,
þat holyman was & god, þe betere ỳs grace was.
And kỳng Cadwal to hỳm to sturne vorst was.
þỳs was in þe ȝer of grace sỳx hondred ȝer ỳwỳs,
And aboute an foure & þrỳttỳ, þat ỳdo was al þỳs.

SEYN Bỳrỳn þe byssop an holy man was,
þat in to þys lond þoru þe pope Honorỳ ỳsend was.
To turne kỳng of Westsex Kỳngỳls to Cristendom,
And þat lond of Westsex, in to þys lond he com.
Seỳn Bỳrỳn hỳm to Cristendom turnde þoru Gode's grace,
And, as God wolde, Seỳn Oswald was in þulke place,
And of holỳ vantston þỳs grete kỳng nome,
And ỳs godfader was in ỳs Cristendom.
Seỳn Oswald and þỳs oþer kỳng, þoru vr Louerde's grace,
Porucỳde Seỳn Bỳrỳn to ỳs wỳlle an place,
[1] þat Dorchester ỳs ỳcluped, þat bỳsyde Oxenford ỳs,
As in þe Est Souþ, an sene mỳle ỳ wỳs.
þer Seyn Bỳrỳn bỳssop was, þe vorste þat was ỳwỳs.
Vor þe sce was þer of bỳssop þo, þat at Lyncolne nou ỳs.
þer he deỳde, & þer he laỳ vorte suþþe þerafter long
þat he was to Wynchester ỳlad, as [2] ys ȝut vayre auong.

---

[1] That Dorchestre me clepeth by side Oxenford, That is Southward by the water of Themese vi. myle thenne y wis. Seỳnt Beryn bisshop ther was the furste that there come, And after othur bisshopes hure se at Lyncoln nome. Berin deide at Dorchestre, & lay ther ful longe. To Wynchestre were his bones lad sutthe, & faire a vonge *Ar.* [2] *Id est*, being honourably received in that place

place where he is yet. *At de Birino, pariter atque de Dorcestria, lectu dignissima sunt hæc quæ sequuntur, è Ranulphi Higdeni Polychronico (à Joanne Trevisa Anglice verso) Londini edito A. D.* M.D.XXVII. *à nobis exscripta. Sic nimirum illic, l.* V. *c.*XIII. Saynte Birynus the confessour was sent of Honorius the pope for too preche too Englysshemen. And whyle Birynus sayled in the see of Brytaine | he bethoughte on his restellis [*pallulam intelligit (sibi à papa Honorio donatam) super quam corpus Christi consecrabat, corpusque Dominicum in eadem involutum, quod collo suspensum semper secum portabat, inter sacrandum super sanctum altare ponere consueverat, ut ait Joannes Bromton, chron. col.* 755.] that he had foryete in the hauen | and yede vpon the see & fette his restellis. ¶ *Beda libro tertio: capitulo sexto* This Byrinus conuerted Kyngilsus kyng of Westsaxons | and crystned hym at cyte Dortyk | that is Dorchesster. There was kynge Oswalde present and was Kyngilsus godfader | and wedded his doughter afterwarde. And bothe the kynges gaue that cyte for too ordeyne there a bysshops see. And there Byrinus deyed after the. xiiii. yere of his bysshoprych and was beried there. But at last by Hedda bysshop of Whynchester Byrinus was translated too Wynchester in to the chyrche of saynt Peter and Poul. ¶ R. But the chanons of Dorcheter saye naye | and saye that it was another body than saynt Byrinus body that was so translated. Therfore a byer of a wonder werke is yet seen [*scripsit A. D.* M.CCC.XLII. *Edvardi tertii* XVI.] at Dorchester aboue the place of his fyrste graue. That Cyte Dortyk or Dortinga that nowe is called Dorchester is vii. myle bi south Oxenforde sette bytwene two ryuers of Tame and of Temse. Also it is founde in cronycles that kynge Kyngilsus assygned all the lond seuen myle for too make a bysshops see in Winchester | and for the sustenance of the mynysters. And for the kynge was lette by his dethe euyl that he myghte not fulfyll it. He swore that his sone Kenwalcus sholde fulfyll it afterwarde. ¶ Willelmus de pon. libro secundo. The Cytee Dorchester longed to the bisshops of Mercia fro that tyme vnto the comynge of the Normans. But in Willyam conquerours tyme the bysshops see was chaunged vnto Lyncolne.

Anno graciæ 636. Heraclii imp. 26.

Cadwal

Cadwal kyng of Brutons worrede euere vaste
And Penda vp Seyn Oswald, vorte suþþe atte laste
þat at þe toun of Mersueld by Norþe baþe hii come
Seyn Oswald and þe duc Penda, and bataýle nome.
Penda þer þe luþer duc in bataýle slou
And martrede Seýn Oswald, & al ys body to drou;
And mony þousend of ys men aslawe ek þer were.
þys was of þe ger of grace in sýx hondred gere
And four hondred. vor Seýn Oswald [1] in the ger kyng was,
And of eýgte & þrýttý ger old, þo hým vel þys cas.

OSWÝ, Seynt [2] Oswald broþer, kyng ý mad was þo.
He býþozte hým of pes, to lýbbe wýþout wo.
He acordede wýþ kyng Cadwal, & tresour hym gef ýnou,
Vorto be ys prýue frend, wýþout worre and wou.
þe fourme of pes was vaste ýmad by tuene hem there,
þat ne mýgte nozt wel ýbroke be, bote treuþe ýlore were.
Ac Penda [3] heþen duc adde euere god wýlle
To worre hým, & do hým ssame, [4] & þozte in ys herte stýlle.
Ac he ne dorste vor Cadwal, [5] ac naþeles atten ende
To þe kyng at ys parlement to London he gan wende,
And alle dukes of Bruteýne, & þe Englýss kynges echone,
[6] Icome were to þýs parlement, bote kyng Oswý one.

---

[1] *Lege ex Ar.* ix. ger *pro* in þe ger. [2] Osewalde's *Ar.* [3] The hethene *Ar.* [4] Yf he hit myghte fulfille *Ar.* [5] But so fel atten ende, That Cadewal to his Parlement to London gan wende, And all the dukes *Ar.* [6] Saue the kyng Osewy of Northhumberlond al one *Ar.*

Penda

Penda askede þe kyng anon, wy kyng Oswy nere þer?
þe kyng seyde, he vnderstod, þat he syk were.
" Syre," quaþ þe oþer, "to soþe, yt nys noþyng so,
" Ac he gadereþ vaste ys poer, vs ssame to do,
" And he aþ ysend byzonde see after Saxons mo,
" And wole awreke ys broþer deþ, he sueryþ, on vs tuo.
" [1] þeruore zyf me myd poer leue þuder wende,
" And bryng hym to ssame & byneþe, er þan he vs ssende.
To breke ys trewe couenant, þe kyng was loþ þerto,
And naþeles ys conseyl hym zef, þat he moste yt nede do.
þo Penda þys leue adde, he nome poer y nou,
And toward þis kyng Oswy ouer Homber drou,
Ann barnde vaste and robbede, and to grounde slou.
þe kyng Oswy hym let esse, wy he dude hym so wou,
And bed hym, vor Gode's loue, habbe of hym reuþe,
And of ys lond, & þenche bet on vorewarde & on treuþe.
þo Penda nolde oþer, þe oþer azen hym sette,
And dude hym al in Gode's grace, & myd ys ost hym mette,
And an bataýle smyte strong ynou, & þoru Gode's grace
[2] Kyng Oswy [3] þe Cristyn men byleuede þe place.
Vor Penda, þe heþene duc, aslawe was þere
And þrytty oþer dukus, þat myd hym also were.

---

[1] For thy let me haue leue thuder forto wende, And lette him of his purpos er he vs alle a shende *Ar.* [2] Kyng Osewy and his Cristene men that day hadde the place *Ar.* [3] *F.* þe hethen men, *ut sensus sit*, the heathen men left the place to king Oswy, *nisi forsitan* and the Cristyn men *malis ex Ar. ut* byleuede *passive sumatur, sc.* to king Oswy and the Christian men the place was left. *Possem & alia notare, sed non est tanti.*

Syx

Syx hondred ȝer of grace ẏt was, & in þe [1] vyfliþe ȝere,
þer [2] biȝet Penda lute Cristynmen vorto afere.
þo Cadwal, kyng of Brutons, noblyche adde ynou
ybe kyng eyȝte and fourty ȝer, and to elde drou,
He deyde after Martynmasse [3] ryȝt þen syxte day.
þe Brutons made deol ẏ nou, þo he ded lay,
[4] And made kynge's fourme of bras al holu wyþinne,
Vpe an hors ryde of bras, & þat body dude þerynne,
And vpe" þe West ȝate of Londone sette hyt [5] wel heye
In sygne of ys nobleye, þat men wel wyde yseye.
An þe syȝte þer of þe Saxons aferde.
An chyrche of Seyn Martyn þer by neþe hii rerde,"
War ynne me ssolde Gode's seruyse do,
And synge vor ys soule, and vor alle Cristyne al so.

[6] CADWALLAD ys sone was [7] þerafter ymad kyng,
ȝong [8] bacheler and stalward atte [9] by gynnyg,
And þoru out wel wuste ys lond, & sauede þe Brutons
Styfliche [10] al an tuelf ȝer aȝen [11] Saxons.
Ac þo vel he in sykness and sorwe vpen oþer,
þe Brutons foȝte her and þer ech aȝen oþer,

---

[1] xv. yere, *Ar.* [2] By gate *Ar.* [3] Euene the sixte day *Ar.* [4] Hii made a kynge's fourme, and hym al hol with ynne Upon a hors rydyng of bras putte al with gynne, And vpon *Ar.* [5] Ful hegh In tokne of his noblesse, that me hitt fer segh. And that the sight ther of the Saxones sholde a fere, A church of Seynt Martyn by nethe hii lete rere, *Ar.* [6] Cadwalladre *Ar. & sic infra.* [7] After hym mad *Ar.* [8] Staleworth bacheler & noble in alle thyng, And *&c. Ar.* [9] *L.* bygynnyng. [10] Fully xii. *Ar.* [11] The Saxones *Ar.*

And lore, as wo seyþ, grace of God, & þat he gan hem ssewe.
Vor he sende hem so muche honger & luþer ȝeres arewe,
[1] þat þys folc was ney meteles, bote wo so couþe myd gynne,
Oþer myd bow and arwen, eny wylde best wynne.
So gret qualm com ek among men, þat hii, þat were alyue,
Ne myȝte noȝt al buryе þat folc, þat deyde so ryue.
Vol of syknesse, and of qualm, and sorwe þys lond was þo,
Of honger, and of vnele ȝeres, hou myȝte be more wo?
[2] þet folc gret compayne & oþer myd wop & sorwe y nou,
Wanne hii myȝte ssyppes abbe, in to oþer londes drou.
þe kyng [3] hym" let ek in sorwe and in sykenesse lede
Toward þe lasse Brutayne, & þys deoluol playnte seyde:
" [4] Awey! awey! we synuol men, alas! oure wrecchede,
" þat we abbyþ þus God agult myd mony synuol dede
" We and oure elderne ek, þe wreche ych vnderstonde
" þat þus wrecchedlyche nou vus dryfþ out of oure kunde londe,
" þat Romeyns" ne myȝte myd batayle neuere do,
" Ne Scottes, ne [5] Pycars, ne þe Saxons þerto.
" Nou we beþ, þoru wreche of God, vor oure synuol dede,
" Idryue out al clene, wyþ out hope, wyþ sorwe & [6] wreche.

[1] That the peple hadde no mete; but they with any gynne Wilde bestes, or fowell, or fissh myght wynne. Such pestilence cam also, that hii, that were alyue, The dede myghte vnnethe burye, they deide so blyue *Ar.* [2] The folc with grete companye in care and sorwe y nogh, *Ar.* [3] Hym self *Ar.* [4] A las! he seyde, and welawey! whi couthe we noght blynne, While that we tyme hadde, oure lyff to lede in synne, Thurgh which we shal nogh al clene be dryue out of londe, And al hit is þorgh wreche of Gode's owene honde? That the Romaynes *Ar.* [5] Pictes, *Ar.* [6] *L.* wrechede.

[1] Vor

" [1] Vor vaȝt we abbeþ so ofte vp hem ẏwonne þat lond,
" Wanne God nel noȝt, þat ẏt be lengore in oure hond.
" Vor þe soþuast God, þo he ẏse, þat we nolde, vor noþyng
" Fram oure sẏnne vs wẏþ drawe, ne þat non prince, [2] ne,
" Ne myȝte brẏnge vs out of þe lond, he, þat myȝtuol ẏs,
" [3] Deþe after oure deserte, and [4] pulte vus out ẏwẏs.
" Comeþ nou aȝen ȝe Romeẏns, and ȝe Scottes al so,
" [5] Pẏcars, and Saxons, and Englẏsse þer to,"
" þat so muche abbeþ desyred [6] þat lond, ȝe mowe yt fynde nouþe
" Al bar wẏþ out defense, bẏnorþe and eke bẏsouþe,
" [7] And al þat þoru wreche of God, & noȝt ȝoure poer noȝt ẏ do,
" (Vor al þe poer, þat ȝe alle adde, ne mẏȝte yt bringe þerto,)
" Ac þoru þe mẏȝte of Jhesu Crist we beþ ẏbroȝt to grounde,
" þat we wraþþed euere mo, and nou we abbeþ ẏfounde.
" Alas! þat by mẏne daye such wreche ssolde come,
" þat ẏ nadde ẏbe ded bore, bote God adde þe soule ẏ nome.
þe deol ne maẏ non tonge telle, þat þe kẏng to hym nome,
So þat to þe lasse Brutayne mẏd þẏs sorwe he com,
To, þe kynge's neueu Salomon, Aleyn, þat kyng was þo,
And vaẏre of hẏm was vndervonge in ẏs muchele wo."

---

[1] An ydel we haue so ofte recouered of hem oure lond, When God nele, that we lengor haue hit in our hond *Ar.* [2] *Adde* kyng *cum Ar.* [3] Doth *Ar.* [4] Putteth *Ar.* [5] Pictes, and Englissh, and Danes also, *Ar.* [6] This *Ar.* [7] And when ye haueth hit, seye ye ne may, ye haueth vs out pylt Thurgh your strengthe, but hit is thurgh oure owene gylt. Deol he made gret y nogh, so that his wey he nom Toward the lasse Brutayne, and thuder sone he com To kyng Salomone's sone Aleyn, that tho was, And faire of hym was vnderfonge, as fel in this cas *Ar.*

þo þe Brutons þeraſter were al as out of munde,
After folc þe Saxons sende of her kunde,
To come & wonye in þys lond, þat noman agen hem nas,
And þat þet lond to her wylle al bar agen hem was.
þo þys strangemen hurde þys, ynou of folc hii nome,
Of men and of wymmen ek, and to þys lond come.
Anon from Cornwayle to Norþhomberlond,
[1] Hote yt were of poueral, al bar hii founde þat lond.
þe poueral ouer Seuerne flen þat þer was þo,
And byleuede vorþ in Walys in sorwe and in wo.
[2] We longe her afterward þo yt com to amendement,
And bote of honger & of qualm vr Louerd adde ysend,
Som help of þe kyng Aleyu kyng Cadwallad bysozte,
And þat he in to ys kunde londe þoru ys help hym brozte."
þe kyng hym grantede anon, and as hii were aboute,
Eyþer in ys half, to gaderý gret ost and gret route,
To kyng Cadwallad an angel [3] anysyon brozte
Fram heuene, and bad hym wyþdrawe of þat he þozte.
Vor yt nas Gode's wylle, þat of þe Brutons [4] kunne
Regnede more in Engelond, and al uor her sunne.
And namelyche ar þulke tyme þat ys in prophecye
Merlyn seyde to Arture, þat nolde noþyng lye.

[1] *L.* bote. *Nam* bute *in Ar.*
[2] Afterwardes whan hit fel, as God yaf the grace, That alle these meschenes gonne ouerpace, And the peple in Walys strengthed sumwhat were, Cadewaldre hym by thoght. in this ilke manere, That the synne of his peple wassh was clene. To Aleyn kyng of Brutayne he gan his mone mene, And in alle manere wise his help hym by soght, That thurgh hym in to his Reaume he myght be broght *Ar.*
[3] Tydyng *Ar.*
[4] Kynne *Ar.*

Vor

Vor he seyde, þat þe Brutons me ssolde ȝut yseȳ
Wynne her ryȝte kynedom, ac yt ssolde arst long be.
Wanne ye relykes of halewen yfounde were & ykud,
þat vor drede of Saxons wyde were yhud.
To Sergy þe pope, þat þo was, to Rome he bed hym wende,
And do þer ys penance, þat God hym wolde sende,
And byleue al erþlych þoȝt, þen deuel vorto ssende,
And he ssolde among holymen [1] to heuene" atten ende.
þe kyng þys auyson, þat þe angel hym seyde,
þe oþer tolde priuelyche, hym þerof to rede.
þe kyng Aleyn let þo anon in ys bokes aspye,
Boþe of Sybyle þe sage, and of Merlyne's prophecye;
Were hii to ys auysyon acorded in ech þynge?
And þo he vond, þat bytuene hem nas non dyscordyng,
He radde þe kyng Cadwallad, to þenche nanmore
Of [2] Engelond, ac do al out þe angele's lore,
And wende to Rome, [3] holy lyf to lede.
þe kyng Cadwallad dude al out, þat þe angel he hym bede,
And at Rome was of þe pope vayre [4] vnder vonge,
And in penance and holy lyf lyuede þere longe,
[5] And in ettefe day of Aueryl out of þys worl he wende
To þe joye of Heuene, as God after hym sende.
[6] Hyt was sene hondred ȝer bote on ȝer lasse vnneþe,
After þat God anerþe com, þat þys kyng com þus to deþe.

---

[1] Be nombred *Ar.* [2] Brutayne, but do after the *Ar.* [3] Ther holy *Ar.* [4] A fonge, *Ar.* [5] The xix. day of April *Ar.* [6] Six hundred yer and foure skor, and ther to eyghtetene, Hit was þat our Lord bore was y wene. The Englissh *Ar.*

þe Englỳsse" and þe Saxons, þat alone þo were,
Grete tounes and castles bỳgonne bulde and rere,
þat hii adde er ỳcast adoun, & louerdes were al þo,
And þe Brutons clene al out mỳd sorwe & mỳd wo,
And lore þo boþe al clene, name and eke lond.
Vor þat was Brutaỳne ỳcluped er, me cluped nou Engelond.
þo vewe were of hem bỳleued, as in Cornwayle & Walỳs.
Brutons nere nanmore ỳcluped, ac Waleys ỳwỳs.
After [1] Walon, þat was her [2] duc, hii adde vorst þe name,
And ne mỳȝte neuer efter þỳs lond keuere, at lỳbeþ mỳd alle ssame,
[3] Bote hii þus mỳd scolkỳnge vp þe Englysse wende,
And doþ enỳ skec feble ynou, and abbeþ þe worse ende.
Ac, (as þe angel seỳde er, and Merlỳn ek bỳ uore,)
Hii ssolleþ keuerỳ muche lond, þat hii abbeþ ỳlore;
Al Walỳs and al þe March, and al mỳddel lond ỳwỳs,
þat ỳs, al þat bỳtuene Temese and Homber ỳs,
Al Est toward Londone, & þat me ssal ȝut ỳseỳ.
At vpe Gode's wỳlle ỳt ỳs, wanne ỳt ssal be.
Here we Englysse men mowe ỳse sone,
Mỳd wuche ryȝte we beþ to þỳs londe ỳcome.
Ac þe wrecche Englysse men beþ of þe olde [4] more;
In wuche manere, ȝe abbeþ ỳ hurd, hou hii ỳt abbeþ ỳ lore.
Ac þe feble ỳs euere bỳneþe. vor hii, þat abbeþ mỳȝte,
Mỳd strengþe brỳngeþ ofte þat wowe to þe rỳȝte.

---

[1] Gwalo, *Ar.* [2] Prince, *Ar.* [3] And ofte tỳme in skal ỳng on Engelond gon tuey wende, And made contek and strif, and hadde the worse ende *Ar.* [4] *Subintelligè*, Britain.

þo

ÞO Brutayne was þus ylore, and þe londe's name
To þe name of Engelond yturnd, to zret ssame,
Sene kynges hii adde longe, as þe kyng of Estsex,
Of Kent, of Homberlond, of Est Angle, of Souþsex,
Of þe March, of Westsex, [1] of alle þes echon
Wule þes were kynges, þat nouþ ys bote one.
Vor ech bygan to worry vp oþer, and oþeres londes bynome,
And hii of Denemarch among hem, vorte alle to one come.
þe kynges of Westsex adde þe ouer hond,
So þat attelaste hii wonne alle þe oþeres lond.
Ac Souþsex ne last nozt longe, ne Estsex [2] naþe mo.
þe kyng of Westsex sone hem wan, bote vyue þer nere þo.
þe kynedom of þe March ylaste long and wel ynou,
Vorte þe kunde kyng seyn Kenelm in marterdom me sloz.
Kyng Kenulf ys fader godman was, þat þe hous of Wychecumbe
Rerde vorst, and þer lyþ hym sulf in a tombe.
þo Seyn Kenelm ymartred was, ys vncle [3] Seowulf
Kyng was after hym ymaked, þe kynge's broþer Kenulf.
He nas kyng bote on zer, ar on Bernulf com,
And þoru strengþ hym caste out of ys kenedom.

EGBRYGT [4] was kyng y mad, as oþer byuore hym were,
Of Westsex in þe zer of zrace eyzte hondred zer.

---

[1] Alle thes echon While were of kynges, *Ar.* [2] Ne the mo *Ar.* [3] *Sive*, Ceolulph. [4] *Perplura hîc occurrunt in Cod. Ar. oratione soluta concepta, In quo tamen Codice desunt cuncta metra usque ad Edwardi, Ælfredi Magni filii, regnum.*

By ys daye Seyn Kenelm to deþe ybrozt was,
þe kynedom was þerafter lute, vor wreche of þat cas.
Vor Bernulf, of wan we tolde, nozt þre zer kyng nas
Ar Egbryzt, kyng of Westsex, made hym seke pas.
Vor an batayle at Elendone hii smyte myd her ost,
þe kyng Bernulf was þere byneþe, & bynome al ys bost,
And ys folc muche aslawe, & he flen wyþ muche wo.
In kyng Egbryzte's poer ys kynedom was þo.
Eyzte hondred zer & tuentỳ, & syxte þer to,
As in þe zer of grace þys batayle was ydo.
þe kyng of Westsex her after adde al þe kynedom
Of þe March, oþer eche zer truage of hem nom.
In Egbryzte's kynedom four and tuentỳ þe zer
Hyt was, ar þys batayle at Elendone were.
Bernulf suþþe in Est Angle þoru men of lond,
And þoru Egbryzte's poer, was aslawe, ych vnderstonde.
And þat folc of Est Angle vnderuonge þere
Kyng Egbryzt to her souerỳn, & seruage hym bere.
Kyng Egbryzt was þo prout vor ys segnorye.
Adelwolf, ys sone, he sende myd vayre bachelerye
To wynne Kent, & Estsex, & Soþereye, myd maystrye.
To þe lond of Kent hii wende vorst myd her chyualerye.
Kent hii wonde tymelyche, and Balred þe kyng
Flen ouer Temese, and byleuede ys owe þyng.
Estsex and Souþsex, and Soþereye al so
Hii wonne, ar hii come azen; & þo al þys was ydo,
Egbryzt, kyng of Westsex, al þys to hym nom,
Al to be vnder hym, and vnder ys kynedom.

Al þat lond býsouþe clene he adde al so
Under hým, oþer in ýs hond. wýnne he þoȝte mo.
Aȝen hem of Norþhomberlond mýd ost he com at [1] Doýre,
Hii dude hým a non her manhede, & ne conteked namore.
þe kýng Egbryȝt adde ýbe kýng þre and þrýtty ȝer,
þet folc of Denemarch hýder com, as yt adde ý do er.
Ssepeýe hii robbede vorst, and suþþe oþer mo.
Ac þe kýng Egbrýȝt hem drof aȝen, ar hii dude to muche wo.
þo kýng Egbrýȝt adde kýdg ýbe seuene & þrýtty ȝer,
He deýde as a noble man, ac ýs londes he delde er.
Adelwolf, ýs eldeste sone, he ȝef þo al Westsex,
þat was as ýs crýtage. and suþþe al Souþsex
Hýs ȝongore sone Aþelston he ȝef, and þe kýnedom
Of Kent and of Estsex, þat of ýs porchas com.
Hýt was eýȝte hondred ȝer, and nyne þrýttý þerto,
As in þe ȝer of grace, þat he deýde so.

---

[1] *Meminerunt etiam Annales Saxonici, sub anno* DCCCXXVII. And ſe Ecʒbrẏht lædde fẏrde to Dore ƿið Norðanhẏmbre. ⁊ hẏ hẏm þær eaþmedo budon. ⁊ ʒeþƿærneſſe. *Ejusdem quoque mentionem habemus apud Florentium Wigorniensem. Id quod item monuit doctissimus Gibsonus, qui porro innuit, locum hunc in agro fuisse Eboracensi, licet plane incertum sit quonam hodierno vocetur nomine. Quidni autem quis censeat, ipsum fuisse* Durham? *Quo minus ita putemus, nihil quidem obstat in Annalibus Saxonicis, è quibus discimus, Ecgbryhtum primùm subjugasse Merciorum regnum, & totum quod fuit ab Australi parte Humbri, deinde movisse ultra Humbri flumen, in ipsum, ut videtur, Deirorum agrum. Et tamen fateor, hanc sententian minime convenire cum Florentio, locum longe minoris notæ quam Dunelmum fuisse aperte indicante, suoque itidem tempore* Dore *nomine venisse significante. Quomodocunque sit, in partibus ultra Humbrum fuisse sane existimarim.*

Of

OF þe bataýles of Denemarch, þat hii dude in þýs londe
þat worst were of alle oþere, we mote abbe an honde.
Worst hii were. vor oþere adde somwanne ýdo,
As Romeýns & Saxons, & wel wuste þat lond þerto.
Ac hii ne kepte ýt holde noȝt, bote robbý, and ssende,
And destruc, & berne, & sle, & ne couþe abbe non ende.
And bote lute ýt nas worþ, þey hii were ouercome ýlome.
Vor mýd ssýpes and gret poer as prest efsone hii come.
Kýng Adelwolf of þýs lond kýng was tuentý ȝer.
þe Deneýs come bý hým rýuor þan hii dude er.
Vor in þe al our vorst ȝer of ýs kýnedom
Mýd þre & þrýttý ssýpuol men her prince hýder come,
And at Souþhamtone arýuede, an hauene bý Souþe.
Anoþer gret ost þulke týme arýuede at Portesmouþe.
þe kýng nuste weþer kepe, at delde ýs ost atuo.
þe Denes adde þe maýstre. þo al was ýdo,
And bý Estangle & Lýndeseýe hii wende vorþ atte laste,
And so hamward al bý Kent, & slowe & barnde vaste.
Aȝen wýnter hii wende hem. anoþer ȝer eft hii come,
And destrude Kent al out, and Londone nome.
þus al an ten ȝer þat lond hii broȝte þer doune,
So þat in þe teþe ȝer of þe kýnge's croune,
Al býsouþe hii come alond, and þet folc of Somersete
þoru þe býssop Alcston and þet folc of Dorsete
Hii come & smýte an bataýle, & þere, þoru Gode's grace,
þe Deneýs were al býneþe, & þe lond folc adde þe place,
And more prowesse dude þo, þan þe kýng myȝte býuore,
þeruore gode lond men ne beþ noȝt al verlore.

þe

þe kyng was þe boldore þo, & agen hem þe more drou,
And ys foure godes sones woxe vaste y nou,
Edelbold and Adelbryght, Edelred and Alfred.
þys was a stalwarde tem, & of gret wysdom & red,
And kynges were al foure, & defendede wel þys lond,
An Deneys dude ssame ynou, þat me volwel vond.
In syxteþe gere of þe kynge's kynedom
Is eldeste sone Adelbold gret ost to hym nome,
And ys fader also god, and oþere heye men al so,
And wende agen þys Deneys, þat muche wo adde y do.
Vor myd tuo hondred ssypes & an alf at Temse mouþ hii come,
And Londone, and Kanterbury, and oþer tounes nome,
And so vorþ in to Soþereye, & slowe & barnde vaste,
þere þe kyng and ys sone hem mette atte laste.
þere was bataýle strong ynou ysmyte in an þrowe.
þe godes kyngtes leye adoun as gras, wan medep mowe.
Hcueden, (þat were of ysmyte,) & oþer lymes also,
Flete in blode al fram þe grounde, ar þe bataýle were ydo.
Wanne þat blod stod al abrod, vas þer gret wo y nou.
Nys yt reuþe vorto hure, þat me so volc slou?
Ac our suete Louerd atte laste ssewde ys suete grace,
And sende þe Cristyne Englysse men þe maystrye in þe place,
And þe heþene men of Denemarch bynepe were echon.
Nou nas þer gut in Denemarch Cristendom non;
þe kyng her after to holy chyrche ys herte þe more drou,
And teþegede wel & al ys lond, as hii agte, wel y nou.
Seyn Swythyn at Wynchestre byssop þo was,
And Alcston at Syrebourne, þat amendede muche þys cas.

þe

þe kyng was wel þe betere man þoru her beyre red,
Tuentȳ wynter he was kyng, ar he were ded.
At Wynchestre he was ybured, as he gut lyþ þere.
Hys tueye sones he gef ys lond, as he byget ham ere.
Adelbold, þe eldore, þe kynedom of Estsex,
And suþþe Adelbrygt, Kent and Westsex.
Eygte hondred ger yt was and seuene and fyftȳ al so,
After þat God anerþe com, þat þys dede was ydo.
Boþe hii wuste bȳ her tyme wel her kynedom,
At þe vyfte ger Adelbold out of þys lyue nome.
At Ssyrebourne he was ybured, & ys broþer Adelbrygt
His kynedom adde after hym, as lawe was and rygt.
Bȳ ys daye þe verde com of þe heþene men wel prout,
[1] And Hamtessyre and destrude Wynchestre al out.
And þat lond folc of Hamtessyre her red þo nome
And of Barcssyre, and fogte and þe ssrewen ouercome.
Adelbrygt was kyng of Kent geres folle tene,
And of Westsex bote vyue, þo he deyde ych wene.

ADELRED was after hym kyng y mad in þe place,
Eygte hondred & seuene & sixtȳ as in þe ger of grace.
þe vorste ger of ys kynedom þe Deneys þycke com,
And robbede and destrude, and cytes vaste nome.
Maystres hii adde of her ost, as yt were dukes, tueye,
Hynguar and Hubba, þat ssrewen were beyc.
In Est Angle hii byleuede, to reste hem as yt were,
Myd her ost al þe wynter, of þe vorst gere.

[1] *F.* an *sive* on; *nisi mox malis*, and Wynchestre destrude *&c.*

þe

þe oþer ȝer hii dude hem vorþ; & ouer Homber come,
And slowe to grounde & barnde, & Euerwỳk nome.
þer was bataỳle strong ỳ nou, vor ỳslawe was þere
Osryc kỳng of Homberlond, & monỳe þat with hỳm were.
þo Homberlond was þus ỳssend, hii wende & tounes nome.
So þat atte laste to Estangle aȝen hỳm come.
þer hii barnde & robbede, & þat folc to grounde slowe,
And, as wolues among ssep, reulỳch hem to drowe.
Seỳnt Edmond was þo her kỳng, & þo he seỳ þat deluol cas
þat me morþrede so þat folc, & non amendement nas,
He ches leuere to deỳe hymsulf, þat such sorwe to ỳseỳ.
He dude hỳm vorþ among ỳs fon, nolde he [1] noþỳg fle.
Hii nome hỳm & scourged hỳm, suþþe naked hỳm bounde
To a tre, & to hỳm ssote, & made hỳm monỳ a wounde,
þat þe arewe were on hỳm þo þỳcce, þat no stede nas bỳleuede.
Atte laste hii martred hỳm, & smỳte of ỳs heued.
þe sỳxte ȝer of þe crouncment of Aldered þe kỳng
A nỳwe ost com into þỳs lond, gret þoru alle þỳng,
And anon to Redỳnge robbede and slowe.
þe kỳng and Alfred ỳs broþer nome men ỳnowe,
Mette hem, and a bataỳle smỳte vp Assesdoune.
þer was monỳ moder chỳld, þat sone laỳ þer doune.
þe bataỳle ỳlaste vorto nỳȝt, and þer were aslawe
Vỳf dukes of Denemarch, ar hii wolde wyþ drawe,
And mony þousend of oþer men, & þo gonne hii to fle;
Ac hii adde alle ỳbe assend, [2] ȝỳs þe nỳȝt nadde ỳ be.
Tueye bataỳles her after in þe sulf ȝere
Hii smyte, and at boþe þe heþene maỳstres were.

---

[1] *L.* noþỳng. [2] *Sic.*

þe

þe kyng Aldered sone þo þen weý of deþ nome,
As ýt vel, þe výftý ȝer of ýs kýnedom.
At Wýmbourne he was ýbured, as God ȝef þat cas,
þe gode Alfred, ýs broþer, after hým kýng was.

ALFRED, þýs noble man, as in þe ȝer of grace he nom
Eýȝte hondred & sýxtý & tuelue þe kýnedom.
Arst he adde at Rome ýbe, &, vor ýs grete wýsdom,
þe pope Leon hým blessede, þo he þuder com,
And þe kynge's croune of þýs lond, þat in þýs lond ȝut ýs:
And [1] he led hým to be kýng, ar he kýng were ýwýs.
An he was kýng of Engelond, of alle þat þer come,
þat vorst þus [2] ýlad was of þe pope of Rome,
And suþþe oþer after hým of þe erchebýssopes echon.
So þat býuor hým pore kýng nas þer non.
In þe Souþ sýde of Temese nýne bataýles he nome
Aȝen þe Deneýs þe vorst ȝer of ýs kýnedom.
Nýe ȝer he was þus in þýs lond in bataýle & in wo,
An ofte sýþe aboue was, and býneþe oftor mo;
So longe, þat hým nere bý leuede bote þre ssýren in ýs hond,
Hamtessyre, and Wýltessyre, and Somersete, of al ýs lond.
A daý as he wery was, and asuoddrýnge hým nome
And ýs men were ýwend auýsseþ, Seyn Cutbert to hym com.
"Ich [3] am," he seyde, "Cutbert, to þe ýcham ýwend
"To brýnge þe gode týtýnges. Fram God ýcham ýsend.

[1] *Id est*, heled *sive* consecrated, *vel* anointed. *Vide notas nostras ad Vitam Ælfredi Magni Spelmannianam, p.* 17.

[2] *Pro* oyled, *sive* anointed. *Nisi forsitan tam hîc, quam & jam supra, idem quod Anglo-Saxonicum* ȝehalȝoð *esse existimes.*

[3] *Vide Willielmi Malmesbur. de gestis regum Angl. lib. II. c. IV.*

"Vor

" Vor þat folc of þys lond to sẏnne her wẏlle al ȝeue,
" And ȝut nolle herto her sẏnnes bẏleue
" þoru me & other halewen, þat in þys lond were ẏbore;
" þan vor ȝou bẏddeþ God, wanne we beþ hẏm bẏuore,
" Hour Louerd mẏd ys eẏen of milce on þe lokeþ þeruore,
" And þẏ poer þe wole ȝẏue aȝen, þat þou ast neẏ verlore.
" And þat þou þer of soþ ẏse, þou ssalt abbe tokẏnẏnge.
" Vor [1] þẏm men, þat beþ ago to daẏ auẏssynge,
" In lepes & in coufles so muche vyss hii ssolde hẏm brynge,
" þat ech man wondrẏ ssal of so gret cacchẏnge.
" And þe mor vor þe harde vorste, þat þe water ẏfrore hẏs,
" þat þe more aȝen þe kunde of vyssẏnge ẏt ẏs.
" Of serue ẏt wel aȝen God, and ẏlef me ys messager,
" And þou ssal þẏ wẏlle abẏde, as ẏcham ẏtold her.
As þys kẏng hereof awoc, and of þys sẏȝte þoȝte,
Hys vẏssares come to hẏm, & so gret won of fyss hẏm broȝte,
þat wonder ẏt was, & namelẏche vor þe weder was so colde.
þo lẏuede þe god man wel, þat Seyn Cutbert adde ẏtold.
In Deuenẏssyre þer after þer arẏuede of Deneẏs
þre and tuentẏ ssẏpuol men, al aȝen þe peẏs,
þe kẏnge's broþer of Denemarch duc of ost was.
Oure kynge's men of Engelond mette hem bẏ cas,
And smẏte þer an bataẏle, and her gret duc slowe,
And eyȝte hondred & fourtẏ men, & her caronẏes to drowe.
þo kyng Alfred hurde þẏs, ẏs herte gladede þo,
þat lond folc to hẏm come so þẏcke so ẏt mẏȝte go,
Of Somersete, of Wẏltessẏre, of Hamtessẏre þerto,
Euere as he wende, and of ẏs owe folc al so.

[1] *Pro*, þẏn.

So

So þat he adde poer ynou, and atte laste hii come,
And a batayle at Edendone agen þe Deneys nome,
And slowe to grounde, & wonne þe maystre of þe velde.
þe kyng & ys grete duke bygonne hem to gelde
To þe kyng Alfred to ys wylle, and ostages toke,
Vorto wende out of ys lond, gyf he yt wolde loke;
And gut þerto, vor ys loue, to auonge Cristendom.
Kyng Gurmund, þe hexte kyng, vorst þer to come.
Kyng Alfred ys godfader was. & ybaptysed ek þer were
þrettý of her hexte dukes. and muche of þat folc þere
Kyng Alfred hem huld wyþ hym tuelf dawes as he hende,
And suþþe he gef hem large gyftes, and let hym wende.
Hii, þat nolde Cristyn be, of lond flowe þo,
And bygonde see in France dude wel muche wo.
gut þe ssrewen come agen, and muche wo here wrogte.
Ac þe kyng Alfred atte laste to ssame hem euere brogte.
Kyng Alfred was þe wysost kyng, þat long was byuore.
Vor þey me segge þe lawes bey in worre tyme vorlore,
Nas yt nogt so hiis daye. vor þey he in worre were,
Lawes he made rygtuollore, and strengore þan er were.
Clerc he was god ynou, and gut, as me telleþ me,
He was more þan ten ger old, ar he couþe ys abece.
Ac ys gode moder ofte smale gyftes hym tok,
Vor to byleue oþer ple, and lokỳ on ys boke.
So þat bỳ por clergye ys rygt lawes he wonde,
þat neuere er nere ỳ mad, to gouernỳ ys lond.
And vor þe worre was so muche of þe luþer Deneys,
þe men of þys sulue lond were of þe worse peys.

And

And robbede and slowe oþere, þeruor he bỳuonde,
þat þer were hondredes in eche contreỳe of ỳs lond,
And in ech toune of þe hondred a teþỳnge were also,
And þat ech man wyþoute gret lond in teþỳnge were ỳdo,
And þat ech man knewe oþer þat in teþỳnge were,
And wuste somdel of her stat, ȝỳf me [1] þu vp hem bere.
So streỳt he was, þat þeỳ me ledde amỳdde weỳes heỳe
Seluer, þat non man ne dorste ỳt nỳme, þey he ỳt seỳe.
Abbeỳs he rerde monỳ on, and monỳ studes ỳwỳs.
Ac Wynchestrye he rerde on, þat nỳwe munstre ỳcluped ỳs.
Hỳs lỳf eỳȝte and tuentỳ ȝer in ỳs kỳnedom ỳlaste.
After ỳs deþ he was ỳbured at Wỳnchestre atte laste.

[2] EDWARD, ỳs gode sone, kỳng was ỳmad þo
In þe ȝer of grace nỳne hondred ȝer & on & nanmo.
[3] Foure & tuentỳ ȝer he was kỳnȝ, & to more poer come
þan euere ỳs fader dude, ac boȝt to so gret wỳsdom.
He wan" þe kỳnedom of þe March mỳd ỳs dedes bolde,
So þat of hỳm ỳt was afterward ỳholde.
And þat lond of Estangle, and Norþhomberlond,
And Walỳs he wan þoru bataỳle, al vnder ys hond.
And he nas neuere in bataỳle bỳneþe in þỳs lond.
He bỳuond vorst an queintỳse aȝen þe Deneỳs to anstond.

---

[1] *Sic, cum spatio, in Codice nostro* Harleyano. *At* þefþe (*i. e.* ðeoɣðe *sive* theft) *in Codice* Cottoniano, *sicut me docuit amicus. Adeo ut* þufþe *in Codice nostro* Harleyano *sit legendum.* [2] Edward the veil, his sone, *Ar.* [3] Logher was he þenne his fader of clergie and wisdom, But more glorious thenne he in power that hỳm come. He wanne *Ar.*

Vor þe heye tounes in þe lond and þe castles þerto
Mýd gode kýngtes he let astorý, & mýd sustýnance þerto.
So þat ware þe kýng were, and þer come her fon,
In eche contreye prest hii were mýd þe lond volc anon,
And smýte moný bataýle, þat þe kýng ýt nuste,
So þat mýd strengþe of heye tounes ech contreye hým sulf wuste.
Hýs soster he let spousý, þat ýhote was Elfled,
To þe kýng, þat huld þe March of hým, þat ýhote was Eþelred.
[1] So þat heo mýd chýlde was, and þogte hýre so sor,
Ar þat chýld were ýbore, þat heo ne wýllede ýt nanmor.
Com more to þulke stoupe vor me ne mýgte ýre bringe,
þat heo wolde euer eft in manne's bedde come vor non þýng,
Ac euere seýde, wanne heo was of suche þýnge býsogt,
" þat kýnge's dogter, as he was, ýt býcom nogt,
" Such fol delýt vorto do, ne such dede naþemo,
" þat were encheson afterward of such pýne and wo.
" Ac gýf þe [2] býgýnnýge were gut as strong, as ýs þe ende,
" Ich wene gut moný womman þulke weý wolde wende.
þe luþer Edwolf was þe kýnge's broþer Edward,
And, vor pur hate agen ýs broþer, held as assreward.

[1] Tho that heo with childe was, and hadde hit i bore, And hadde i felte the woo ther of, she saide therfore, That eche woulde sheo neuere in manne's bedde more, For sheo hadde had so mýche sorow & sore; And seide, sheo nulde neuer efte suche dede do, That shuld be encheson of suche sorow and wo. On Athelwolde, Eme's son of this kyng Edwarde, For hate ganne to werrý hým as a shereward. The Danes *Ar. Ethelwoldum etiam filium patrui regis appellat Will. Malmesb. f.* 25. *b.* [2] *Sic.*

þe

þe Deneȳs" were in Homberlond, to hem he gan drawe.
Hii auonge hȳm vayre ȳnou, & were wȳþ him wel vawe,
And made hȳm her kȳng anon, ȳs broþer vorto ssende.
Sone hii greȳþed her ost þo, Souþward vorto wende,
And asaȳle Estsex, and nome þat lond anon.
Vor þe maȳstres of þe lond ȝolde to hem echon.
þo wende hii in to þe March, & muche sorwe made,
And robbede and destrude vaste anon to [1] Creskelade.
So hii passede Temese, and dude wo ȳ nou.
Kȳng Edward sone mȳd ȳs ost after hem drou,
And drof hem in to Homberlond mȳd wel quȳc pas.
Ac kȳng Edwolf þer after sone aslawe was.
Vor þo kȳng Edward & ȳs men hamward ywend were,
[2] þat folc of Kent, aȝen ȳs wȳlle, [3] bȳleuede bȳ hȳnde þere.
þo Edwolf and þe Deneȳs wuste hem so bȳleue,
[4] To hem hii smȳte anon, and bataȳle hem ȝeue.
þe Kent ers stode vaste aȝen, & þe kȳng Edwolf slowe.
Heȳe & lowe þer were aslawe, in eȳþer alf ȳnowe.
Kȳng Edward þe nȳþe ȝer of ȳs kȳnedom
þe castel made of Hereforde, and to gode ende com.
þe ȝer þerafter þe Deneȳs [5] wende fram Leȳcestre to Norþhamtone
Toward Oxenford faste, and at [6] Hogenorte

---

[1] *Vulgo*, Crekelade. *Male autem* Brekkelade *in Ar.* [2] The folke *Ar.* [3] Be hynde lafte there *Ar.* [4] Towarde hem they turned a ȝe, and bataille them ȝeve. The men of Kente stode a ȳe, and this Edwolf slowe *Ar.* [5] Wente fro Northamptone Toward *Ar.* [6] *Lege*, Hogenortone, (*sive*, *ut in Ar.*) Hoggenortonne.

Slowe muche folc [1] ỳ nou, and" in þe contreỳe aboute.
Atte laste þe contreỳe folc com mỳd gret route,
And to drỳue hem al to nozte, & her preỳe hem bỳnom.
[2] Suþþe, in þe endlefte ȝer of þe kỳnge's kỳnedom,
þe Deneỳs come and robbede Norþ Walỳs vaste.
So þat to ỳrchenefeld hii come atte laste.
[3] Out of castel of Hereforde þat folc vaste þo com,
And of þe contreỳe al aboute, & bataỳle wỳþ hem nom,
And slou of hem her hexte duc, & oþere men monỳ on.
Hii, þat mỳȝte of scapỳe alỳue, of londe flowe echon.
[4] Alfled, quene of þe March, strong [5] womwan was and
[6] quenỳte
[7] In bataỳle, and ỳholde as quene in eche ponỳte.

[1] *Desunt Ar.* [2] Sithen in the. xi. yere *Ar.* [3] Oute of Herford the folke a yenst heme sone com, *Ar.* [4] Elflede, *Ar.* [5] *Pro*, womman *sive* woman. [6] *L.* queỳnte, *cum Ar. uti etiam mox infra* poỳnte. [7] Ind in bataile as a kyng i holde in eche poỳnte. Al Wales sheo ouercome, and Yorke was hure also. Atte Camelworthe sheo deỳde sethe, and buried atte Gloucestre thoo *Ar. Deinde desiderantur reliqua metra, ad Eadwardum hunc spectantia, multaque eorundem loco oratione soluta inseruntur, in quibus & indicatur, eum Wigorniæ, non Ferenduni (nunc* Faringdon, *in agro Bercheriensi) obiisse. Nam sic auctor:* This Edwarde veil deỳde atte Worcetre, and buried was at Wỳnchestre, bỳ side his fader. (*minus recte. Nam & alii Ferenduni hoc contigisse asserunt.*) *qui & hæc retulit de morte atque sepultura Ælfledæ, Elfledæ, sive Ethelfledæ:* Ethelflede, lady of Mercheneriche, a boue saide deide to fore hure brother Edwarde veil. v. ỳere, and was burỳed in Seynt Petre's churche atte Gloucestre, whiche heo, with hure husbonde [Ethelred] with grete diligence had i maked, be cause they hadde translated Seynt Oswalde's bonus fram Bardenaỳ thuder, but þat bỳ Danes destroyed, a nother abbey now in . . . . . by Eldre erchbischop of York.

Al

Al Walys heo ouercom, and þe March þerto.
Stafford heo wan, and Leycestre, and Warewyk þerto,
And Bruges & Euerwyk, & þe contreye [1] &" al so
Of Euerwyk to hyre com, hyre wylle vorto do.
At Tamewur þe heo deyde suþþe, & ybured he was y wys
In Seynt Petre's porche at Gloucestre, as þe abbey zut ys.
þe kynedom þo of þe March kyng Edward to hym nome,
As in þe syxe and tuentye zer of ys kynedom.
Kyng Edward adde þre sones: þe eldoste Aþelston,
And Edmond and Eldred, þat kynges were echon.
And suþþe he deyde at Farndone, as God zef þat cas,
And in mustre at Wynchestre by ys fader ybured was.

AþELSTON was þo kyng, þat was Edwarde's sone,
And þoru þe heye men of þe lond ycrouned at Kyngestone.
Nyne hondred zer of grace & foure & tuenty y crouned he was,
[2] And aboute an fourtyne zer kyng þer after he was.
Holy chyrche he louede wel, and rerde mony on.
þe vorste zer of ys kynedom ybore was Seyn Dunstone.
Nywe abbeyes he made [3] vaste þys gode Aþelston,
And þer nas of olde house in þe lond non,
þat he ne amendede myd som lond, oþer myd byldynge,
Oþer myd boc, oþer ryche cloþ, oþer oþer ryche þynge.

---

[1] *Abesse malim.* [2] And but an xvi. yere after kyng he nas *Ar.* [3] Many ich vnderstande, Ne olde Abbey was ther none thourgh oute al his londe, That he ne amended with summe lond, other with summe buildyng, Other with bokes other clothe, or summe riche thyng *Ar.*

Norþhomberlond he wan, and Walys and Scotlond,
And þe kynges & her lond held al in ys hond.
Hym þozte yt was more nobleye, þo he adde an hond al þys,
Vorto make kynges, þan to be kyng y wys.
Agen h› made kynges, þat kynges er were,
Bote þat hii were vnder hym, and truage hym bere.
þo hii adde her lond agen, þe kyng of Scotlond
Constantyn, and Analaf kyn of Homberlond,
Up þys kyng Aþelston gaderede men y nowe,
And here bysouþe Homber myd her ost drowe.
Analaf was gode [1] kyngt, & stalward & queynte.
Menestral he was gode ynou, & harpare in eche poynte.
To Aþelston pauylon myd ys harpe he wende,
And so wel wyþoute harpede, þat me after hym sende.
þer he harpede so wel, þat he payde al þe route,
Ac euere were ys eyen in eche hurne aboute.
After mete, þo hii nolde nanmore of ys pleý,
[2] Hii zeue hym seluer vor ys gle, & let hym go ys weý.
[3] Of þe seluer he adde hoker, vor he ne com þuder vor non,
Ac ys wylle he adde þo he seý þe stat of ys fon.
On, þat adde y be wyþ hym, þe kyng tolde þere.
þe kyng hym blamede þo, þat he nadde ytold hym er.
" Syre, he seyde, " ych was ysuore to hym ar to þe,
" And zyf ych adde hym [4] bysuykc, þe wors þou wost [5] leue me.

---

[1] Knyght *Ar.* [2] Me yaf hym yiftes for *Ar.* [3] Of his yftes he tolde scorne, *Ar.* [4] Be trayed, *Ar.* [5] Truste to me. Ac remewe to a nother stede thyne tentes Ich the rede, *Ar.*

Ac

" Ac remewe in to anoþer stude þý pauylon bý myn rede,
" Oþer þou mýȝt ȝut to nýȝt of som treson drede.
[1] þe pauylon was remeued þo, and þe kýng and alle ýs,
Ac a býssop and ýs men þer uorþ com ýwýs,
And pýȝte þer her pauýlon, & býleuede al nýȝt þere.
And þýs luþer men com anýȝt, & wende þe kýng ýt were,
And slou þe býssop and alle ýs men, þat gult nadde non.
And suþþe hii wende vorþore mo, and soȝte Aþelston.
Of hem nas he noȝt [2] ýwar [3] ar þo atte laste.
Ac sone he and ýs men armede hem wel vaste,
And Edmond ýs broþer mýd hým, [4] & þo hii preste were echon,
And wende to þýs batayle, and mette mýd her fon,
þe kýng to ýs suerde drou, and þo ne vond he non.
Hýt was mýd treson hým býnome, hard cas was þat on.
On God" almýȝtý & Seýn Aldelm þe kýng cride vaste þo,
And hii sende hým bý vayr mýracle bote in ýs wo.
To hýs scaubert he pulte ýs hond, al preste asuerd he vond
þer inne, þoru God ý sond, no betere in lond.

---

[1] Thenne to a nother stede the kyng remew gan. To that place the same nyght [a bischop] cam than, And wende to haue founde the kýng ther, so that he logged ther, But the Enmýs cam a nýght, and wende the kýng hit were, *Ar.* [2] *Tum ultra progrediens [Analaus] regem ipsum imparatum offendit, quippe qui nihil tale hostem ausurum timens, largæ quieti indulserat* Will. Malmesb. fol. 26. b. [3] Fort atte *Ar.* [4] And dighte hem echechon Faste to the bataille, to mete with hure fone. The kyng trawe wolde his swerde, when he týme I seýe, And thenne founde he there non. for hit was a waý Per aunter bý fallýng a waý, or bý summe other cas. The kýng was ther of sore abassheed, as no wonder was. On God *Ar.*

In þe kyng tresorye þat suerd [1] ẏwust ys,
As vor [2] noble relẏke, ȝut to þys daye ẏwys.
[3] I egged ẏt ys in on alf, and in þe oþer noȝt.
þere ne mẏȝte neuere gold ne seluer þeron be ẏbroȝt.
þys noble kẏng Aþelston, þo þys gode suerd hym com,
Nobẏlẏche & wel he faȝt, & so god ernest to hym nom,
þat fram þat þe sonne aros, vorte hẏt derc nyȝt was,
þe bataẏle ẏlaste, and neuere werẏ he nas.
Wat þoru ys stalwarhede, wat þoru Gode's grace,
Mony was [4] gode bodẏ, þat he slou in þe place.
þe bataẏle was at [5] Brẏmesburẏ, & þere were of Deneys
An of Scottes aslawe, and also of ẏreys,
Vẏf ȝonge [6] kẏnges, prout þoru al þẏng,
And prout Constantẏn, þat of Scotlond was kẏng.
And of oþere, þat were aslawe, me ne mẏȝte non ende ẏse.
Hii, þat of scapede alẏue, bẏgonne vaste to fle.
þus [7] þe kẏng Aþelston agaste þo ys fon.
[8] Vor hii ne ssolde in þys lond abbe [9] recet non,
[10] þe castel of Euerwyk to grounde he let caste.
(Vor ys fon were ofte þer inne, þe wule [11] he ẏlaste)

---

[1] ẏut i kepte is, *Ar.* [2] A noble *Ar.* [3] Egged in the on half, *Ar.* [4] The strong bodẏ, *Ar.* [5] Brunnesbury *Ar. Vide cl. Gibsoni nominum locorum Explicationem in Chronico Sax. uti etiam Additiones ad ejusd. Gibsoni Camdeni Britanniæ Versionem Anglicam, p.873. in comitatu Northumbr.* [6] Knẏghtes *Ar. non adeo recte.* [7] This *Ar.* [8] And for *Ar.* [9] Resceẏte *Ar.* [10] A castell *Ar. Inde certe & in additionibus oratione soluta in eodem codice scriptum legimus,* In the mene while Athelston lette throw downe, *York* an olde Castell at Ebraẏwik, that the Danes bẏ olde tẏme hadde i maked, and that hit shulde

þat hii nadde non recet, vorto greuy ys lond.
[1] Al so of ech maner porchas, þat com in ys hond,
Oþer þat ȝyf eny of ys as in porchas nome,
He verbed, þat neuere non among ys spence ne come,
Ac to hous of relygyon þat me yt al clene bere,
And to poueremen aboute, [2] þat meseyse were.
Alle þe kynges of Walys he brozte wel to lawe
To Hereford al vnder hym, to ys [3] wille vawe,
þat tuenty pound of golde ech of hem hym bere,
An [4] þretty pound of seluer fram ȝere to ȝere,
And [5] tuenty þousend [6] oxen ek to þys golde,
An hauekes and hondes, as mony as he wolde.
To certeyn wonynge he hem brozte boþe lowe & heye,
So þat [7] her wonynge were al by weste Weye,
And nothyng in þe Est alf. So þat Weye y wys
ȝt to þys [8] daye to delþ Engelond and Walys,
And þoru kyng Aþelston þat was vorst ydo.
Men [9] of Cornwayle he brozte to certeyn stude also.

---

shulde be no more refute to Enmys, and myche good, ther inne I founde, he parted a monge his men *Ar. Sed videsis* Will. Malmesb. *fol.* 27. *b.* 11. Hit dude i laste) *Ar.*

[1] Also of eche purchas, that he gat to his honde, Othur that any of his men that any purchas nome, He for bede that neuere mo a mong his purchas come, *Ar.* [2] That seke and mysaised were *Ar.* [3] Wille wel fawe, *Ar.* [4] *Trecentas* Will. Malmesbur. [5] 25. *millia* Will. M. [6] Oxen a yere to this golde, *Ar.* [7] The Walesshmen he putte beyonde Weigh, *Ar.* [8] Day deleth *Ar.* [9] *Inde digressus in Occidentales Brittones se convertit, qui Cornewallenses vocantur, quod in Occidente Brittanniæ siti, cornu Galliæ ex obliquo respiciunt. Illos quoque impigrè adorsus, ab Excestra, quam ad id temporis æquo cum Anglis jure inhabitarant, cedere com-

Vor bygonde þe water of Tamer he adde hem alle ybrogt.
To wonye þer, as in her owe, and a þys alf nogt.
Vor hii wonede þer by uore anon to Excestre rygt,
And Welsse were in Engelond vorte [1] he yt adde dygt.
Kyng Apelston louede muche Malmesbury y wys.
He gef hem of þe holy croys som, þat þere gut ys.
And he was at ys ende [2] day vayre ybured þere.
Kyng he adde arst ybe aboute an vyftene ger.

EDMOND, Apelstone's broþer, after hym was kyng,
Gode man & doutede God þoru alle þyng.
In þe ger of grace nyne hondred yt was & [3] foruty ger,
þat he was kyng y mad, and old he was er
Eygtene ger, and he was kyng syx ger [4] and day.
Foure & tuenty ger he was old, þo he aslawe lay.
Saracens þer were, þe gut byleuede in Engelond,
In Lyncolne & in Leycestre, & in Derby ych vnderstonde,
In Stafford & in Nothyngham. he drof hem al to nogt,
And Cristynemen aboute in her stude brogt.
þet hous of Glastynbury he louede wel ynou,
And made Seyn Dunston abbed þere, & to ys conseyl hym drou,
And þoru ys conseyl chyrchyn wyde he let rere,
And abbeys and priorys aboute here and þere.
In to hous of Glastynbury gret þyng he gef þo,
And grete franchyses hem grantede, þat lasteþ euermo.

---

compulit, terminum provinciæ suæ citra Tàmbram fluvium statuens, sicut Aquilonaribus Brittannis amnem Waiam limitem posuerat Will. Malmesb. *f.* 27. b.

[1] Athelstone hit right *Ar.* [2] *At* Gloucestre he deyde *Ar. in marg.* [3] *Sic.* [4] And vii. monethes *in Ar.*

[2] þat

[1] þat hỳ adde her franchỳses as veruoþ as þe kỳng,
And mỳd gode chartre, þat ȝut ỳs þer, made confermỳng.
Edwỳne ỳs sone was þat luþer was ỳnou,
And Edgar þe ȝongore þat to alle godnesse drou.
Kỳng Edmond atte laste mỳd luþer deþe's wonde
Pỳtoslyche was aslawe, alas! þulke stounde!
Vor a traỳtor of [2] ỳs lond, Lof was ỳs name,
[3] ỳflou was out of Engelond mỳd wretchede & ssame."
Suþþe adaỳ as þe kỳng sat at ỳs mete
At Pokelchyrche bỳsyde Brỳstowe, & somdel adde ỳȝete,
Lof, þỳs luþer traytor, mỳd ỳs cloþes ỳchanged þere,
Com in, & bỳuore hỳm et, anoþer man as ỳt were.
A Seỳn Austỳne's daỳ ỳt was, as ỳt valþ in Maỳ,
þe kỳng bỳhuld aboute, and þỳs traỳtor ỳ saỳ,
And auỳsed hỳm suỳþe wel, wat man yt were.
And þo he sey þat þỳs Lof, þỳs traỳtor sat þere,
He hupte hỳm vp fram þe bord, in gret wraþþe ỳnou,
And hente þỳs Lof bỳ þe top, [4] fram þe borde hỳm drou,
An defouled hỳm vnder hỳm mỳd honde & myd fote.
þe þef, þat laỳ bỳneþe hỳm, þoȝte on luþer bote,
And smot þe kỳng wỳþ a knỳf in þe breste depe ỳnou,
And, to gret harm to al þỳs lond, þe gode kỳng he slou.

---

[1] So that hii habbeth Fraunchise as hit were a kyng, As afterward me may I see, thourgh his confermỳng. Edwỳne his furste sone lithere was i nowe, But Edgar the ỳonger to all godenesse drowe *Ar.* [2] This londe, Leof *Ar. in quo &* Leof *etiam infra.* [3] I flemed was oute of Engelond, where of cam ther grame *Ar.* [4] And a doune hym drowe, *Ar.*

þet

þet folc to drou þen traytor ech lyme pecemele.
þe kyng bygan [1] by al ys lyf ys gode wel wyde dele,
And þe toun of Pokelchyrche, and oþer þat ys were
He zef in to Glastynbury, & let hym burye þere.
And þere he lyþ zut to þus day, ac y not þoru [2] wuch dom
þe toun suþþe of Pokelchyrche fram Glastynbury com.
Seyn Dunston was at Glastynbury þo þe kyng ywounded was,
And [3] zut þoru joye of Deuel he wuste of þat cas.
Vor þe Deuel com by uore hym, [4] & hoppede & lou,
And saylede and pleyde, & made joye y nou.
þys holy man wuste anon, wu ys joye was,
And þat vor som mescheance of þe kyng he made [5] so glad pas.
Toward Pokelchyrche he wende hastelyche and blyue,
An me tolde hym by þe wey, þat he was out of lyue.

EDRED was þo kyng anon after Edmond ys broþer,
Vor ys tueye sones so zonge were, þat me ne myzte abbe non oþer.
God man Edred was y nou, & to godnesse drou anon,
And muche louede holy chyrche, & þe godman Seyn Dunston.
Men of Norþhomberlond were azen hym vaste,
And of Scotlond also, ac her poer lute ylaste.

---

[1] All by his lyf his gode a boute dele. At Pukelechurche was do this dede. for thy to Glastenbury He hit yaf, and bade me shulde at Glastenbury him bury *Ar.* [2] What *Ar.* [3] yut in the same stounde he wiste of this cas *Ar.* [4] Dauncyng and lowgh, And as hit were pleying made game i nogh *Ar.* [5] Suche solas. Dunston toward Pukelchurche dight him self bliue, So that me tolde him by the way, the kyng was out of lyue *Ar.*

Vor

Vor wat wyþ loue, wat wyþ eye, he brozte hem al to ys wylle,
And her olde seruage made hem holde al stylle.
[1] Vourtene zer he was kyng, and at ys ende day,
Me tolde Seyn Dunston [2] vore," þat he syk lay.
To hym he wende hastelyche, and by þe wey ywys
He hurde angles synge an hey by the [3] lyste þys:
" þe kyng Edred nou aslepe in oure Louerd ys.
þo wuste Seyn Dunston, þat he was ywend to Heuene blys.
[4] Suche gode kynges me ssolde [5] nou vynde among,
þat angeles of her endynge myzte made song.

EDWYNE, Edmonde's sone, after Edred kyng was
Fals & luþer, vor non worse in ys kunde nas.
As a nywe Herodes in such poer he com,
[6] And vp ys poer destrude and apeyrede Cristendom.
A fol womman in spousbreche he huld vnder ys wyf.
Seyn Dunston hym seyde wel, þat yt was a luþer lyf.
And, as Seyn Jon Baptyst, kalangede her mys dede.
Wroþ was þe kyng and ys hore, þat he her folye [7] wyþ,

---

[1] The Latyn seiþ ix. yere and a half *Ar. in margine.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] *Idem quod Angl. Sax.* luyt *sive* desiderium *vel* fervor. *Sed hîc loci* hilaritatem *signabit. perinde ac si dicas,* he heard angels sing on high with mirth this *sive* thus. *Inde in Cod. Ar.* And as he wende to him warde, he hurde by the way A mery song of angeles thus seggyng heye *&c.* [4] Suche dede kynges now fewe bene vs amonge, That angelus atte hure endyng maketh of eny songe *Ar.* [5] *Potius,* uou, *i. e.* few, *ut ex Ar. constat, nisi cum eod. Cod.* few *adjicias, retento* nou. [6] And with his vnell lyuyng apeyred Cristendom *Ar.* [7] *F.* wyþ sede.

And

And þe womman fondede, hym to deþe brynge.
So þat Seyn Dunston was, þoru hyre and þe kyng,
I flou out of Engelond, and to Flaundres wende.
[1] þe gode man ne toc neuere gome, þat me hym so foule ssende.
Abbeys þys luþer man brogte ek in alle wo.
And þat hous of Malmesbury, þat an old hous was þo,
[2] Of" tuo hondred ger and seuenty yrerd þer byuore,
He made yt stable to ys hors, as yt were alle vorlore.
So luþer man was þe kyng, þat þe heymen of þe londe
Bygonne, as hii nede moste, agen hym vaste at stonde,
And bynome hym muche of ys lond, [3] & bytoke Edgar ys broþer.
Vor he drou to alle godenesse, and [4] betere was þan oþer.
þys Edwyne was þus kyng þre ger, and somdel more,
And þat lond vor ys deþe ne wep nogt ouersore.
And gut vor al ys ssrewede, as yt ywryte ys,
þoru byddynge of Seyn Dunston, ys soule com to blys.

EDGAR Edwyne's broþer, & Edmonde's sone þe kyng,
Kyng was after Edwyne, gode man þoru alle þyng.
Non lyckore ys broþer hym nas, þan an wolf ys a lombe,
Of manere ne of dede, þey hii were in one wombe.
Vor þulke tyme þat Edgar of ys moder was ybore,
Seyn Dunston was at Glastynbury, & þerafter & byuore,
þo hurde he þulke tyme angles synge ywys
Up in þe lufte a murye song, & þat song was þys:

[1] The gode man was wel a paide of þat God hym sende *Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] And toke hit Edgar his brother *Ar.* [4] Heigher *Ar.*

"To

" To holy chyrche & to þe lond peys ys ybore and blys
" By þulke chylde's tyme, þat nou ybore ys.
[1] Suþþe þo Seyn Dunston wuste, þat þe chyld was ybore ryȝt þo
He wuste, þat al Engelond he ssolde bryngе of wo.
And so he dude. vor þo he was, after ys broþer, kyng
He broȝte al þat lond in pes, þat er was in stryuyng.
He vndude alle luþer lawes, þat me huld byuore,
And gode lawes broȝte vorþ, þat er were as uorlore.
Scotlond and Norþhomberlond and Walys al so
Wyþ out heste to hym come, ys wylle vorto do.
þe erþe ȝeld bet, & þe weder was [2] mergore by ys daye,
And lasse tempest in þe see þan me er ysaye.
Me tolde hym of Seyn Dunston, þat ys broþer drof of londe.
After hym he sende anon, & he com þoru ys sonde,
And ys abbeye auong in pes, fram wan he was so longe,
And was þe kynge's conseyler, & vayre was vnder vonge.
Erchebyssop of Kanterbury þoru þys gode kynge
Syen Dunston was suþþe ymad, þe more godnesse to bringe.
[3] þys kyng al so at Glastynbury, as he þeruorþ com,
Seynt Aþelwold, þat was þer monek, out of ys house he nome,
And ȝef hym [4] an place in Barcssyre, þat muche ys in mone,
Vyf myle by Souþe Oxenford, þat me clupeþ Abendone.
þys holy man Seyn Aþelwold bulde þere vaste,
And a uayre abbey þer bygan, [5] þat euereft aþ ylaste.

---

[1] There by knewe Seynt Dunston, that he, that bore was tho, Shulde kepe Engelond in his tyme fro woo *Ar.* [2] Meryer *Ar.* [3] This kyng also fro Glastenbury as he *therforth* come Seynt *Ethel*wolde, that was ther monek, oute of the house nome, *Ar.* [4] A *Ar.* [5] That hider to doth last *Ar.*

Vorst

Vorst abbod he was þere hỳmsulf, & monekes to hỳm nome.
In þỳs manere Abendone vorst to abbeye com.
[1] It byuelle, þat þe bỳssop of Wỳnchester was ded,
þe kỳng hỳm made bỳssop þere, þoru Seỳn Dunstone's red,
Atte heye chỳrche of Wynchester, þer ỳs se was ỳdo,
þat me clupede chỳrche cathedral, & ȝut me deþ also.
Canons þer were Seculers, þo he vorst þuder come,
Ferce men and prout, þat muche were in herdom.
þe kỳng and Seyn Aþelwold aȝen hem sette vaste,
[2] And out of þe hous & of her rentes ech after oþer caste,
And made an hous of monekes, to holde her ordre bet.
þe monckes out of Abendone vorst were þuder ỳuet.
Of Seỳn Swỳþỳn þat hous was, as ỳt ỳs ȝut also,
So þat out of Abendone ỳ was vorst ỳdo.
In secunde ȝer þat he vorst bỳssop was
þỳs gode kỳng and he dude þỳs gode cas,
And ek in þe vỳfte ȝer of þe kỳnge's kỳnedom
Seyn Aþelwold vorst bỳssop was, & þe byssopryche nome.
þỳs gode kỳng Edgar [3] & he" Seỳn Swỳþỳn atte fỳne,
þat longe adde vnder erþe ỳleye, vorst brozte into ssrỳne.
Issrỳned he was nỳne hondred ȝer, & on & seuentỳþe ȝer,
After þat our Louerd alỳȝte in ỳs moder anerþe here.
Kỳng [4] Edgar & Seỳnt Aþelwold in Wynchester arerde also
Anoþer hous of monekes, þat ȝut stondeþ boþe tuo.

---

[1] The kyng made him bysshop after thorgh Seỳnt Dunstoun's rede In the churche of Wynchestre, & ther suthe he was dede. Ther were Chanons Seculers tho he thuder come, That lỳued in pruỳte and lỳther lỳf, and mỳche in hordom *Ar.* [2] And of hure houses and hure rentes eche after caste *Ar.* [3] *Desunt Ar.* [4] *Reliqua pene omnia carmina, ad*

And ȝut þe þrýdde hii rerde al so þere of Seýnte Marýe
Of wýnmen of relýgýon, and made a nonnerýe.
þe priorýe of Helý, þere a býssoprýche ýs,
And þe abbeý of Petresboru, hii arerde also ýwýs,
And þorneý and Rameseýe, and oþere moný on.
Vor eýȝte & fourtý abbeýes hii rerde in þýs lond echon.
As þýs kýng Edgar an honteþ ýwend was
Alone he com fram ýs men, as God ȝef þat cas,
So þat he alýȝte adoun, and aslepe laý.
þo þoȝte hým in ýs slepe, þat an heý tre he saý
Stonde þere býsýdes hým, as he býhuld an heý.
Upe þe hexte bowe tueýe applen he seý,
And þe bowes of þe on appel smýte oþer vaste
So harde, þat he vel adoun in þe water atte laste.
A uoýs seýde, as hým þoȝte, þes wordes þoru soun,
" Wel ýs þe, wel ýs þe," as he vel adoun.
þo he awok, hým þoȝte wonder of þýs cas,
Hýs gode moder Alfýfe he tolde al hou ýt was.
" ȝe leue sone," quaþ moder, " þe toknýng herof ýs,
" þe heýe tre, þat þou ýseýe, býtokneþ þe ýwýs.
" þe tueýe applen býtokneþ, ȝýf þou yt wolt ýwýte,
" Tueye heýe sones of þe, þat þou ssalt býȝýte,
" þat þe one's bowe smýte þen oþer to grounde,
" þat ýs, þat þe oþere's frende ssolle þe oþer sle mýd wounde.
" þe voýs, þat seýde, " wel ýs þe," to tokný þat ýs,
" þat hým worþ wel ýnou, vor to heuene he wende ýwýs.

---

ad Edgarum spectantia, desiderantur in Ar. in quo tamen plura, ad eundem pertinentia, oratione prosaica concepta, habentur.

Al þys bynel afterward. vor sones he adde tueye,
Seyn Edward and Aeldred, þat kynges were beye,
And one's kunrede þen oþer suþþe slou,
And he wende to heuene, and was wel y nou.
He adde Edward by ys vorste wyf, as ych abbe y sed,
And by Alfrede, ys oþer wyf, he adde Aeldred.
And Alfyfe, ys god moder, let rere ywys
Vorst þat hous of Ssafteburỳ, as Seyn Edwarde's bodỳ ys.
Kyng Edgar adde vnder hym alle þe kynges hereabqute.
Vor þer nas non ywys, þat nadde of hym [1] dounte,
þeruor þe kyng of Walys, as in gret seygnorye,
He het, þat he hym sende eche ger by maystrye
þre [2] þousend of wolues, in name of truage.
þe Welysse kyng, vp ys power, dude hym þe seruage,
And sende hym þys wolues fram gere to gere.
þre þousend at certeyn terme vor þat lond delyuered were.
þre ger he huld ys rente, ac þe verþe was by hynde.
Vor he sende þe kyng word, þat he ne myzte nanmo yfynde.
And þat was lute wonder, vor to vale þer were by vyue.
Vor al þat lond were þe wors, adde hii byleued alyue,
Boþe Walys and Engelond þe betere ys þeruore gut,
And þeruore þe gode man yt dude more þan vor prute.
þys gode kyng Edgar, þat so stalworde kyng was,
And wys & hardy þoru out al, bote lute of body nas.
þeruore þe kyng of Scotlond enuye adde þerto,
And [3] as he sat at mete, & mony oþer kyngt al so,

---

[1] *L.* doute. [2] Hundred *a ii. Et sic etiam scriptor pr. sai. us in Cod. Ar.* [3] And so by fel atte a fest, where many wordes communliche ben spoke, Kynad, kyng of Scottes,

He seyde a wel hey word among ys kyngtys echon,
þat he adde gret hoker, (& wonder nas yt non)
Of a so lute halue man, as kyng Edgar was,
þat þer nas lond ne prince non, þat of hym adrad nas.
þys word com to þe kyng Edgar, þeruor he þogte hym teche,
Wuch were þe halue man, 3yf he myzte hym of reche.
He com and mette hym in a wode, and bed hym abyde,
And he adde vor þe nones tueye suerdes by ys syde.
He drou out boþe tuo, and bed hym nyme an honde,
And chese weþer he wolde, and þen halue man vonde,
And loke wer þe halue man hym myzte out at stonde.
Vor dercyny hii wolde hem sulue tuo, & take Gode's sonde.
þe oþer vel adoun akne anon ryzt vor drede,
And cryde hym mercy vor Gode's loue of þat he mys seyde,
Kyng Edgar adde reuþe of hym, so reulych he gan crie.
" Syre kyng," he seyde, " ech god man yt ys vyleynye
" To be of bold word atte mete, & coward in þe velde.
" Understonde þe bet efsone, and hold me þyn helde.
þe godenesse al of kyng Edgar none tonge telle ne may.
Mony was þe god abbey þat he rerde by ys day.
Seynt Edward þe marter, as ych seyde er, was ys sone
By ys raþere wyf, and Seynt [1] Edyþe of Wyltone,

---

tes, in his borde seide thus; "Me "wondreth," quath he, "that "suche an halfe man as Ed- "gar shulde wynne so many "prouinces *Auctor prosaicus in Cod. Ar.*

[1] *Atqui cave sis, ne pro filia legitima habeas. Spuria etenim erat, è Wlfritha sive Wlfrida ab Edgaro suscepta. Inde* Will. Malmesb. *(f. 33. b.)* "*Nam de Egelfleda, cogno-* "*mento candida filia* Ordmeri "*ducis potentissimi* Edwardum "*genuit, & sanctum* Editham "*de* Wlfritha, [*al.* Wlfrida] "*quam certum est non tunc*

"*sanctimonialem fuisse, sed ti-*
"*more Regis puellam laicam se*
"*velavisse, moxque eandem ar-*
"*repto velo lecto imperiali sub-*
"*actam: Unde offensum bea-*
"*tum* Dunstanum, *quòd illam*
"*concupisset, quæ vel umbra-*
"*ticè sanctimonialis fuisset,*
"*vigorem Pontificalem in eum*
"*egisse.*" *Quæ verba & ipsum etiam auctorem prosaicum in Codice Ar. ob oculos habuisse compertum habeo, quamvis Sanctam Editham non nominet. Sic nempe ille:* To this Ensample of cruwelte (*jam antea locutus fuerat de Ethelwoldo, ab Edgaro occiso, eo quod minus honeste sese gessisset in negotio ad filiam ducis Devoniæ, Venere quasi ipsa formosiorem, pertinente*) er dude, his foos putteth a nother, that is to saye, that Wulfride monechỳn i sacred he toke out of hure abbey, & delt with her holdỳng his lemman. Which Poỳnt whenne Seỳnt Dunstone hurde, he blamed and vndername the kyng hugeliche, so that he sette vii. ỳeres penaunce vpon him, the wh ch he toke on hỳm, that is to say of, and that vii. yere he bare no crowne. But summe saith, that this Wulfride was nat ve eliche a nonne, bote that for drede of the kỳng a Seculer woman i veỳled, and a none the veile so i doo a waỳ, & take to the kỳnge's bedde. but nat for than Dunstone dude the lawe a ỳenst the kyng as for a nonne, suth that the kyng wolde coueỳte anỳ, whether she were verreliche veiled or noo. But how so euer thes this [*sic*] thỳnges were, certeỳne hit is, that fro the xvi. ỳere of his age, whiche ỳer he was ordeyned kỳng, a non to the xxx. ỳere him lakked his coronỳng. And thenne was he crowned atte Bathe, and lỳued after but iii. ỳere. *Neque hac in re magni æstimandam esse censeo auctoritatem rotulæ cujusdam membranæ, sermone Gallico, penes Richardum Gravesium, amicum illum eruditissimum, de Mickleton in agro Gloucestriensi, in qua rotula tanquam filia legitima commemoratur Editha, contra fidem scriptorum optimorum. Hæc enim verba rotulæ:* Iceti Edgar auoit. ii. femmes, le vne apres lautre. De la primer il engendra Edward, ke puis fu martỳr, e Seint Edith. de la secunde Eamun e Ethelred. *Quam tamen rotulam idcirco plurimi faciendam esse duco, quod plerisque, quas vidi, sit antiquior, picturasque regum ac principum exhibeat, minus equidem elegantes, sed quæ antiquariis multis in rebus usui esse possint. Sed (quod dolendum) imperfecta*

est

He deyde & wende to heuene nyn hondred ȝer ych wene
As in [1] þe of grace, and syxty and fyftene.

SEYNT Edward þe marter, ys eldore sone,
After hym was kyng ymad, as lawe was & wone.
þe godnesse of þys ȝonge kyng ne may no tonge telle.
Vor he was mek & mylde ynou, & vayr of flesse & felle,
Debonere to speke wyþ, & wyþ pouere men mest.
Chast and wys of conseyl, and prute he louede lest.
Wylde men ne louede he noȝt, þat rechyles were of þoȝte,
Ac wyse men he drou to hym, & after hem he wroȝte.
Ech gret dede þat he dude, þe messtedel ssolde go
After þe erchebyssop Seyn Dunston, þat was þo.
Gode pes þer was in Engelond, & loue & joye ynou,
And rychesse by ys daye, vor elles yt were wyþ wou.
To þe godnesse of þys holymon þe deuel adde enuye,
And þe luþer quene ys stepmoder, þat vol was of tricherye.
Vor heo þoȝte nyȝt & day, ȝyf heo myȝte þoru eny þyng
þat Seynt Edward were aslawe, & yre sone ymad kyng.
þe ȝer þat he ymartred was þe hexte men of þe lond
In þe toun of Calne were, as ych vnderstonde.

---

est rotula, quippe quæ incipit ab Athelstano rege, desinitque cum Edwardo post conquæstum primo, priori parte, pariter atque posteriori, abscissa, & forsitan funditus deperdita. in cujus sane Athelstani regis pictura illud plane observatu dignissimum esse video, quod sceptrum sive insigne regium in manu teneat sinistra, veterum ad amussim referens βακτηρίας: minime absurde, quum princeps esset bellicosissimus, clavaque Herculea usum fuisse censerent hostes. cujusmodi tamen βακτηρίας neutiquam, quod sciam, videas in nummis Athelstanianis.

[1] *Adde*, ȝer.

As hii sete in an chambre an heý in conseýl of speche
þe flor to brac vnder hem, as ýt were vor wreche,
And hii velle and debrusede somme anon to deþe,
And somme ýmaýmed, & somme ýhurt, so þat ený vnneþe,
Wýþoute gret harm, of scapede, bote Seýn Dunston by cas,
þat hente hým bý a bem, and ýsaued was.
Wat bý toknede þýs, þat þe heýme men velle so,
Bote þat hii and al þat lond býneþe ssolde be ýdo,
þoru folc of strange lond, and þat me ssolde ýse,
Vor hii soffrede her kýng so výllýche ý morþred be?
Vor a daý as Seýn Edward an hontey wende bý cas
In an wode in Dorsete, þat býsýde [1] Warham was,
þat vaýr wode was þulke týme, a gret wýlle hým com to,
Vor to ýse ýs ȝonge broþer, (vor anon he þoȝte ýt do.)
Vor he was a lute þer býsyde, as ýs stepmoder was,
In an toun, þat me cluped Corf, þat bote þre mýle þanne nas.
A strong castel þer ýs nou, ac þo nas non þere.
Longe þoȝte Seynt Edward at ýs broþer ar he were.
An vewe men mýd hým he nom, & þuder ward gan ryde.
Hýs men pleýde bý þe weý, & spradde aboute wýde.
So þat þýs holý kýng alone was sone,
And alone wende vorþ, as he þoȝte to donc.
þo hys luþer stepmoder alone ýseý hým come,
Heo þoȝte do ýre wýlle of hým, as heo adde ýr red ý nome.
þo þýs holý man was neý ýcome, þe quene aȝen hým eode
Wyþ noble maýne ýnou, & gret loue hým gan bede.
þe feste þat heo wýþ hym made non tonge telle ne maý.
Heo suor, þat he ssolde alýȝte, & býleue mýd ýre al day.

[1] Wharham *Ar.*

" Certes,

" Certes, madame," quaþ þys oþer, " so ne may ýt noȝt be.
" Ac lat me speke mýd mý broþer, vor me longeþ hym to se.
" Vor ar ých hým abbe ýseýe, ý ne worþe noȝt blýþe ýwýs,
" Mýn herte ýs so muche on hým, & non wonder hýt nýs.
" A, syre," quaþ þys luþer quene, " wanne ýt ne maý oþer be,
" Vorst ých wolle to þe drýnke, & suþþe þou ssalt hým ýse.
" As me hým drýnke toc, on was prest ýnou,
" And þoru ýs wombe smot a knýf, and ýs gottes to droȝ.
A long knýf ýt was & smal ý nou, as me maý ȝut ýse
Atte chýrche of Kauersham, as he aþ ȝare ýbe.
þýs holýman sat vp rýȝt, & ýseý ýs deþe's wounde.
He ne rod bote lute weý, ar he vel to grounde,
An let þer ýs suete lýf, and to heuene wende.
Awey! lute wel þoȝte he, þo me ýs wombe rende.
þo þýs holý man ýmartred was, hii, þat hým þer broȝte to,
Býþoȝte hou hii mýȝte best mýd þe holý bodý do.
Hii porueýde an derne stude, & þer inne ýt caste
Výllýche & stýllelýche, & bured ýt þer vaste.
þo þýs dede was ýdo, þe quene adde al hyre wýlle,
(Vor me [1] hal euere mýd þe quýke,) þe dede was sone stýlle.
Seýnt Edward þe [2] výfte ȝer of ýs kýnedom
Aȝen eue adaý aslawe was in such marterdom.

[3] AELDRED, þe quene sone, þat kyng was ýmad þo,
Nas bote of ten ȝer old, þo ýs moder dude þýs wo.
Ne of þýs dede nuste he noȝt, bote as God ȝef þat cas.
In þe [4] luft he hurde anheý, as he alone was,

---

[1] Holt *Ar.* [2] Ferst *Ar. minus recte.* [3] Ethelred *Ar. tam hîc, quam & in seqq.* [4] Welkne he hurde *Ar.*

Hys broþer, þat was aslawe, pytoslyche grede.
þet chyld cryde & sore wep, & ys moder þat cas sede
Welle, þat þys luþer quene anguyssous was þo.
[1] þat chyld heo hente vaste anon, þat he ne moste on vot go.
ȝerd ne vond heo prest non, þat chyld vorto bete,
An honduol heo hente of [2] candlen longe and grete.
[3] þat chyld heo bete [4] so stronge myd þe condlen long & towe,
Heo ne byleuede nogt ar he lay at hyre vet yswowe.
[5] Warþoru þys chyld afterward, such hey man as he was,
Was þe worse wan he sey condlen vor þys cas.
Wat halt yt to telle longe? þys chyld me made kyng,
Ac Seyn Dunston [6] wel" vnneþe wolde do þe sacring.
[7] Vor god man spek ek þerof wel longe by uore,
þo he baptysed þys Aeldred, sone so he was y bore.
Vor þe chyld fuled in hys hond þe water & þe vanston,
Byuore byssopes þat þer were, and heye men mony on,
And dude hys kunde fulþ hede. Seyn Dunston seyde anon,
þat he ssolde of sunne encheson be, & of wrechhede mony on.
And þo he ssolde [8] kyng be, þys god man Seyn Dunston
Hatede muche to crouny hym, ȝyf he yt myȝte ver gon.
[9] Ac þo he moste nede yt do, þoru pur londe's lawe,
"Syre kyng," he seyde, "vor þou art myd vnryȝt herto
ydrawe,

[1] The childe *Ar.* [2] Wexchandellen *Ar.* [3] The *Ar.* [4] So sore bette with *Ar.* [5] Wherfor euer afterward, for this ilke cas, Whenne he suche candelen seigh, the worse him thoght he was *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] Of him prophecied Dunston long by fore, Tho that he christened him whenne he was ibore *Ar.* [8] I crouned be, the godeman Dunston Wel loth he was to croune *Ar.* [9] But whenne he most nedes hit doo, by the londe's lawe, *Ar.*

"Up

" Up þý nowe heued ýt ssal come þý moder luþer plawe
" þoru ssedýnge of þý broþer blod, þat þus ýs brozt of dawe.
" And vor Englýsse men were wel ýpaýd
" In ssedýnge of þý broþer blod, þat so was býtraýd,
" þer vor her poer ssal al clene hem be býnome,
" [1]And þou al so. Vor strange folc of strange londe ssal come,
" And þý lond vor þýn seruage & to grounde ýbrozt.
" And al þat ssal come bý þýne daý, & bý mýne nozt.
" Atte laste our Louerd wolle of hem vnderstonde.
And al þýs word to soþe com suþþe to Engelond.
zut Eldfred, þe leþer quene, þat Seýnt Edward slou,
Of ýr trepas býuore ýre deþ repentant was ýnou,
And rerde tuo nonneryes, Worwel þat one was,
And Ambresbury þet oþer, to bete ýre trespas,
An adde grace, zýf God wolle, ýre sýnne vor to bete,
And come to gode amendement, ar heo þat lýf lete.
þe þrýdde zer, as ýt wolde be, of Aýldrede's kýnedom,
þe býgýnnýnge of þýs sorwe to Engelond vorst come.
Vor of þe volc of Denemarch þer ariuede þo,
Atte hauene of Souþ hamtone, sene ssýp vol & [2]nanmou,
An robbede þe toun vaste, at her poer noþýng nas.
þýs was as a tokne þat to comýng was,
As bý Seýnt Dunstone's daý nanmore þer ne com.
Vor he deýde þe teþe zer of þe kýnge's kýnedom,

---

[1] On the also strange folke of other londe shall come. This londe worth in seruage, and be to gronnde i brought *Ar.* *Igitur pro* vor þýn *reponerem* worþ ýn, *i.e.* shall be to.

[2] Nomo, And gonne to robbe faste a boute, but lite here power nas. This was the furst tokene of woo to come that was. But by Dunstone's *Ar.*

And nẏne hondred ȝer & eẏȝte & eẏȝtetẏ after þat God was ybore.
And þe bẏssop Seẏnt Athelwold was ded þer bẏuore,
And Seẏnt Oswald þe bẏssop after þre ȝer,
As in þe [1] þretteþe ȝer þat þe kẏng croune ber.
[2] þer betere peẏs ẏt was vor hem þe wule hii were alẏue.
[3] Ac after her daẏe sone, þe sorwes spronge blẏue.

---

[1] xiii. yere *Ar.* [2] The better *Ar.* [3] But after her daẏes sone sorwes sprong rẏue. This kyng, er he hadde a wẏf, he gat ane sone Bi a symple woman, that worth euer in mone, That, for his strengh, called was Edmunde Irenside. For so orped knẏght me ne knewe wide *Ar. minus quidem recte, & contra fidem eximii probique nostri historici Roberti, qui plane docuit, Edmundi matrem uxorem re vera fuisse Ethelredi. id quod etiam fecerunt alii optimæ notæ scriptores, (inter quos jure optimo censendus eruditissimus Bradius) secus atque illi, qui, partibus addicti, nothum Edmundum (è concubina nimirum genitum) fuisse produnt, in quibus & ipse erat Jacobus Tyrrellus, qui tamen, paullo antequam fatis concessisset, me monente in Lelando nostro, (Coll. Vol. VI. p. 75.) sententiam mutavit, ut è nota quadam liquet in Bibliotheca Bodleiana ab ipso Jacobo propria manu in Historia sua Angliæ generali scripta, quam simul atque commodum fuerit consulas velim. Ceterum & illud notandum est, per* symple woman *in Cod. Ar. non aliud quam* ignobilem feminam *esse intelligendum, de qua re nos etiam breviter egimus in Lelando. id quod etiam viderat auctor prosaicus in Cod. Ar. ubi de Edmundo sic scribit:* This kynge's [Ethelred] sone was not of Emme quene, but of a nother woman unknow to the commune peple. Natheles he was a faire, jolyf ẏong man, a strong man and hardẏ, and for thi of Englẏsshmen was he cleped Edmunde Irenside. He muche a leide þe cowardẏse of his fader, and þe loughnesse of his moder in him self thorgh his vertue noblelich. *Atque hæc chartis mandaveram priusquam rotulam (cujus supra, p. 286. mentionem feci) Gravesianam vidissem, quæ tamen nec ipsa illis favet, qui Ed-*

Þe kyng adde by hys vorste wyf one stalwarde sone,
Þat, vor hys stalwardhed, longe worþ in mone.
Vor me ne vond non so gode kyngt ware so he wende wyde.
Me cleped hym, vor hys strengþe, Edmond yrensyde."
Þe sorwes, as ych chabbe ytold, spronge aboute ylome.
Vor þat folc of Denemarch sone to londe come,

Edmundum nothum fuisse velint. Contra, picturæ tanquam primogenitum heredemque Ethelredi exhibent, verbaque ipsa filium ex uxore non è concubina fuisse innuunt. hæc nempe, pro interpunctione rotulæ. Icesti Ethelred engendra Eamun yreneside de vne femme aliene ke fu la soer au duc de Normandie. si engendra alured ke fu trai par Goudwyn count de kent. E Edward le confessour ke gist a Westmoster. *E quibus verbis non est quod colligas, Edmundi matrem fuisse ducis Normanniæ sororem, quæ tamen (utpote Ethelredi uxor secunda) Aluredi atque Edwardi mater revera erat. Id quod satis erit manifestum, si hoc modo verba rotulæ distinguantur.* Icesti Ethelred engendra Eamun Yreneside. De une femme aliene, ke fu la soer au duc de Normandie, si engendra Alured, ke fu trai par Goudwyn count de Kent, e Edward le Confessour, ke gist a Westmoster. *Hæc distinctio si probetur, id utique liquebit, rotulæ auctorem Edmundi matrem ignobilem itidem fuisse censuisse, nihilque proinde de eadem à seipso fuisse dicendum. Ceterum non diffiteor, alibi etiam de* Ireuside *matre locutum fuisse scriptorem prosaicum in codice Ar. eamque pro concubina habuisse.* After the deth (*inquit ille*) of Knut, Harolde & Hardeknut, kynges of Engelonde, regned Seynt Edwarde Confessour, Edmunde Ireuside's brother in his fader's half, that is to seye of Ethelred kyng, but nat in the moder. for this Edmunde Ireuside was gete of vnlawfulle bedde, thoughe he were noble and stronge in batayle. *Atque hæc sub Henrico II°. tradit, ubi de Henrici II^li. stemmate agit, verba dicta interim innuens è Chronicis Gallicis se produxisse.*

And

And anour alf þys lond þe hauenes hii adde ysoȝt.
So þat Norþhomberlond was al to grounde ybroȝt.
Kent hii destrude also god, & þe Est contreye wyde.
[1] Exetre hii barnde al adoun, & in þe West syde.
Vr kyng worrede ofte aȝen, as he myȝte do.
Ac wreche of ys broþer deþ wel harde hym com to.
Vor hys poer was lute worþ. vor he ȝef hem atten ende
Four þousend pound of sterlynges, hem aȝen to wende.
So þat hys quene deyde, and of sorwe and sore
Hym com in eche half, euere þe leng þe more.
Vor þe Deneys come aȝen, and in euerýche ende
Hym worrede her & þer, þat he nuste wuder wende.
He býþoȝte hym wel narwe, ȝyf þer myȝte be eny red
þoru wynynge, oþer þoru eny þyng, [2] vor hys wyf was ded,"
He vnder stod, þat Rychard, duc of Normandye,
Was man of gret poer, and of gret seygnorye,
Vor Emme, hys [3] gode doȝter," he sende ofte ys sonde,
To spouse hyre and to make hyr quene of Engelond,

---

[1] The West contre also they wonne Deuenshire, And the Toune of Excestre sette thay a fuyr. Our kyng werred *Ar.* [2] *Tam hic quam & alibi mire omnia permutantur in Ar. ita scilicet, ut hæc verba plane omittat, ne Edmundi* Irenside *matrem Ethelredi uxorem fuisse agnosceret.* [3] Good suster, *Ar. Sed discrepantia inde orta, quia Richardus & Emma filii erant Richardi primi, ducis Normanniæ. Hinc certe scriptor prosaicus in eod. Codice Ar.* Thes [Emme] was Richarde's doughter, duc of Normandie, which. L. wynter after William his fader gouerned thulke Duchie, which the xviii. yere this kyng deyde. And after him came Richarde the II. whas suster was thees Emme.

þat

þat he myȝte, þoru alyance, eny help vndergo,
To wyte hym fram hem of Denemarch, þat dude þys lond so wo.
So þat þo hii were aton, þe spousynge was ydo,
As in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and tuo,
And of þe kynge's crounynge in four & tuenty þe ȝere.
[1] þo þoȝte þe kyng, þat he adde of ys fon þe lasse fere.
[2] And here sprong, lo! þe vorste more as of hem of Normandie,
Ware þoru hii come in to þys loud, & [3] abbeþ þe maystre.
Vor þe kyng adde by [4] þys. M. tueye sones ywys,
Alfred, & Seynt Edward þat at Westymustre yssryned ys.
And of þulke blode suþþe Wyllam bastard com,
As ȝe ssolle her after yhure, and wan þys kynedom.
þat poer muche of Denemarch in pes wytoute stryf
Was hem ywend to Denemarch, ar þe kyng weddede wyf.
þe kyng, vor ys grete poer, as of ys [5] wynnyge,
Alle þe Denęys, þat were byleued, he let to deþe bringe
In a Seynt Bryçe day, and in one day echon,
þat non nere of oþere ywar, ne þat þer ne of scapede non.
Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, þo he hurde of þys cas,
Made hym wroþ & wod ynou, & eche þat wyþ hym was.
Hii greyþed hem myd gret poer, and to Engelond come
As in þe uyue & tuentyþe ȝer of þe kynge's kynedome,
[6] Hud in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and þre.
Hiis slowe & sorwe dude ynou, nomore ne myȝte be.

[1] Thenne *pro* þo *in Ar.* [2] Ther sprong vppe tho the ferst more of hem of Normandye, *Ar.* [3] Hadde the seignourie *Ar.* [4] This que. ii. sones I wys *Ar. rectius. nisi forsitan* M. *pro* Mistress *vel* Maistress *sive* domina *accipias.* [5] *L.* wynninge. [6] *L.* and *cum Ar.*

So

So þẏcke hii come, þat þe lond ouer al hii gonne fulle,
As þẏcke as ameten crepeþ in an amete hulle.
Bẏ Norþe and bẏ Souþe, in þe Est and in þe West,
So þẏcke hii come, þat me nuste in wuch half kepe best.
Hii ne sparede prest ne clerc, þat hii ne slowe to grounde,
Ne men of relẏgẏon, ware so hii enẏ founde.
Ne wommane, ne soukẏng chẏlde, ne dozter, ne sone.
Hii verbarnde Norwych, and þe toun of Wẏltone.
þat a reulẏch lond was Engelond, & fol of sorwe ẏnou.
Hii mẏzte acorsẏ þe [1] folc" quene, þat Seẏnt Edward slou.
[2] Vor Suan, þe luþer duc, adde euere ys ẏuere
Þre felawes, þat next hẏm were, in echt manere
Byreẏnẏnge and robberẏe, and quellẏng atte laste,
Þẏs were hẏs þre felawes, þat he huld euere vaste.
Wanne at an god manne's house ys men were at inne,
Vorst hii wolde ete & drẏnke þat hii found þer inne,
And suþþe þe louerd of þe hous quelle and alle hẏs,
And suþþe brenne al ys hous, as vor her scot ẏwẏs.
Suche were þo þe zẏftes þat hẏder come þo.
Muche aþ Engelond ẏdryue sorwe and wo.
Mest wo hii dude in Barcssẏre, and vp Assesdoune,
And so aboute Quẏchelmesleẏ, and so in mony toune.
Atte laste kẏng Aẏldred, þo he was to grounde ẏbrozt,
And muche of þe lond aslawe and destruẏd al to nozt,

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] With this Swan, the luþer duke, iii. felwes were, Euere folwẏng hẏm, of luther manere, Robbyng and brennyng, & quellẏng the last. These made mẏche folke of him sore agast. Most sorow they dude in Berke shire aboute Asshedoune, And a boute Quicholmes theẏ stroẏed manẏ a toune *Ar.*

Suan,

Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, he ȝef atte nende
Fólle þrýttý þousend pound, to Denemarch to wende,
And býleue þýs lond in pes; so þat þýs was ýdo.
Ac lute ýt was ar þer com wel more wo þerto.
Vor þe kýng Aýldred, ýseý ýs lond al bare
Of þe folc of Denemarch, he nolde nozt ȝut be ýwar,
Ac let gaderý anewe host, þoru al Engelond wel wýde,
Of heýe men and of lowe eke, ýgadered bý þe hýde,
þat euere eýȝte hýde lond an man hym ssolde fýnde
Wýþ helm & haubert, & þe atýl, þat non nere býhýnde;
And greyþed hem ssyppes in þe see, ac al nas worþ afylle.
[1] Vor þó ýs coust was al ýdo, he mýȝte let abbe ýbe stylle.
To Suan, duc of Denemarch, þe týtynge sone com.
Hýs ost and hýs poer wýþ hým sone he nome.
And in þe þousend ȝer of grace, & þe teþe ȝer al so,
And of vr kýnge's crounement þrýttý ȝer and tuo,
In an holy þores daý, to þýs lond he come,
And þen toun of Gýpeswých mýd strengþe sone nome,
And robbede aboute in þe lond, and tounes adoun caste.
Ac þe contreýe of Grantebrugge aȝen hem stod vaste,
And foȝte al þe stalwarde men, þe wule her poer ýlāste,
Ac hii were, as hii nede moste, býneþe atte laste.
And þere was þe kýnge's suster sone ýslawe Aþelston,
And barons and knýȝtes, and heýe men monýon.
Aboute herȝest [2] þýs Deneýs as roters arnde
Bý Chýlterne to Oxenford, and [3] þen toun barnde.

---

[1] Tho all the cost was i made, hii myght as well a be stille *Ar.* [2] The Danes further more wende *Ar.* [3] Thane toune brende *Ar.*

Þo wende hii vorþ of Denemarch, & robbed al Estsex,
And [1] gute bruggessyre & Estangle, & also Myddel sex.
Bokynghamssyre & Oxenfordssyre, & Hertfordssyre al so,
Bedeuordssyre and haluendel Hontyndonessyre þerto.
Norþhamtessyre, and by Souþe Temese Barcssyre,
And Soþereye and Souþsex, and Souþhamtessyre.
An mucheldel of Wyltessyre, and þo al þys was ydo,
Hii drowe hem toward Canterbury, to robby þere al so.
In þe þousend ger of grace, and endleuene þerto,
þys folc com to Kanterbury, robberye to do.
By tuene hour leuede day þe latere, & Myelmasse day,
þys folc bysette Kanterbury, and vaste bylay,
And gret raymson of hem wyþinne esste to be out of wo.
Ac þe erchebyssop of þe toun, Seynt [2] Alfe þat was þo,
Was vaste þer agen to gyue eny raymson.
þe Deneys vor wraþþe þo asaylede vast þe toun,
And wonne hym, & vaste slowe, & þo hii wyþ inne com,
Hey men, þat þer inne were, and Seynt Alfe hii nome,
And monekes, & þe toun barnde & adoun caste.
þe erchebyssop Seynt Alfe hii heolde & bounde vaste,
And ladde hym bysyde Londō to þe toun of Greneswych,
And helde hym þer in prison, þat he nas nan man ylyche,
Half ger and somdel more, and suþþe in þe ger of grace
A þousend and tuelf ger, hii ladde hym [3] in an place
Wyþoute þe toun Greneswyke, & stenede hym wyþ stones
As me stenede Seynt Steuene, [4] & debrusede ys bones.

---

[1] *L.* Grantebruggesyre. [2] *I. e.* Elphege. [3] To a place *Ar.*
[4] And all to bruysed his bones *Ar.*

Atte

Atte laste mỳd a denchax me smot hỳm to grounde
In þe heuede, þat he laỳ, and deỳde in astounde.
[1] þe Saterdaỳ, in þe Ester wouke, þỳs holy man hii slowe.
Ac vewe þat were atte dede þe beue rege bỳlowe.
Vor somme bỳ come cancrefrete, & somme blỳnde oþer wode,
And somme deỳde verlỳch as hii vp rỳȝt stode.
So þat vor drede of þỳs wreche þe Deneỳs were agaste,
And wỳþdrou hem of her luþer hede þe wule ỳt wolde ỳ laste,
[2] And þer was þe betere pes aȝer, and vnneþe.
Vor in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and þretteþe
Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, bỳ gan to turne ỳs hond.
And after þat he adde destrud þe Souþ alf of þỳs lond,
He wende and robbede al þỳs lond al þe Norþ sỳde,
Norþhomber and Lyndeseỳe, and destrude wỳde
Euere fram Watelyngestret, and so by Oxenford.
Hii come and nome Wỳnchestre, and so Walỳnford.
Fram Walyngford hii wende, & þe toun of Baþe nome.
So þat Suan was kỳng ỳholde, ware so he euer come.
Ac þe kỳng of Engelond, in such sor & mournỳnge,
Carede of ỳs ȝonge sones mest of alle þỳnge,
Laste hii were defoulde oȝt. vor hii ne couþe of fyȝtenge.
þer vor into Normandỳe he let hem sone brỳnge,

[1] This was doo the Efter [*l.* Ester] wouke in the Saterdaỳ, As more pleuner in his lỳf se ther of me maỳ. Manỳ, that was atte his deth, bỳ com blỳnde & wode, And summe deide sodeỳnlich vp rỳght as theỳ stode *Ar.*

[2] *Desunt omnia metra sequentia in Cod. Ar. usque ad hoc signum marginale* (☞) *in historia Edmundi* Yrenesyde, *quorum tamen loco perquam multa occurrunt, oratione soluta scripta.*

Boþe Alfred & Seỳnt Edward, & þe quene her moder also,
Wỳþ þe duc Rỳchard, þe quene broþer, vorte such wo were ỳdo.
Ac hỳs eldoste sone Edmond ỳrenesỳde,
Vor he was hardỳ, & gode knỳgt, atome he let abỳde.
þat luþer folc of Denemarch robbede and slowe vaste,
And chỳrchỳn and abbeỳs barnde and adoun caste.
Men leỳ vn bured to drawe, þat reuþe ỳt was ỳnou.
þat feble folc to wỳldernesse and to wodes vaste drou.
Aỳldred kỳng of Engelond, þo he seỳ al þỳs wo,
Hou me destruỳde ỳs lond, and ỳs folc slou,
To mỳdewỳnter he wende anon, þo he ne seỳ oþer red,
To Normandỳe, & huld hỳm þere vorte þe duc Suan was ded.
Suan deỳde in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and fourteþe.
Hỳs folc made euere vaste worre ȝut after ỳs deþe,
And made hỳs sone kỳng after hỳm, Knout was hỳs name,
þat dude, aswel as hỳs fader, Engelond gret ssame.
An false knỳȝtes of Engelond hulde mỳd hỳm vaste,
Ac hii, þat trewe & gode were, aȝen hỳm her herte caste,
And sende after kỳng Aỳldred into Normandỳe stỳlle,
And he come sone to Engelond, and wende abbe ỳs wỳlle.
Ac þe kỳng Knout ỳt vnder ȝet, he was fol of rage.
[1] He wende anon to Sandwỳch, & men þere in ostage,

[1]——but sodeyneliche he turned his saỳles to ward Sandewỳche, and wente a londe. And puttỳng a way bothe Godde's drede and mane's, the hostages, whiche he hadde faire children of ȝret noblete, he let take and kutte of hure noses and eres, and somme a blende. And whenne he had so I doo, he tolde hit as for a grete joye, and glorie, that he hadde so defouled the Englyssh hostages *inquit auctor prosaicus in Cod. Ar.*

þat

þat were bytake hys fader, vor heye men of þe londe,
He nom and let hym smyte of boþe vet and honde.
Nou adde heye men of þe lond ytake þere byuore
Hys fader ostage god ynou, and dep oþ ysuore,
Wyþ hym to holde trewelyche, and breke þo her oþ.
þeruore þe kyng Knout wyþ hem was þo so wod wroþ,
And vor wraþþe let bylyme her ostages þat were.
Suþþe he wende into Westsex, and robbede þere,
And in Dorsete dude & Wyltessyre & Somerssete gret wo.
Kyng Aylđred lay syk in þe toun of Cosham þo,
In Westende of Wyltessyre, vor he was feble and old,
And wyþ care and sorwe ouercome, as me aþ ytold.
An fram Cosham to Londone he of scapede vnneþe,
Vorto wyte hym fram ys fon, þat hii ne brogte hym to deþe.
þere he huld hym in þe toun myd muche sorwe and sore,
þat of al hys lond of Engelond he nadde an fot more.
þe gates he made vaste, and wuste hym wyþ inne.
His fon asaylede þen toun wyþoute myd al her gynne.
Atte laste þys kyng Aylđred, as in al þys stryue,
In an Seyn Gregorye's day, wende out of þys lyue,
As in þe ger of grace a þousend & syxteþe.
Feblyche he lyuede al hys lyue, & deyde in feble deþe.
In suche sorwe he was kyng seuene & þrytty ger.
He adde mony an sory day, & muchel anguysse er,
An, vor wreche of hys broþer deþ, al such sorwe to hym come,
þat lute joye he adde al ys lyf of ys kenedom.

EDMOND ỳrenesyde, kỳng Aỳldrede's sone,
So gode knỳȝt of bodỳ was, þat longe worþ in mone.
Me nuste so gode in none londe, an atte bỳgỳnnynge,
After hỳs fader deþe, me ches hỳm to kỳnge,
Þe heỳe men of þe lond, þat fals ne luþer nere.
Ac monỳe hulde mỳd kỳng Knout, þat false an trỳsthors were.
Edmond, vor ỳs strenge, was ỳcluped Yrenesỳde.
Dreduol he was to ỳs fon, þat hym durste vewe abyde.
Debonere and mylde he was to alle þat gode were.
Queynte & suỳþe hardỳ mon, as man wyþoute fere.
Vorst he wende to Westsex, and þere ech contreỳe
Aboute al to ỳs wille boþe vor loue and eỳe.
As leon hardỳ ỳnou he wende aboute wỳde,
An wan contreỳe and oþer aboute in eche sỳde.
þat Knout nadde poer non aȝen hỳm vor to stonde,
ȝỳf false traỳtors nadde ỳbe here of Engelonde,
þat hulde mỳd þe kỳng Knout, traỳtors as hii were.
So þat noþer of þỳs kỳnges abouỳnde to oþer nere,
Ac eỳþer gaderede gret ost, and of oþere's men slowe.
Atte laste mỳd her ost to gadere ward hii drowe,
And mette hem after mỳdsomer, þe feste of Seỳn Jon,
And a gret bataỳle smỳte bỳsỳde þe toun of Sserston,
And slowe to grounde muche folc, & þo al was ỳdo
Þe kỳnges & muche of her folc alỳue partede atuo.
Þo wende kỳng Edmond to Londone myd ỳs route,
And al þat folc of Denemarch destrude þer aboute,
And drof hem out of þỳs lond, & ȝut nolde he noȝt blỳnne,
Ac wende in to Westsex þulke contreỳe to wỳnne.

Þo

þo he was fram bỳ Este ỳwend, þe Deneỳs myd al here gỳnne
Bỳsegede Londone, ac hii ne mỳȝte noȝt come wỳþỳnne.
So wel he was wỳþynne ỳwust, þoru men þat þer were,
þe Deneỳs hem wỳþ drowe, þo hem ne spedde noȝt þere,
And wende Estward in to Kent, & robbede þere vaste,
And her preỳe at Medeweỳe in to ssỳppes caste.
Kỳng Edmond hem sỳwede, þo he hurde þỳs,
And passede Temese and Breỳnford ỳwỳs,
And slou aboute vaste ỳnou monỳe þat he vond,
And monỳe slowe her and þere aboute in þe lond.
Bataỳles hii smỳte monỳ one, as we bỳgonne to telle er.
Vor eỳȝte bataỳles hii dude neỳ wat wỳþinne half ȝer.
As at Sserston and ellesware, and þe sỳxte bataỳle was
Uppe þe hulle of Assesdonne, ỳchỳlle telle þat cas.
þỳs tueỳe noble kỳnges mỳd her poer hem mette,
And smỳte þere a bataỳle, and vaste to gadere sette.
ỳordeỳned hii adde her ost wel in eỳþer sỳde,
And Edmond ỳdỳȝt hỳs standard, were he ssolde hỳm sulf abỳde,
And hỳs dragon vp ỳset, and þỳs bataỳle ysmỳte.
Hii slowe to grounde in eỳþer alf, þat deol it was to wỳte.
In ys standard Edmond was, as rỳȝt was vor to abỳde.
He seỳ, þat me slou ỳs folc aboute in eche sỳde.
Hys herte hỳm nolde soffrỳ noȝt abỳde vorte tỳme were,
Ac to þe bataỳle smot anon, as man wyþoute fere,
And bỳleuede dragon & standard, & stured vaste ys honde,
And slou to grounde, as noþỳng hym ne ssolde at stonde.
Sone adde ỳs gode bodỳ ỳperced þe ost þoru out.
He made ỳs weỳ roume ỳnou, vorte he come to kyng Knout.

þere were duntes aryȝt ysmyte bytuene hem tueye
Of þe helmes, þat fur sprong out, vor hii were strong beye.
A duc, þat was myd kyng Edmond, Edryc was ys name,
þat was traytor and louerd suyke, our Louerd ȝyue hym ssame.
Vor he fondede hym bytraye, vor kyng Knoute's loue,
þo he dradde þat Edmond was, as he sey, al aboue,
And kyng Knout ney ouercome, vp an hul an hey
He wende wyþ ys swerde adrawe, þat þet folc hym al yseye.
He adrou ys blody suerd, and loude bygan to grede:
" Englysse men, Englysse men, fleþ anon, ych rede.
" Vor Edmond, vre kyng, to deþe he ys ydo.
Hym sulf he gan vorst to fle. vor oþere ssolde al so.
Englysse men hym leuede wel, & flowe after blyue,
And al yt was to bytraye ys louerd, þat was alyue.
þo kyng Edmond þys yseye, þat ys folc vnder stod,
þat he was to deþe ybroȝt, and þeruor flowe vor wod,
He arnde vp a lute hul, and gradde in þe place
Hys folc, and dude of ys helm, and ssewede hys face,
And seyde, " turneþ vaste aȝen, ycham alyue ywys.
Hys folc turnede anon aȝen, þo hii hurde þys,
And smyte vorþ þys batayle, gretter ne myȝte non be,
And foȝte vorte yt was nyȝt, þat hii myȝte noleng yse.
Ac ye Englisse adde ybe aboue, ȝyf yt nadde ybe vor nyȝt.
Ac hii departede, as hii nede moste, vor defaute of syȝte.
Hii greyþed hem þerafter, anoþer batayle to do,
And ef sone come to gadere vp Assesdoune al so,
And batayle smyte strong ynou, ac Knoute's poer vaste
Wexynge was, þat he wan þe maystrie atte laste.

Sory

Sorȳ was Edmond þo, to Gloucestrye he wende,
To porueye hym more help, ȝyf God hym grace sende.
[1] Kyng Knout sywed after myd an long tayle.
So þat aboute Gloucestrye þe eyȝteþe bataȳle
[2] Up Seuerne hii smyte, & astede, & so vaste me slou
þe gode bodyes in eyþer alf, þat yt was deol ynou.
Myd blod þe erþe was yheled, þat pyte yt was to wyte.
Ac noþer partye ne myȝte þe maystrye.
Ne hii ne myȝte yse vor þe nyȝte þe bataȳle to do non ende.
Hii departede myd sorw ynou amorwe aȝen to wende.
And kyng Edmond ouer Seuerne was in West syde,
And kyng Knout bygan myd ys ost in Estalf abyde.
And Seuerne was bytuene hem, & Knoute's poer
Of volc of byȝonde see wax euere ver & ner.
As Edmond sat myd ys ost anyȝt in [3] such solas,
As folc myȝte, þat ver wounded & sor & werȳ was,
And speke of þys bataȳle, hou yt myȝte be god:
An old kynȝt þer ros vp, & byuore þys folc stode.
" Icham," he seyde, " mest fol. þeruore, as foles wolle,
" Myȳ fole red, ȝyf ȝe wolle yhure, vorst ssewe ichylle.

---

[1] Knut suyd euer after hym euer atte taille *Ar.* [2] Upon Seuerne in a place they smyte stronge i now. Manȳ was the goode body in eyther half me slow. But yutte neyther partie the mastrye haue myght, By cause that theȳ were lette bȳ comyng of the nyght. Kyng Edmunde was of Seuerne in the West syde, And Knut in the Est half a yenst him ganne bide, So that the water was bȳ twene her bothes power, And the folke of Denemarch wax euer fer and ner *Ar.* [3] This cas, Wher manȳ a woundedman and werȳ i fouȝt was, *Ar.*

" Muche þyng we abbeþ yseye, & vre elderne vs ek seyde.
" Angusse & sorwe we abbeþ ynou, of wel more we mowe drede.
" We fyzteþ & beþ ouercome, & non maystrie we ne yseþ.
" Hou myzte we bote be ouercome, þat þus defoulede beþ?
" [1] Despoyled & verwounded, & vre strengþe le seþ vaste,
" Vre felawes & vre owe lyf we dredeþ ek atte laste.
" Wanne ssal vre reste come, & endynge of vre wo,
" And among vus sykerness & pays? ych drede neuere mo.
" Edmond ne may be ouercome vor hys strengþe ywys,
" Ne þe kyng Knout oure fo, vor he so queynte ys.
" Wat may þanne oure ende be, bote, wanne þys knyztes echon
" In eyþer syde beþ aslawe, & oure maystres byleued one,
" Oþer hii mote þanne acordy, oþer fyzte hem sulue tuo?
" [2] Wat reson ys, þat hii ne mowe as wel nouþe so,
" þe wule hii abbeþ eny alyue, þat hem mowe serue & drede?
" Nere hem nozt boþe vayror so? wu wat ys gydy hede?
" þere were wule in Engelond at otyme kynges fyue,
" And alle hii were ryche ynou, & of noble lyue.
" And nou to lute to hem tueye al Engelond ys.
" And ofte wo so coueyteþ al, al leseþ ywys.
" zyf eyþer kyng so muche wylneþ to be louerd her,
" þat her noþer nele abbe felawe, [3] ne pere,

---

[1] Dispoiled & foiled buth oure frendes, oure strenthes leseth we faste, And also of our awne lyf we dredeth atte laste *Ar.* [2] What reson is hit, that hii ne mowe aswell do now soo, While any knyghtes buth lefte a lyue, that hem mowe serue & drede? Nere hem nought fairer so, where is hure Gidehede? *Ar.* [3] Ne non pere, *Ar.*

" Fyzte

" Fyȝte hem sulue tueye, þat [1] louerd wolde be one.
" Wu nere hem noȝt betere nou so, þat wanne her knyȝtes echone,
" And her folc were al aslawe, & hii byleued al bare,
' And ne founde who hem seruede in anguysse ne in care,
" Ne who myd hem in neode þat lond defendy myȝte ?
" [2] Her of þat soþe seggeȝe, as by ȝoure in syȝte.
Nadde þys knyȝt fulleche hys reson ysed,
þat ys felawes nadde sone ynome her red,
And seyde alle myd one mouþe, " we [3] ensenteþ þerto,
" þat þys tueye kynges acordy, oþer batayle hem sulue do.
Kyng Edmond, þo he hurde þys, vol was of joye & blys.
þe batayle, he seyde, he wolde [4] nyme myd god herte ywys.
þat worde he sende amorwe to Knout among ys fon,
And grantede ys owe body, þe batayle to do anon.
[5] Hii lete hem army beye, in to an yle myd gode pas
Al mydde Seuerne hii wende, þat Olenege y cluped was.
þer inne hii were hem sulue tuo, & þe water al aboute.
Her ost was eyþer in ys syde alonde byleued by þoute.
[6] Myd god ernest & god ynou her suerdes adrowe boþe,
þys kynges to gadere come, & made hem boþe wroþe.

---

[1] Woll be lordes all on. And so were hem fairer now, that whan hure knygtes echon, And al hure folke buth a slawe, and hii by lafte all bare, *Ar.* [2] Her of seggeth youre avise, as by youre insyght *Ar.* [3] Assenteth *Ar.* [4] Take *Ar.* [5] They armed hem self beithe, and dight hem with goude pas Into an Ile in Seuerne, that Olneye cluped was *Ar.* [6] The kynges thenne in ernest grete her swerdus drough bothe, And smyte to gedre fast y now a men that were wrothe. Kyng Edmunde assailled kyng Knut so fast, that he was Negh ouer come, and sore he was

To grounde hii smyte & harde myd stalwarde honde,
þat wonder was, hou oþer myȝte oþere's dunt at stonde.
þo kyng Edmond ywraþþed was, & wyþinne hot,
He ssoc ys suerde & grunte, & myd such ernest smot,
þat þe sprong out myd ech dunt of helme so þere,
þat yt þoȝte myd ech dunt, as þat heued afure were.
As þondre þat soun was, þe lyȝt as lyȝtynge,
So þat ech dunt þoȝte leyȝt as yt were & þondrynge.
Me specþ of mony stalward knyȝt, ac me vond on þere.
yblessed be þe moder wombe þat hym to monne bere.
þe kyng Knout was so debrused, þat he stod vnneþe.
He dradde wanne he lore þat lyf, & were ybroȝt to deþe.
He adde leuer þan eny þyng, þat hii acorded were.
Ac he ne dorste ys feblesse telle Edmond, vor fere
Laste, ȝyf he vnder ȝete, þat he were so ouercome,
þat he nolde fyne ar he adde ys lyf hym by nome.
þo he adde a wule yrest, ys armes he gan to caste,
And wyþ gret ernest step ver, & asayled Edmond vaste,
Myd al þe strengþe þat he myȝte, & ssewe more þerto
Al vor he ne ssolde wene, þat he were ouercome so.
þys Knout bygan to reste, þo ys assaut was ydo,
And bet Edmond, as in pes, aword hure oþer tuo.
Kyng Edmond hym grantede, & somdel hym wyþ drou,
And lende vp hys sseld, & herkned hym ynou.

---

was a gast. He hadde lyuer thanne eny thyng accorded haue be there. But he nalde his feblenesse yut telle in no maner, Lest Edmunde hit vnderȝete that he were ouercome, And that he nolde fyny til his lyf were by nome *Ar.*

" Ich

" Ich abbe, quaþ Knout, " ẏwẏlned þẏ kynedom ar þẏs,
" And nou, wel more þan þẏ lond, þẏ sulf ẏch wẏlnẏ ẏwẏs.
" Vor þou nart noȝt worþ one be of Engelond kẏng her,
" Ac [1] to prince of al þe world. vor in þe world nẏs þẏ per.
" Ich abbe al [2] þat lond of Norþweye & of Denemareh an honde.
" I ne wende noȝt þat enẏ man mẏ dunt ssolde atstonde.
" Ac þou ne at stonst ẏt noȝt one, ac art al clene aboue.
" War vore ẏch desẏrẏ mest þyn grace & þyn loue,
" [3] þat þou of alle myn londes me be felawe & per,
" An ẏch mot ek of Engelond be þẏ partẏner.
" Vor ȝẏf we to gadere beþ, & al clene of one rede,
" France & ech oþer lond, & ech prince vs wole drede.
" þer vor ẏch byseche þe, haue half mẏ lond myd me,
" An [4] ẏch, as þẏ partẏner, half Engelond mẏd þe.
Edmond, þo he hurde þẏs, ẏs grete herte wẏþ drou,
And [5] ensentede to ẏs rede, & bẏcom [6] mylde ynou,
An [7] bẏude to ys mẏlde word, þat myd suerd was aboue.
Hii caste awey sseld & suerd, & turnde al to loue,
An bẏclupte hem & custe, & her folc in eẏþer sẏde,
þo hii seye hem acorded, vor joẏe loude hii crẏde,
An songe, *te Deum laudamus*, eẏþer in ẏs route,
An to gadere wende, & custe hem ech oþer aboute.
Bytuene þys tueye kynges was a certeyn fourme ẏdo,
An forewarde [8] among al her folc, ar hii [9] departed atuo,

[1] To be kẏng of *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] And that thow of all mẏ londes mẏ felawe be and peer, And that ich of Engelond be thẏ partiner *Ar.* [4] Ich wole, as *Ar.* [5] Assented *Ar.* [6] Meok *Ar.* [7] A bowede *Ar.* [8] Bẏ twene *Ar.* [9] Parted a two, That eẏther hadde his dele of lond and

Wat eyþer adde to ys del of lond & oþer þynges,
And departede wyþ loue atuo, & byleuede boþe kynges.
An ȝyf hii adde in gode loue longe ylyued beye,
Me adde þoru al Cristendom yspoke of hem tueye,
An eche prince & eche londe douted hem tuo.
Ac Edmond was al to raþe, alas! to deþe y do.
Vor þe luþer duc Edryc þoȝte euere to bytraye
Kyng Edmond, ys owe louerd, Knout vor to paye.
A luþer gadelyng was ys sone, boþe at one rede.
Hii fondede myd alle gyle to do þys luþer dede.
Þo hii ne myȝte in oþer wyse þys dede bringe to ende,
In to a chambre forene þe gadelyng gan wende,
Þat kyng Edmond com ofte to, & in þe dunge þar
Hudde hym þere longe, þat none man nas y war.
An þo þe kyng þerto com, ys nede vor to do,
þe luþer þef ȝare was myd ys arme þerto,
And smot [1] im þoru þe foundement, & þoru þe gottes ryȝt,
Edmond þe noble kyng, þat was so noble knyȝt.
Wyþ a long yponyted knyf, yegged in eyþer syde,
þus [2] ssenduollyche he hym slou, aboute Seynt Andreu tyde.
[3] An Oxenford he was aslawe, þoru þys luþer lore,
Myd treson & gyle ynou, ynot hou myȝte be more.
þe beste bodȳ & noblest, þat in eny lond þo was,
yslawe was þoru a gadelyng, so vyllyche, alas!

---

and other thynges, And parted with loue a two, and bylafte bothe kynges *Ar.*

[1] Him into the foundement into the guttes ryght, There thourgh he deyde that hastelich, þat was so noble a knyght *Ar.* [2] Shenfullyche *Ar.* [3] Atte Oxenford *Ar.*

Ar

Ar men myȝte aboute come, þen þef to seche þare,
Of scaped he was & yflowe, non man nuste ware.
Me greyþede þys gode kyng, [1] wanne non oþer nas,
An broȝte hym vayre anerþe, as he wel [2] wurþe was,
In þe abbeye of Glastynbury, byuore [3] þe heȳ wened anheȳ.
Vor he wyllnede vor to lygge ys gransyre neȳ
þe kyng Edgar þe gode kyng, þat þere ybured ys.
þere hii lyggeþ vayre ynou boþe ȝut ywys.
Ac þys luþer gadelyng, þat þys gode kyng so slou,
To kyng Knout wende anon glad ynou.
He grette hym anon," & seyde, " hayl [4] þou be kyng one.
" So nys yt noȝt," quaþ þe kyng, " vor my kynedom ys ymone.
" Vor an felawe ych abbe þerto, þat ych loue ynou.
" [5] Ver, gode syre kyng," quaþ þys þef, " vor þy loue ych hym slou.
" Here ys þat knyf al blody, þat ych broȝte hym wyþ of dawe,
" An smot hym þoru þe foundement, & so vp to þe mawe.
" þy loue ych abbe wel dere aboȝt, & my lyue anaunter y do.
" þer nys non alyue nou, þat þe abbe yserued so.
" þeruore vnderstond þe wel, & ȝeld my mede blyue.
" Vor ych abbe ydo þe more gode, þan alle þe men alyue.
" þou seyst soþ," quaþ þe kyng, " þou ast muche ydo vor me,
" An ychylle wel þy mede ȝelde by þe treuþe ych on to þe.

---

[1] Tho other bote nas, *Ar.*
[2] Worthy *Ar.*
[3] The heigh auter. For he wilned to lygge neigh his graunt sire there *Ar.*
[4] Be thow kyng al on. So is hit not, quod he a ȝe, hit is myne but in mone *Ar.*
[5] For, *Ar.*

" ychylle

" ẏchẏlle make þe heymon, [1] bẏ tẏme ẏchabbe ẏþoȝte,
" þat þou ne ssalt vor þẏ lẏflode neuere carẏe noȝt.
Edrẏc, þe luþer suẏke, ẏs fader, com al so:
" Syre," he seẏde, " ẏch abbe muche loue þe ẏdo,
" [2] Versake Edmond [3] mẏ nowe louerd, & bẏtraẏd vor þe,
" An let hẏm sle vor þẏ loue, hou wolton ẏt ȝelde me?
" þo seẏde kẏng Knout aȝe, traẏtor þou art ẏwẏs,
" An muche aȝe God & aȝen me þou ast ẏdo amẏs,
" Wanne þou ast [4] þẏ nowe louerd, as þou [5] tellest vore,
" To so vẏle deþe ẏbrot, þat was mẏ broþer ẏ suore.
" Hẏs blod, þat þou madest ssede, ssal arde com on þe.
" Vor [6] þẏ nowe mouþ þe aþ ẏdemed bẏ þat þou seẏst [7] me.
He let easte þẏs traẏtor in þe euenẏnge late
At fenestre in Temese, nouse vor to abate.
An let hẏm stẏllelẏche adrenche, vor manne speche þere.
An þat was, lo! ẏs noble mede, to lute þeẏ ẏt were.
þe luþer traytor hẏs soue auanced was ȝut bet,
[8] Vor hẏs robe & hẏs dẏgnẏte was al wel bẏset.
He ȝef hẏm such auancement, as he wolde, he suor ẏs oþ,
þat he ne dorste neueref carẏe [9] of mete ne [10] of// cloþ.

---

[1] Right sone ich haue I thought *Ar.* [2] For sake ich haue mẏne awne lorde, and him by trayed for the. For thi, sir kyng, a benefeat ich aske in help to me *Ar.* [3] *Pro*, myn owe. [4] *L.* þẏn owe. *Nam* thẏne awne *in Ar.* [5] Me tellest fore *Ar.* [6] *L.* þẏn owe. *Sed* thẏ nawne *in Ar.* [7] To me. So that thesne traytour he let take an hast, And prẏuẏliche with oute noẏse in to Themese him cast, And let him stilliche a drenche, that no noẏse were. And this was, loo! his good rewarde, thogh hit i nogh nere *Ar.* [8] In robe of roiall dignite, that was well bẏ sette *Ar.* [9] For *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.*

An

An robe he let hym ssape verst of blod rede scarlet þere.
þe ssarpe stones [1] bỳ þe strete hỳs taỳlors were.
Vor he let hym mỳd hors [2] to" drawe fram strete to strete,
þat þe peces ffelle of ỳs fless aboute monỳe & grete.
[3] þe taỳlors corue so monge peces, vor ỳs robe ne ssolde powe.
He ne dorste þo carỳe nozt of þe wỳnter couwe.
Suþþe he let smỳte of ỳs hede by þe ssoldren, as me seỳ,
And let ỳt sette vpon tour of Londone an heỳ.
And so he was heỳ man ỳmad, as he bỳhet hỳm to ỳs mede.
Alle traytors & [4] louerd suỳken God late hem so spede.

KNOUT was þo alone kỳng, as wo seỳþ, of [5] Engelon,
Of Norþweỳe, [6] of Denemarch, & gret poer adde anhonde,
Ac Edmond þe gode kyng, þat so vỳllỳche me slou þo,
Adde tueỳe zonge sones, ar he were to deþe ỳdo,
Edward & [7] Edmond, & breþeren al so tueỳe
Seỳnt Edward & Alfred, þat in Normandỳe were beỳe.
Vor þes were kyng Edmond next, & ỳs eỳrs also.
Kỳng Knout þozte hou he mỳzte best herof do,
[8] To bỳnỳme hem her erỳtage, & mỳd wuch wrong he mỳzte,
And mỳd wuch treson, bote he adde som colour of rỳzte.

---

[1] In the *Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] His taillours corue him suche a robe, that none coueỳte wolde, Ne that he ne durst after neuer carie for the colde *Ar.* [4] Lord swykes *Ar.* [5] Engelond, *Ar.* [6] And of *Ar.* [7] Edmunde, half bretherne tweỳ *Ar.* [8] To byneme hem her heritage how that he myght, As hit were bỳ coloure of summe maner ryght. For thogh manỳ maỳ do atte his lust some thyng, Of wrong he wolle make a ryght as by colouryng *Ar.*

Vor

Vor wanne man may do wat he wole & vnrygt ynou,
Ofte he bryngþ vor coueytyse to rygte pur wou.
He made a gret parlement, & brogte heye men þerto.
As wo seyþ, ynele noþyng wyþoute lokyng do.
þo bed he þe court segge soþ, & rygt vnderstonde,
Wat forewarde þer were ymad [1] in fourme of Engelonde,
Bytuene hym & kyng Edmond, þe wule he was alyue,
And wam Edmond made [2] hys eyr of ys londe wyþoute striue,
And wam of ys gonges sones wardeyn ek ydo,
And wat þyng he adde assygned ys tueye breþeren al so.
Herof he bed hem segge soþ, as yt were glosyng.
Vor he ne kepte, he seyde, myd vnrygt of no monne's þynge.
þo stode þer somme vp, þat adde ynome her red,
Vorto paye kyng Knout, & nogt Edmond þat was ded,
And seyde byuore al court, þat kyng Edmond byqueþ
Hys kynedom & al ys lond kyng Knout byuore ys deþ,
And þe warde of ys tuo sones, vorte hii of elde were.
Alas! alas! þe trecherye, þat me mygte yse þere!
Vor þe dede was verygte anon, & þe quike vorto paye,
[3] Hii bytoke þe qued her soule, þe kunde eyrs to bytraye.
þys word was yholde stable, & yloked vor dome.
Kyng Knout of Edmonde's londes anon seysyne nome,
[4] And huld hym þo al clene kyng of al Engelond,
Of Norþweye, of Denemarch, gret poer he adde an honde.

---

[1] And fourme *Ar.* [2] His heire with oute any stryue, And to whom his yong sones in warde shulde be do, *Ar.* [3] Hure s[illegible]les by toke they to the fende, the ryght heire to be tray *Ar.* [4] And helde him self a lone kyng of all Engelond, And Norwey and Denemarch, and grete power hadde in hond *Ar.*

Ech

Ech þozte he was Gode next, þat mỳzte abbe ỳs grace,
Of so gret poer þer bỳuore me ne knẽu non in non placẽ.
þo he was of al Engelond kỳng, wỳþoute [1] mone,
He bỳgan to cuþe anon, þat he was kỳng [2] one.
Alle þat were ozt [3] ỳsỳb Edmond þe kỳnge,
[4] Oþer in alỳance of enỳ loue, to deþe he let bringe,
Oþer flemd hem out of Engelond, non bylẽued nere,
Bote ỳs tueye zonge sones, þat so feble & tendre were.
He ne mỳzte, vor þe worlde's ssame, hem to deþe bringe.
[5] He sende hem out of Engelond, to [6] & heye kỳng
[7] Bỳsyde Denemarch, þat he hem to deþe brozte,
So ver [8] in onekeþelond, þer non man of hem ne rozte.
Awey! sely zonge þỳnges, frendeles were hii þere,
þat so ver, as mỳlde lomb, to deþe ỳlad were.
þo hii to þe kynge come, [9] þat he hem to deþe brozte,
Vor þe heỳe blod, [10] of wam hii come, þe kyng hym bỳþozte,
An adde reuþe of hem gret, & ỳs wille gan wyþ drawe,
An ne mỳzte, vor reuþe, vor non þyng bring hỳm of lỳf dawe.
[11] To þe kỳng of Hongari þỳs selỳ chỳldren tueye
He sende hem vor to norỳsy, þat he warded hem wel beỳe.

---

[1] Any mone, *Ar.* [2] A lone *Ar.* [3] Sibbe sir Edmunde *Ar.* [4] Or of Aliaunce in any wey, to dethe *Ar.* [5] But sente *Ar.* [6] An *Ar.* [7] A lyte bỳ side *Ar.* [8] In couthe lande, wher no man of hem rought. Alas! the sely *Ar.* [9] To dethe that hem shulde haue brought, *Ar.* [10] They of come, he him sone by thought *Ar.* [11] To the kỳng of Hungarỳ the selỳ children tweỳe. The kyng hem faire vnderfenge for hure heigh nobleỳ, So long fort Edmunde, that was the quene brothe [*sic*], Spoused his doughter, and seth made the other, That hizt Edwarde, spousỳ the emperoure's nevew *Ar.*

þe kyng hem vayre vndervong, & honoured in ech wyse,
An gret deuyte tolde of hem, vor her gentryse,
So longe, þat he let Edmond, þat was þat on broþer,
Sspousy ys owe dozter, & suþþe he let þe oþer,
þat het Edward, spousy þe emperoure's [1] mowe.
þo adde hii boþe ywyued wel, & nozt tolowe.
[2] Ac" Edmond leuede lute wule, & no chyld [3] nadde alyue.
Ac Edward þe oþer adde þre chyldren by ys wyue,
A sone, þat [4] het Edward, & dozтren also tueye,
Margarete & Cristyne, þat gode wommen were beye.
þys gode chyldren azte be euermo in [5] munde.
Vor Engelond, zyf hii nere, were zut out of kunde,
As ze mowe [6] hure her afterward, in kyng Henrye's lyf,
Hou Engelond com to kunde azen þoru þe god Mold ys wyf,
[7] þat þes Margarete dozter was, Mold þe gode quene.
Vor þys lond were zut out of kunde, zyf hii nadde ybe, ych wene.

---

[1] *Non tantum cognata, sed filia re vera erat Henrici II. Imperatoris, nomenque ejus erat Agatha.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] Hadde *Ar.* [4] Height Edgar, and also doughtren twey, *Ar. Et quidem recte* Edgar. [5] Mynde. For Engelond, yf they nad i be, hadde be oute of kynde *Ar.* [6] Here afterwarde, in Harry the furste's lyf, I hure, how *Ar.* [7] That doughter was of Mergarete, as ich vnderstande, By twene hure and Macolyn kyng of Scotland. Knut of all Engelond was thoo kyng thorough oute. Hit is no nede to esshe, yf he were kene and proute. Tho he was of Edmunde's sones, and all that with him were, Delyuered, he was proute i nough, and yet he was infere O kyng Ethelrede's ii. sones, that were in Normandye, Aluered and Seynt Edwarde, lest hii wolde a stye, Thorough Richard, duc of Normandye, *Ar.*

Kyng

Kẏng Knout of al Engelond was þo kẏng alout.
Me ne dar noȝt esse, wer he were kene þo & prout.
þo he was of Edmonde's sones, & of al, þat mẏd hym were,
Delẏuered, he was fers ẏnou, ac somdel he was in fere
Of Edmonde's tueye breþeren, þat wonede in Normandye,
Alfred & Seẏnt Edwarde, laste hii gonne astẏe
þoru þe duc of Normandye, þat her vncle was.
Hym þoȝte were he sẏker of hem, hẏm ne doutede of no cas.
Seẏnt Edwarde's moder þeruore he of sende,
Emme þe quene of Engelond, þat [1] he hẏder wende,
[2] þoru conseẏl of her broþer, þat was þe duc Rẏchard,
An þoru ensent of hẏr tueye sones, Alfred & Seẏn Edward,
An were yspoused hẏm to wẏf, & oure quene were al so.
Wat halt ẏt to telle longe? þẏs dede was ẏdo.
Vor kẏng Edmond was aslawe a Seẏnt Androwe's tẏd, ẏch wene,
As in þe ẏer of grace a þousend and sẏxtene.
And to þe [3] lammasse afterward he spousede þe quene,
As in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and seuentene.

---

[1] She *Ar.* [2] And the on of hure bretherne, that was duc Richarde, And thourgh assent of hure sones, Aluered and Edewarde, And spoused hẏm to wyue *Ar.* [3] Anð þa to-ꝼoꝼan KΓ. Auȝ. heꝛ ꝼe cẏnȝ ꝼeccan hım Æðelꝼeðeꝼ laꝼe þeꝼ oðꝼeꝼ cẏnȝeꝼ hım to cꝼene. Ricaꝼðeꝼ ðohtoꝼ:· Chron. Sax. sub an. MXVII. *Male proinde in Cod. Ar. significatur, hasce nuptias celebratas fuisse* A. D. MVII. (As in the ẏer of grace Ml. and seuene) *Edmundumque occisum* A. D. MVI. (For as in the ẏer of oure lorde Ml. and sixe ẏere Edmunde Irenside, her sone in lawe, slayne was ere.) *Et tamen in hoc ipso Codice* Parliamentum (*sive potius* magnum *vel* commune concilium) *Oxoniense* A. D. M.XVIII. *tentum fuisse rectissime etiam asseritur.*

ȝut to be þe sykerore, after þys spousynge,
He let ys barons of Engelond to Oxenford bringe
A þousend as in þe ȝer of grace and eyȝteþe ȝer,
An a parlement vor hys stat of hem made þere.
So þat ȝyf þer eny was, þat aȝen hym herte bere,
Hym þ ȝte hys poer non þyng nas, ac [1]as vor nogt yt were.
[2] As was to hym al clene ysuore, þer nas non byhynde.
þo was he al clene louered, to bynde and vnbynde.
A wyf, þat her [3] Aylyne, he adde er of gret fame.
By hyre he adde an sone, Harald was hys name,
þat of þe kunde was of Denemarch, in eyþer alf al out.
By Emme he adde anoþer sone, þat het Hardeknout,
þat beye were kynges after hym, as me ssal sone rede,
þys kyng was þo poruout al man of noble dede.
þo he was alone kyng of grete londes þre,
Hym þoȝte al þe world ne myȝte aȝen ys poer be.
And naþeles he bygan ys herte in bocsumnesse amende,
An þoȝte on þe vayre grace, þat houre Louerd hym sende,

---

[1] All *Ar.* [2] All were clene to hym i swore, ther was none be hynde *Ar.* [3] Helene *Ar. quam Ælfgifam, sive Ælgivam, appellant alii. Quinetiam & hoc notandum, plerosque scriptores eandem concubinam, non uxorem, Canuti fuisse asserere. Unde sane doctissimus Bradius in textu historiæ suæ (p. 129.) Cnute* not long before he died, appointed his eldest son *Swane*, by his first Wife * *Elgiva*, to be king of *Norway*, and his second Son *Harold*, by the same Woman to be king of *England*, and *Harde-Cnute* his Son by *Emme*, king of *Danemarke; ex Hovedeno nimirum* 251. *a. at in notis*, * By most Writers reported to have been a Concubine, she was Daughter to a *Mercian* Noble-man, who is said to have been Earl of *Northampton*.

An

An louede Englysse men, and Engelond þerto,
An muche louede holy chyrche & susteynde also,
An restorede abbeys, þat destrud were byuore,
An chyrchen let vp arere, þat were arst as verlore,
An let arere monye nywe, & in stedes mest þere
[1] As he adde men aslawe, & batayles ydo er,
[2] An vp Assesdone & þer aboute mest chyrchen he let rere,
As vor her soulen, þat yslawe were þere.
Vor he & þe kyng Edmond mest armes þere bere,
An mest man slagt þoru hem & batayles þer were.
Seynt Alfen's body," þat y martred was
At Greneswuch þoru hys fader, as we tolde þat cas,
At Seyn Poule's of Londone, as yt was anerþe ydo,
Hys owe honde nome yt vp, &, as yt byuel þerto,
He let yt fayre honoury, & sende yt atte fyne
To þe munstre of Canterbury, [3] as he lyþ gut in ssryne.
þe þrydde ger ych vnderstonde, þat he was alone kyng,
Fram hys lond of Denemarch me brogte hym tythyng,
þat he was þere yworred vaste of hys fon.
He nome wyþ hym of Engelond god knygt monyon,
An myd gret poer & muche folc þuderward vende anon.
So þat he sone come bysyde hys fon echon,
An byleuede hym þer al nygt, & al hys ost al so,
An þogte anon amorwe strong batayle do.
A gret erl of þys lond, Godwyne was hys name,
Myd hys poer myd hym was, þat monyon dude ssame.

[1] Where he *Ar.* [2] As vpon Asshedoune and a boute there, As for the sowles of hem that slayne there were. Seynt Alphe Erchebysshoppe's body *Ar.* [3] And ther hit was in shryne *Ar.*

Vor þys lond, as me ssal hure, ofte he dude bytraye.
He þozte þo hou he myzte þe kyng Knout best paye.
By nyzte [1] hym & hys poer he let army þere,
And wende so anonywar, [2] as þe kynge's fon were,
[3] An fond hem, as wo seyþ, aslepe. he leyde on hem to grounde,
An slou and to drof hem alle in a lutel stunde.
Amorwe" þo þe kyng wolde wende vp hys fon,
An myste Godwyne & hys men, of gyle he dradde anon,
þat þe Englysse hym bytraye wolde, he þozte of luþer won
Vor to sle þys Godwyne, and þe Englysse echon.
An naþeles he wende toward hys fon myd al hys poer vaste,
Vor to smyte an batayle, & þo ne wond he atte laste
Nozt of hem bote caroyne, & þe bodyes dede al so,
þo he vond, þat Godwyne such andede adde y-do,
An delyuered hym of hys fon, & ybrozt hym so aboue,
Euereft he louede hym þe more, & al Englysse vor hys loue.
þo he seyȝ, þat Englysse men so gode in nede were,
An hys fon were ouercome, noþyng he nas in fere.
[4] þo he adde one þe kynedom of grete londes þre,
Hym þozte [5] al þe world ne myzte azen hys poer be.

---

[1] Hym self and *Ar.* [2] Wher the *Ar.* [3] And founde hem muche del a slepe, so that in a stonde This Enmys of Swethe londe hii brought all to grounde. Ulf and eke Ergall of Swethe lond kyngus Fust [*sic*] to kyng Knutus host, at his comyngus, Muche harme had i doo, but in this case wyse Godewyn with his men gate of hem the pryse. A morwe *Ar.* [4] Tho hadde he al on the kyngdomes of *Ar.* [5] That in all the worlde ne myght his pere be. Of all his proude dedis ne can iche telle nought, Bute of on tale ich wole, as hit cometh in thought *Ar.*

Of

Of al hys proute dedes I ne may verbere nozt,
þat I ne mot zou telle of on, nou yt comþ in my þozt.
A þousend as in þe zer of grace, & on & tuentý þerto,
An in þe vyfte zer þat kyng Knout in such poer was ydo,
He [1] wende, as noble syre, fram londe to londe,
þat [2] hym þozte al world ne ssolde azen hym stonde.
As he wende aboute by þe see, & such poer adde an honde,
Up achaere he sat adoun, al vp þe see sonde,
An [3] enresonede hys men, as hii byuore hym stode,
So þat þe tyme com of þe see flode,
þat yt bygan to wexe vaste, as yt deþ atte tyde.
þe kyng byheld þe wexynge an boker al asyde,
So þat þe water vaste waxe [4] vppard hey & wyde.
[5] þozte þys grete louerd, zut ychelle abyde.
þo yt was ney to hym ycome, baldelyche [6] spac
An sturnelyche to þys water, þo yt alles out brac.
"Water," he seyde, "[7] wat þencst on? ych rede ne com no ver.
"Under stond, þat þou art al clene in my poer.
"Vor þat lond, vp wan þou vnrst, & vp wan ych sytte her,
"Is clene myn al aboute. vor þou wost ynabbe no per.
"þeruore ych [8] ote þe þyne wexyng anon lete,
"þat þou ne be so hardy nozt, þyn louerde's cloþes to wete,

[1] Wende a boute as *Ar.* [2] He thought in all the worlde none shulde him withstonde *Ar.* [3] Spak to his *Ar.* [4] *Potius*, uppard *(idem quod Anglo-Sax.* uppeapð.) [5] ýut thought this grete lorde he wolde a byde ther *Ar.* [6] He spak *Ar.* [7] What thenkest thow? I rede come no ner *Ar.* [8] Hote *Ar.*

" Ne hys lymes, ac vp [1] mynowe let me in pes sytte,
" [2] Oþer, by þe fey þat ych ou to þe, ychelle rekeny mytte.
þe water dude vorþ hys kunde, & wax euere vaste,
So þat to þys grete louerd hyt com atte laste,
[3] An watte hys ssone & hys vet. so longe yt wax an hey,
þat yt watte hys brych al aboute, & euere vpard yt stey,
So þat þys hupes smourte, & of cold were ney.
þys grete louerd sturte hym vp, þo he oþer ne sey,
An wed hym vp to londe, hym þozte er late ynou.
He byheld toward þe water, & hys grete herte wyþ drow."
" Wyte," he seyde, " al men, þat anerþe wonyeþ her,
" [4] þat yt nys bote þe pure masse eny kynge's poer.
" Ne þat no man ys wurþe to be ycluped kyng,
" Bote þe heye kyng of heuene, þat wrozte al þyng,
" þat haþ heste of water, and of erþe al so.
" Heuene & helle & ech þyng mot nede hys heste do,
" An habbe hym as louerd, vor ynam non y wys,
" þeruor me to clupye kyng, myd vnryzt yt ys.
" þeruor ych byhote God, þat yne ssal kynge's croune
" Neuere bere anerþe, vor my poer ys þer doune.
He wende hym vorþ to chyrche, & byuore þe rode com,
An wyþ meke herte pyteslyche hys kynge's croune nom,

[1] My nawne *Ar.* [2] Or elles, by the fey that is me, ich wolle fyght mytte *Ar.* [3] Hit wette his hosen and his shone, and yut for pruyt he nolde Ryse fort he nedes moste, or elles drenche he shulde. And thenne he sturte vppe of the water he thought late i now, And be hilde towarde the water, & his grete hert with drow *Ar.* [4] That hit is bute the mase any kynge's power *Ar.*

An

An sette vpon the rode heued, & seyde þat he alone
Was wurþe to croune bere, & oþer kynges none.
He bỳleuede þe croune þere, sỳkỳnde wel sore,
An þerafter vp hỳs heued ne com he namore.
An me seyþ, þat he ne bar neuere þe croune of Engelond,
Ac ne bar þulke ne non oþer þerafter, ỳch vnder stonde.
Sỳnþe god man he becom & aforced hym ỳnou,
An bỳhet God euereft afterward to bỳleue wou,
An God & holỳ chỳrche to louye mỳd al hỳs mỳȝte,
An make godes lawes, & susteyne ech rỳȝte.
þes byheste he held vol wel, & gode lawes ỳ nou
He made þe beste þat mỳȝte be, & to ech godenesse drou.
Vor þe manslaȝt þat he adde ỳdo, & þe vnrỳȝt ỳ lome,
An vor þe monỳe gode cas þat hỳm ofte come,
He byhet God to wende þe holy weỳ to Rome,
So þat he & hỳs knỳȝtes wỳþ god herte þen weỳ nome.
An as he toward Rome wende bỳ monỳ alond,
Wanne he enỳ luþer lawes in enỳ stude vond,
þe prince, oþer louerd of stude, sone he out soȝte,
And bote he granted hỳm amendement, mỳd tresour he ỳt boȝte,
An vor he was man of such poer, vewe aȝen hỳm wroȝte,
So þat euere ware he come gode lawes he broȝte.
[1] Gengỳl men þat he vond in prison ek ydo,
Oþer in warde mỳd vnrỳȝt, he boȝte hem out also.
At Rome he was auonge uaỳre, and asoỳled also.
Aȝen he wende to Engelond, þo al þys was ỳ do.
þo he com aȝen, at Glastỳnburỳ hỳm longede ar he were,
Vor loue of kỳng Edmond, þat ỳbured was þere,

[1] Goude men *Ar.*

þat

þat he cluped hỳs broþer, vor þe treuþe þat bỳtuene hem was
her .
þat bodi he honourede ỳ nou þo he com þere,
And al þe stude vor hỳs loue, & dude vayr offrynge,
An amendede þat hous mỳd monỳ a rỳche þỳnge,
An ȝef hem londe and rentes, and confermede al so
þe ȝeftes, þat oþer kỳnges hadde er ỳȝỳue þerto,
Of rentes and of londes, as þe kỳng Cuþred,
An kỳng Centwỳne & Ine, & suþþe kỳng Alfred,
Edward and Aþelston, Edmond and Edgar.
Her ȝeftes he confermede, & to make ech man ỳwar,
To holde þỳs ȝeftes stable, amansỳ he let al so
Alle þat aboute were her ȝeftes euere vn do.
He confermede her londes, as frelyche to holde ỳ wỳs,
Bỳ gode chartre & her rentes, as þe kỳng huld hỳs.
þỳs kỳng Knout was tuentỳ ȝer kỳng of Engelond,
An in a þousend ȝer of grace & þrỳttỳ, ỳch vnderstonde,
An sỳxe he deỳde at Ssafteburỳ, & at Wynchestre mỳd gret
prute
At Seyn Swỳthỳnes he was ỳbured, þere as he lỳþ ȝut.

HARALD, [1] þe kỳnge's sone Knout, after hỳm was kyng.
ỳcrouned he was at Oxenford, a ssrewe þoru alle þyng.
Of þe kunde he was of Denemarch, of þe eror [2] wyf ỳ bore.
þe lasse he louede Englỳsse men, & Engelond þer uor.

---

[1] *Desunt omnia metra, ad Haraldum hunc spectantia, in Cod. Ar. in quo tamen de eodem multa scripsit auctor prosaicus.*

[2] *Hinc ait scriptor prosaicus in Ar.* In the ỳere of oure lorde

þe vorste ȝer þat he was kyng, Emme, þe gode quene,
He drof out of Engelond, (& hys ssrewede made ysene)
His stepmoder, hys fader wyf, þat quene adde ybe tuye
Of Engelond, & þat hys fader let vette in Normandye.
þo þys quene was of londe ydryue, þoru hyre wyþerwyne,
Heo wende to þe erl of Flaundres, þat het Baldewyne.
þys erl hyre vayre vndervong, þat was hende & fre,
And tok hyre þe castel of Bruges, inne vorto be.
þere was þys gode quene, wyþoute eny striuynge,
Vorte hyre stepsone was dede, Harald þe luþer kynge.
Vor he nas kyng bote four ȝer, & syx monþes vnneþe,
Ar he lay at Oxenforde, & drou toward þe deþe,
And deyde þer in pyne ynou, & suþþe hys body me ber
To þe abbey of Westminster, & bured yt vayre þere.
In þe ȝer of grace a þousend, & on & fourtyþe ȝere,
þys kyng deyde in Auerýl, mony glad man was þere.

HARDEKNOUT hys broþer þo þen wey sone nome
Fram Denemarch in to Engelond, & to Sandwych com.
þoru þe baronye of Engelond & of Denemarch al so
Ichose he was to be kyng, vor hii ensentede þerto.
Vor he adde somdel to Engelond more kunde þan þe oþer,
Vor he was, in hys moder alf, Seynt Edwarde's broþer.
[1] Sone so he was kyng y mad, after hys moder he sende
þe quene Emme to Flaundres, & bygan hyre stat amende,

---

lorde M.XXXVI. Knutus sone Harolde of Erle Elfelmus doughter toke the regne.

[1] As non as he was *Ar.*

An

An huld hỳr vayre, as rỳȝt was, hỳs moder & quene al so.
Ac þỳs Hardeknout nas kỳng noȝt follỳche ȝeres tuo.
Vor þer faỳlede [1] of" ten dawes, þat he ne deỳde [2] of" ywỳs.
At [3] Lamhupe he was ded, & ỳbured he was & ỳs
At Seỳn Swythỳne's at Wỳnchestre [4] bỳ hys fader þat lỳþ þere.
Kỳnges of Denemarch in þys manere were
Kynges here of þỳs lond, ech after oþer.
þe sone vorst after þe fader, þe broþer after þe broþer.
And Engelond was out of kunde sỳxe & tuentỳ ȝer,
In worre & pỳne & sorwe ỳnou, as Seyn Dunston [5] bỳ het her.
Ac þo þỳs þre kỳnges were ded of Denemarch, þere nere
[6] Byleuede namon in Engelond, þat of þe kunde were.
þo moste ỳt nede come aȝen to þe rỳȝt eỳr of kunde,
þe holỳ man Seỳn Edward, þat euere worþ in munde.
Vor [7] Aldred, hỳs eldore broþer, was arst aslawe here
Wỳþ treson in Engelond, ỳchỳlle telle in wuch manere.
Atyme, to speke mỳd hỳs moder, to Engelond he com,
[8] An gret folc of Normandỳe mỳd hỳm hỳder he nome.
[9] An" þe false erl of Engelond, Godwỳne was ỳs name,
(þat [10] cuere" adde wỳþ treson þỳs lond y do ssame,)
[11] And dorter he adde god, he þoȝte he wolde fonde
Make hỳre ȝut, ȝyf he mỳȝte, quene of Engelond.
þat [12] Aldred nolde spousy noȝt hỳs dorter he was in fere,
Vor prute & hỳs heỳnỳsse, ȝyf þat he kỳng were.

---

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] *L.* Lamhuþe. *Nam* Lamhethe *in Ar.* [4] Be for his fadre three [*l.* there] *Ar.* [5] Seide er *Ar.* [6] Bỳlafte no mo *Ar.* [7] Aluered *Ar.* [8] And muche peple *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] Ofte tỳme *Ar.* [11] A doughter *Ar.* [12] Aluered *Ar.*

To

To þe ȝongore broþer Seynt Edward hys hope was more ynome,
Vor he was symple & myldore, & [1] eþ to ouercome.
þeruore þo he seȳ Alfred so gret heynesse drawe,
He þoȝte hou he myȝte do, þat he were of lyf dawe.
To þe heye men of Engelond vaste he wende aboute,
And seyde, Engelond myȝte be of Alfred in gret doute.
[2] Vor he þoȝte, ȝyf he were kyng, þat folc of Normandye
Al maystres make in Engelond, þoru" strengþe & tricherye,
An deserȳth hem also þoru Normannes he þoȝte,
þeruore myd hym of Normandye so muche folc he broȝte:
So þat [3] hey men of þe lond he broȝte al to hys wylle,
[4] þat hii nome Alfred, & al hys folc, myd trycherye stille,
An ladde hem vaste ybounde to Guldeforde al so.
Aweȳ! selȳ gultelese men, lute adde hii mys do.
þo hii come to Guldeforde, þys erl Godwyne þe ssrewe
Lete þys gultelese men sette al arewe,
An telle out euere þe teþe man, & þe nyne þoru out he nome,
And let smyte of her alre heuedys, & made a reufol dom.
þo þe teþe was alyue, he þoȝte of more wou.
Hym þoȝte þer were to monye alyue of ynou.
Alle þat were alyue byleued, a rewe ef sone he drou,
An tolde of hem þe teþe out, & þe nyþe slou.
So þat [5] þer byleuede alyue vewe þo,
And þulke out of Engelond he drof myd muche wo.

---

[1] Lithlyche to *Ar.* [2] He saide, yf he were kyng, folke of Normandye All mastres in this londe shulde be an hye, And dissherite Englyssh men. thourgh *Ar.* [3] Certeyne men *Ar.* [4] So that they toke Aluered in a tyme all stylle *Ar.* [5] He ne laft but fewe a lyue thoo, *Ar.*

Alfred

Alfred hii ladde to Elỳ, & [1] pulte out boþe hỳs eỳe,
An hulde hỳm þere in prison, [2] vorte selỳ mon gan deỳe.
Vas þỳs of þỳs Godwỳne a ssrewe & luþer dom,
ȝut owre Lorde, ar he deỳde, gret wreche þere of nom.
Vor, as ȝe ssolle her after hure, he deỳde in pyne ỳnou,
An ssrewede þat he dude lute he bỳlou.

SEYNT Edward in Normandye was þo byleuede alone
As bar, as wo seþ, of þe kunde, as he sprong of þe stone.
He dradde vor he was alone of þe tem bỳleuede þere,
An vor þe traỳtors of Engelond so false & luþer were,
Leste he were of hỳs fon þoru treson ỳbogt,
An, vor loue of hys erỳtage, so to deþe ybrogt.
To God he made hỳs pleỳnte, ofte wepỳnd wel blỳue,
An namelyche þe wule hỳs son of Denemarch were alyue.
" Help me," he seỳde, " in þỳs wo, Lord, bydde ỳch þe.
" [3] Vor mỳ frend & mỳ nexte neỳ stondeþ aȝen me.
" Mỳ fader, þat leuede here in worre & in strỳf,
" In worre & sorwe & sor ỳnou he endede hỳs lỳf.
" Mỳ breþeren beþ boþe aslawe þoru treson al so,
" [4] Mỳ neueus beþ ỳfloỳnd, & out of Engelond ỳdo,"

---

[1] Putte *Ar.* [2] Fort that he ganne deỳe. Me seith, that his nauell gutte oute I take was, A knỳt to a post, and afterward a pas He was i made by the poste ever goo a boute, Fort he hadde i drawe hỳm selfe his guttes al oute. Nas this of this Godewỳne a full luther dome? *Ar.* [3] For thulke that shulde my frendes be stondeth a ỳest me *Ar.* [4] And mỳ Cosỳns i flemed of londe both twoo, *Ar.*

An

" An my moder [1] ywedded to my meste fo,
" An ych alone byleued, woder ssal ych, Louerd, go?
" Hii þat of my erytage al louerdes beþ
" Wylneþ alle þyng most my deþ, as men yseþ.
" [2] And al pouere, Louerd, ycham to þe byleued ywys,
" An þou wolt, Louerd, help be to hym þat faderles ys.
" Al to soþe yt ys ycome, þat Seynt Dunston gan telle.
" þe wreche of my [3] vncle deþ, þat hys stepmoder let quelle,
" My fader abozte yt dere ynou, & my breþeren bo.
" So þat þer nys non byleued, bote ych, Louerd, & nanmo.
" Nys yt vyue & sixty zer, Louerd, non mon ago,
" þat to Engelond, vor þulke deþ, vorst com such wo.
" Hou longe ssal yt ylaste? Louerd, wyþ drau þyn honde.
" Of þy wreche sende som ende, & reu on Engelond.
þo þys kynges of Denemarch alle þre were dede,
An Alfred al so aslawe, þe barons nome to rede,
An oþer heye men al so, as God zef þat cas,
An chose Seynt Edward to her kyng, þat kunde eyr þo was,
As he was þerto ychose, er þan he were y bore.
þo was yt to soþe y come, þat yseyd was byuore,
þat Seynt Peter at Glastynbury to byssop Bryztwold seyde.
þo com vorst pes to Engelond, after [4] þe// wrecchede.
Me sende after hym to Normandye, to Engelond [5] þat" he com,
[6] An lute folc of Normandye myd hym hyder nome,

[1] I wedded was to *Ar.* [2] Alon pouer bilafte icham to the, Lorde, I wys. Lorde, as the luste, helpe the childe that faderles is *Ar.* [3] Uncle's deth, that my [*l.* hys] stepmoder *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] A fewe folke of Normandye heder with him he nome. So that with litell vncouthe *Ar.*

So

So þat mỳd lute onekeþ folc to Engelond he drou.
þe þeymen come aȝen hỳm mỳd joye & prute ynou,
An vnderuonge hym as her louerd vaỳre þoru all þỳnge,
An anester daỳ at Wỳnchestre crouned hỳm to kỳnge.
I sacred he was þo to kỳng of erchebỳssopes tuo,
Of Canterburỳ & Euerwỳk, & other bỳssopes al so.
It was in a þousend ȝer, & fourtỳ & tuo,
After þat God anerþe com, þat he was crouned so.
þo was joỳe in Engelond al onte in eche sỳde.
Hỳs godenesse & hỳs gode los aboute sprong wel wỳde,
þat þer nas non god prince, ne kỳng in none londe,
þat ne wỳlnede enqueỳntance of hỳm, ỳch vnderstonde.
þe emperour of Rome to hym in gode loue ỳwỳs
Obleged bỳ hỳs messagers al þyng þat was hỳs.
Vor Edmonde's sone ỳreneside, þat hỳs on broþer was,
Hadde ỳwedded hỳs cosyne, he was glad of þat cas.
An Seyn Edward neỳ kun was þe kỳng of France al so,
þat eche þỳng clene þat hỳs was he obleged hỳm to.
So þat þer nas prince nour, þat at hỳs wỳlle nas,
Bote he one of Denemarch, þat euere hỳs so was.
Seỳnt Edward, vor al hỳs god, debonere was ỳ nou,
An namelỳche to pouere men, to non prute he ne drou.
Reuſol he was to neodỳ men, of hỳs almesse large & fre.
Of more deuocỳon non man in chỳrche ne myȝt be.
He was selde yseỳe wroþ, ne in glotonỳe, ne in prute.
þeỳ hỳs tresour were ỳlore, þer of he tolde lute.
So holỳ lỳf he ladde & god, so chast and so clene,
[1] þat heỳ men of þe lond wolde hem aldaỳ mene,

[1] That the hegh men of the londe wolde hit al day be mene,

þat hii nadde non eyr bytuene hem, & þat gret peryl yt was,
Vor þer myzte come to al þe lond muche wo vor such cas.
Vor zyf he adde an kund eyr byzyte by hys wyf,
þe sykeror were þat lond, wuþ oute worre & stryf.
[1] þe erl Godwyne, þe false man, þat þe kynge's broþer slou
Aldred, as ych tolde er, an dozter god ynou
Of holy lyf & clene adde, Edyþe was hyre name,
þat, as yt ys of hyre ywryte, & of hyre holy fame,
þat as þe rose sprynz of þe brer, þat ssarp & kene ys,
Al so com þe clene mayde of þe luþer man y wys.
þys luþer man was vaste aboute to hey men ylome,
To brynge yt þerto, zef he myzte, þat þe kyng hys dozter nome.
Me seyde þe kyng, þat he moste nede weddy wyf,
An þat þet mayde was hym best, vor hyr clene lyf.
þe kyng hym byþozte pryuelyche & stylle,
þat in such cas god yt was, to do þe wylle.
An vor heo was so clene mayde, & of so holy lyue,
þe betere hym were in holynesse to nyme hyr to wyue,"
þan an heye kynge's dozter, of [2] verre londe y brozt,
þat to hys holy lyue nolde acordy nozt.

---

mene, And that he ne hadde non heire gret perille hit was, *Ar.*

[1] Godewyne erle a doughter he hadde, that was of grete fame, And of clene lyf also, Edithe was hure name. And as the Roos of a brere spryngeth that kene is, Also spronge this holy mayde of luther kynd i wys. And suth that the kyng nede muste wedde a wyf, Me saide the mayde was to him good for hure clene lyf, That hit was better to him to haue hure to wyf *Ar.* [2] Ferne *Ar.*

[1] An weddede þys mayde," þat so holy & clene was,
More vorto paye [2] þat lond, þan vor eny oþer cas.
Longe hii were to gadere, þys gode kyng & quene,
Ac of ogt bote of holynesse lute yt was ysene.
Vor God, as hii seyde ofte, hii toke to wytnesse,
þat bytuene hem neuere nas bote clannesse.
Boþe hii were at one [3] worde, to lybbe in clene lyue.
[4] So þat hii were wyþoute eyr, me þyncþ, vor al hys wyue.
þe kyng of Denemarch & hys men þretned hym wel vaste.
So þat hii [5] greyþed hym hyderward atte laste.
A Wytesonedaỳ, as Seynt Edward at hys masse stod,
[6] An bed vor þe pes of þe lond, þat God yt sende god,
Rygt atte sacryng he stod as he lowe,
In þe chyrche of Westmynster, as men [7] byhelde ynowe,
Hii þat hym were mest priue, asked wu yt were
þe kyng þo he hem come, & wy he made such chere?
" Certes, syres," quaþ þe kyng, " yhered be Gode's sonde,
" þe luþer men of Denemarch, myd her kyng of þe londe,
" To her olde luþerhedè yturnd adde her þogt,
" To [8] worry owr suete pays, þat owr Louerd vs aþ ybrogt.
" An to day, in þys god tyme, her poer clene hii nome,
" [9] An þe wynd hem payde wel, & to þe see hii come,
" Vorto destrue Engelond, as hii abbeþ ofte ydo.
" An þulke tyme, þat ge yseye þat ych somdel lou so,

[1] So that he this maide wedded, *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] Accorde, *Ar.* [4] So that heirles was the kyng, for all the quene his wyf *Ar.* [5] Dight *Ar.* [6] And bade to him and to his londe God shulde sende pees gode, Atte sacryng he stod, right as thogh he lowgh, *Ar.* [7] Hit seigh i nowgh *Ar.* [8] Destourbe *Ar.* [9] For the *Ar.*

" þe

" þe kyng by an laddre [1] to þe ssyp clam an hey,
" An þreu vp to doun in þe see, & adrenctþe, as ych yseȝ,
" An hys men, as in wanhope, wende hem agen blyue,
" [2] So þat ych hopye to God pays, þe wule ycham alyue.
Messagers to Denemarch sone ysend were,
And, as þe kyng adde ysed, [3] to soþe hii founde þere.
Neuer eft hii of Denemarch hyder nolde come.
Vor god prince al alond varþ þe bet ylome.
Vor þe lond was fyue & syxty ger in worre & in sore,
As [4] he habbeþ yhurd byuore, & afterward gut more,
As ge ssolle hure her afterward. ac þe wule he was kyng,
þat lond was in god loue & pes, wyþoute eche stryuynge.

SEYNT Edward brozte to Engelond out of Normandye
Men, [5] þat adde hym fleme ydo god & corteysye.
And Roberd a clerc he louede mest, vor he gef hym þe bys-
soprych
Of London, & suþþe of Canterbury þe erchebyssoprych.
þo he was erchebyssop, luþer he was and prout.
þe kyng hym [6] louede, & alle hys dedes þoru hym dude al out.
þer was vp þe quene Emme, þe kynge's moder, y do
A luþer sclaundre, & vp þe byssop of Wynchestre al so,
þat [7] hii in contenance to folyche hem bere.
þe erchebyssop tolde þe kyng more [8] þan þer were,

---

[1] To shipward clam an hiegh, And fell doune in the see, and a dreynte neigh, *Ar.* [2] So that as for the Danes may ich be withoute stryue. Messagers *Ar.* [3] The sothe they *Ar.* [4] ye *Ar.* [5] That, while he flemed was, hadde do him courteseye *Ar.* [6] Loued euer most, and dude by him al oute *Ar.* [7] Hii to gedere in contenaunce *Ar.* [8] Than sothe were, *Ar.*

þat þer was foul lecherye bytuene hem y do,
[1] And þat þoru þe quene hyr sone was Alfred to deþe ydo,
And þat he ne myzte nozt byleue, bote he amendement tok
Of so vyl dede, wanne he adde her soules to loke.
þe kyng leuede hym wel ynou, & suer he nolde abyde,
þat he nolde verst nyme vengeance in hys syde.
þe byssop he bynome verst al hys lay fe,
[2] And suþþe hym in prison, & bynome hym hys se.
Hys moder he dude in warde, & scars lyf lede her fonde
In þe abbeye of Worwell, & bynome hyre hyr londe.
þys quene made deol y nou, & hyr lettres wyde sende,
[3] To byssopes, þat heo truste to, yre stat vorto amende,
[4] And þat heo wolde þoru fury yre, zyf me wolde þat heo bere,
Oþer trede, ssewy, þet heo gulteles were.
þe kyng was meok & mylde ynou, an, as þe byssopes bade,
Wolde hys moder do alout, bote as þe oþer yt made.
And naþeles hii were aton," as hii wolde desyre,
þat hys moder [5] hyr skere ssolde myd fury yre.

[1] And that Aluered her sone thorgh her was dede also, Be cause that Knut and Hardeknut sheo loued thorgh al thing More that Ethelred, and other of his Ospring. As the commune fame was thorgh oute all the lond, That sheo loued Knut in hert, me wrong dude vnderstande. The Erchebisshop seide, he ne myght let hit be so nought, And that to amendement hit moste nedes be brought. The kyng him leued of this thing, and seide he nolde a bide, *Ar.* [2] And brought him in prison, and him by name his see *Ar.* [3] To heghe men, that heo truste to, *Ar.* [4] And seide, that sheo wolde thorgh fuyr ire, if that me hure bede, Preue, that heo was gultless of that ilke dede. The kyng was meoke and mylde i nowe after summe's rede, Wolde haue lette his moder goo, but summe hit with sede. Atte laste hii were atte on *Ar.* [5] Skere her self shulde *Ar.*

þe

þe erchebyssop Roberd hurde of þys dome,
An, þey he nere [1] nogt ybe, to þys conseyl he com.
þe byssopes [2] he ladde a conseyl, " Louerdynges," he seyde,
" [3] Ich wene vor hys moder my louerd þe kyng gebede,
" þat nys as no woman, ac as þe deuel ych doute,
" þat, vorto ssende hyre owe sone þe kyng, heo ys aboute,
" þat seyþ he ys [4] amansed, vor hyre copynere
" þe byssop [5] he deþ in warde, of wan heo wole hyr skere.
" gyf heo skery hyre of hym, hou wole heo vorþore mo
" [6] Skere of þat heo aþ ydo, hyre sone's gret wo,
" Of þat [7] heo Alfred hyre sone radde to deþe brynge,
" And þat heo porueyde poyson to hyre sone þe kynge?
" Ac gyf heo hyre [8] skere wole of eche of þys þynge,
" And heo hyre skerynge do after my lokynge,
" And heo of scapye harmyles þe gultes echon,
" [9] Icholle, vor me & vor þe kyng, þat gult nabbeþ non,
" And grante, þat my dygnyte me be al bynome,
" And þat heo & þe byssop ek to hyre [10] sta agen come.
" Let nyme four yrene ssares vor hyr sulue al afure,
" An fyue vor þe byssop, & gyf heo yt may [11] dure,

---

[1] Nat i bede, to *Ar.* [2] He spake to thus, Lordynges, *Ar.* [3] The kyng for the quene his moder heder vs hath i bede. She fareth nat as a woman, but as a deuell, ich doute, And for to shende *Ar.* [4] A cursed, *Ar.* [5] That he dude in warde, of wham she thenketh hure skere. yf sheo clenseth hure self of him, *Ar.* [6] Skere hure of *Ar.* [7] She Aluered hure sone let to deþ *Ar.* [8] Purge *Ar.* [9] Ich graunte, for me and for the kyng, that gultles mote she goon, And graunte, that all my dignyte me be all by nome, *Ar.* [10] Stat *Ar.* [11] Endure *Ar.*

" Wanne hii lyggeþ in þe flor to steppe vp echon
" After oþer bareuot, and heo bỳleue non,
" þat heo ne steppe wỳþ folle fot wyþoute quakỳnge,
" And [1] ȝyf vet bet þanne sauf, woute enỳ wemmỳnge,
" Graunteþ hem al quỳt. ac ȝyf heo quakeþ [2] out,
" Oþer stepþ bỳsyde, oþer hyre vet in enỳ wemme be ỳbrozt,
" Holdeþ hem gultỳ of þe dede, & lateþ hem also
" Al her lỳf, as wỳckemen, in strong prison be ỳdo.
þys fourme was ygranted þo, & certeyn daỳ al so
At Seỳn Swythỳne's at Wỳnchestre, wanne yt ssolde be ỳdo.
þo me tolde þe [3] quene vore, heo was glad ỳnou.
So þat þoru al Engelond [4] þys word sone drou,
þat, þo þe daỳ was ỳcome, so muche folc þer com,
þat me nuste ware hem innỳ, vorto se þỳs dom.
þe heỳe men neỳ of Engelond were þere echone,
[5] To se Gode's grace of þe quene, bote erchebỳssop one.
Ac he feỳnede hỳm somdel sỳk, &, neỳ þe see to be,
He bỳleuede at Douere, ȝỳf neod were, to fle.
þe quene, þoru þe kynge's heste, [6] ỳbrozt was also
Fram Worwelle to Wynchestre, [7] þỳs jugement to do.
To Seỳn Swythỳne's ssrỳne þen weỳ heo nom [8] wel rỳȝt,
Gladlỳche þo heo þuder com, & bỳleued al nỳȝt
In wop & in orỳsons, þat reuþe yt was to se,
And euere bed þe holyman hyre help vorto be.

---

[1] ỳf her feet be thanne saf with oute *Ar.* [2] Ought, *Ar.* [3] Quene her of, heo *Ar.* [4] The tythyng here of drow. And thoo the day *Ar.* [5] To see this purgyng of the quene, saf the Erchebisshop a lone *Ar.* [6] I brought forth was tho *Ar.* [7] Hure purgacion to doo *Ar.* [8] Full *Ar.*

As

As heo vel in a lute slep, Seyn Swỳthyn to hỳre com.
" Dozter," he seyde, " be studeuast to vnderuonge þỳ dom.
" Icham Swỳthyn, wam þou [1] bỳst, & verzỳf þỳ sone þys dede,
" An to passỳ þe furỳ ỳre, [2] nane þou non drede.
þe quene heo was glad, þo heo awok, of þat þỳs godemon seyde.
[3] þet folc com þỳcke a morwe, to se þys wonder dede,
An þe heymen come echon, þen dom to hure sone.
An þe kyng, þen dom vorto zỳue, an heỳ sat on hỳs trone.
Bỳuore hỳm, vorto auonge hỳr dom, þe quene me brozte al so.
þe kỳng hỳr esste sturnelỳche, wer heo wolde þe dom do?
[4] þe quene wepude wel sore, þe kỳng ansuerede þỳs:
" Sỳre kỳng, þou art mỳ louerd & mỳ sone ỳwỳs.
" Ich emme þat þe bere, & vor þe gronede ỳlome,
" þe wule þou in mỳ wombe were, & ar þou fram me come.
" A sclaundre ỳs vp me ybrozt of mỳ chỳldren tueye,
" Of þe and Alfred þỳ broþer, þat mỳ sones were beỳe,
" þat ỳch ssolde atte rede be, þỳ broþer to deþe brỳnge,
" And þe vorto apoỳsonỳ. & zut of þrỳdde þỳnge,
" þat ỳch sunne of lecherỳe mỳd Aỳlwỳne al so,
" þat ỳs bỳssop of Wỳnchestre, ssolde abbe ỳdo.
" Ich [5] clupỳe God to wỳtnesse, þat [6] me to daỳ ỳhure,
" þat, zỳf ỳch [7] of enỳ gultỳ am, [8] þat ỳch mote þoru þỳs fure
" Brenne bỳneþe & perỳsy, þat me mowe ỳse þe wreche.
" An zf ỳch gulteles am þer of, þat God þet soþe teche.

---

[1] Biddest, *Ar.* [2] Haue thow no drede. *Ar.* [3] The peple *Ar.* [4] The quene thenne wepỳng sore, to the kỳng seide thus: *Ar.* [5] Take *Ar.* [6] He this daỳ hit hure, *Ar.* [7] *Desunt Ar.* [8] *Deest Ar.*

þe quene was þo vorþ ylad [1] myd mony a wepynde eye
Of byssopes and of heymen, & of oþere þat yt yseye.
Hyre ryche cloþes were of ydo, bote þat [2] heo was by weued
[3] Hyre body wyþ a mantel, a wympel aboute her heued.
þe legges bare bynebe þe kne, þat me myzte eche stape yse.
Awey! vnele bycome yt quene so bar vorto be.
Me brozte vorþ [4] þys fury ssares, & leyde [5] ys al arewe,
[6] In þe bare erþe ysuope, Gode's grace to ssewe.
þe byssopes [7] blessede þe ssares, & þe quene al so,
And ladde hyre vorþ in eyþer half, [8] þys jugement to do.
þe quene þozte al on God, & to heuene caste hyre eye,
And ne lokede no þyng donward, &, as hii alle yseye,
[9] Heo stap vp þys fury yre, euerych stap al clene.
Nuste heo hyr sulf wanne yt was, ne blenyte nozt ene.
þer was joye & blysse y nou, & [10] mony a wepynde eye,
Vorst vor fere, & suþþe vor joye, þo hii þys yseye.
þe byssopes, þat hyre ladde, vor joye [11] wepe al so,
And [12] herede God & Seyn Swythyn, þo þys [13] myracle was ido,

[1] With many a wepyng tere Of lordes and barons, and other that were there *Ar.* [2] She *Ar.* [3] With a light mantell, and a veile a boute hur hefed. Hure legges bare by nethe kne, me myght see her shappe. Selcouth thing hit was to see a quene so barfote stappe *Ar.* [4] Thes *Ar.* [5] Hem *Ar.* [6] Upon the playne erthe ther, Godde's *Ar.* [7] Blessed tho the quene, an prayde for hure also, *Ar.* [8] Her *pro* þys *in Ar.* [9] Heo stapped vppon the fuyry shares, harmeles all clene. Herself he nust whanne hit was, ne blenched heo na ene *Ar.* [10] Many a weping eye, *Ar.* [11] Wepte *Ar.* [12] Heried *Ar.* [13] *Deest Ar.*

An

An ladde hỳre outward of þe chỳrche, þe quene bỳgan to crie:
" Vor þe loue of Jhesu Crist, ne doþ nozt [1] þe vỳlenỳe,
" To do mỳ penance wỳþoute, ac in alle manere,
" [2] As ỳt me ỳloked war, in holỳ chỳrche here.
" Madame," [3] quaþ þe byssopes, " þou [4] aste ydo ỳwỳs.
" So helpe me God," quaþ þe quene, [5] " ỳnuste nozt er þỳs.
" No fur ỳne velde, nene seỳ in þysse place.
" Bote nou ỳch ỳt verst ỳse, [6] ỳrede be Gode's grace.
" Ledeþ me þanne to mỳ sone, ỳat he mowe ỳse
" Mỳ vet aboue, & eke bỳneþe, were hii ỳwemmed be.
þo hii brozte hỳre to þe kỳng, þe kỳng lỳggỳnge hii wonde,
Wepỳnde & open heued, to sprad al to þe grounde.
Hỳt was longe ar he mỳzte speke, vor deol þat he made.
Atte laste he ros vp, as þe bissopes hỳm bade,
And vel to ỳs moder vet, adoun anon akne.
" Moder," he seỳde, " ych abbe mỳs ỳdo azen God & azen þe,
" [7] þat Inam nozt wurþe to be þỳ sone, ac per Seynt charỳte,
" Vor þe pỳte þat of þe Magdaleỳn God adde, vorzỳf ỳt me.
" Sone," quaþ hỳs moder þo, " as al [8] þỳs men ỳseþ,
" God aþ vaỳre ỳssewed, þat we gultelese beþ.
" Atte bỳgunnynge þeruore azen þe hỳssop ych rede
" [9] Amendement do, þat ys gultelesse of þe dede.

---

[1] This *Ar.* [2] As hit ordeỳned to me was, in holy *Ar.* [3] Seide *Ar.* [4] Hast it do er this *Ar.* [5] I nust hit nat I wỳs. No fuỳre Ich felte, ne saỳ in this ilke place *Ar.* [6] Heried *Ar.* [7] I ne am not worthỳ be thi sone, For muche the gilte Ich haue. For thy of God and of the mercỳ now ich craue *Ar.* [8] Thes folk I seeth *Ar.* [9] Amendement let be do, that gilteles is of that dede. Sithen thow maiste a yenste me, for ich mote be mỳlde, As kendeliche the moder ought to the childe *Ar.*

" And

" And suþþe aȝen me þou mýȝt, vor ich mot nede be mýlde,
" As kunde of moder wole & blod aȝen mý chýlde.
þo þe býssop was ýcome [1] wepynde wel sore,
þe kýng vel doun to hýs vet, & crýde hým mýlce and ore.
þe byssop [2] wepýnde al so ver ȝaf ýt hým anon.
So þat þoru þe kýnge's bone, þe byssopes echon,
[3] Ech after oþer, asoýlede þen kýng of þýs trespas
Mýd ȝerden in hýs naked rug, & þat gret pyte was.
þre strokes þe moder ek, [4] wepýnde wel sore,
ȝef hym [5] to asoýlý, & ne mýȝte vor reuþe more.
þo custe þe kýng [6] hýs moder, & þe býssop suþþe also,
And herede ȝerne Seyn Swythýn, þat such myracle adde ýdo.
þe kýng þo [7] mýd gode herte delyuery het anon,
Boþe quene and býssop, her maners echon.
Nýne tounes þe quene anon of þat hyr owene was
ȝef þe house of Seyn Swýthýn, vor þys holy cas.
And þe býssop oþer nýne of hýs erýtage ýwýs.
Vor he nyne furý ssares ýȝeue was al þýs.
þe kýng [8] confermed her maners, & hym sulf ȝef al so
Tucye God gode maners Seýn Swýthýn þerto,

---

[1] Wepýng full *Ar.* [2] Wepýng also for gaf him a non *Ar.* [3] Assoilled him right there of his trespas With ýerdes on his naked rigge, þat grete pite was *Ar.* [4] Wepýng full *Ar.* [5] For absolution, for rewthe sheo ne mýght no more *Ar.* [6] And his moder, and the bisshoppes also, And hered God and Seynt Swethýne of this miracle i do *Ar.* [7] With goude hert let deliuere a noн, Bothe the quene and bisshop, her londes every chon *Ar.* [8] Confermed al this, and him self yaf there to II. good Tounes, for that he hadde mýsdoo, That wolde be xx. in all, hit was nat lite there. Hit wolde fynde the Couent wortes i nowe

þat wolde be tuentỳ vnder al, & þat nas noȝt lute þere.
Vor ỳt wolde fỳnde hem lek worten ỳ nowe bỳ þe ȝere.
Vor gode þe nexte kỳng Edward, þat after hỳm come,
Ne ȝef hem noȝt follỳche so muche wyþnne hỳs kynedom.
þe abbey of Seỳn Denỳs Seỳnt Edward ȝef also
þe priorỳe of Derheste, & londes þat her beþ þerto.
þe erchebỳssop of Canterburỳ sorỳ ỳnou was þo,
þo he hurde of þe quene al hou ỳt was ỳgo.
Hỳm þoȝte wel longe, ar he were ouer see,
[1] And byleuede al hỳs byssoprỳche, & necome neuere eft aȝe.
þe quene & eke þe bỳssop, þe wule hii alỳue were,
Muche honourede Seyn Swỳthyn fram ȝere to ȝere.
Hỳs moder wende out of þỳs lỳf, Emme þe god quene,
In þe a þousend ȝer of grace & tuo & fỳfty ỳch wene.
Seynt Edward huld at [2] Wỳndelsore a uaỳr feste wỳþalle,
And as a ȝong man bỳuore [3] hỳm seruede in þe halle
He spurnde mỳd hỳs on vot, þat he vel almost abrod,
[4] Ac he hente mỳd hỳs oþer, so þat he abode.
þe erl Godwỳne, þe false man, seỳde þo, " [5] þat he on broþer,
" As ȝe seþ, in nede helpþ þere þat oþer.
þo ansuerede þe [6] kỳng & seỳde, " so mỳȝte me
" Mỳ broþer helpe, Godwỳne, ȝỳf he moste vor þe.

---

nowe euery yere. To the abbey of Seỳnt Denỳs Seỳnt Edwarde ỳaf also The Priourỳ of Derhurst, *Ar.*

[1] He bilafte his bỳsshopriche, and neuer cam a ỳee *Ar.* [2] Wỳnchestre a fest grete with alle *Ar.* [3] Hem *Ar.* [4] But þe other fote him halpe, so that *Ar.* [5] Ther the on brother, Ase ye seith, in nede ofte helpeth the other *Ar.* [6] Kyng, so myght my brother me Ofte haue holpe, and he most for the *Ar.*

þo

Þo was þys luþer Godwyne [1] of ssamed suÿþe sore,
" Syre," he seÿde, " ȝut me þÿncþ, [2] þat yuortrou þou art more
" To me of þÿ broþer deþ, & leuest hem ÿch ÿse,
" þat in falsnesse þe tolde, þat ÿch ssolde þÿ traÿtor be.
" [3] As wÿs deme God þat soþe, þat of ech þÿng wot ende,
" And also late þÿs mossel bred þoru mÿ þrote wende,
" Wÿþ out harm of me, as I nadde neuere in non cas
" Gult of þÿ broþer deþ, ne þÿ traÿtor neuere I nas.
Mossel he dude in to hys mouþ, ac þe kÿng ÿt blessed er.
Hyt byleuede amÿdde hys þrote, astrangled he was ryȝt þere,
And deÿde atte borde al stÿf, wÿþ ssendnesse inou.
Out al byneþe þe borde [4] Haral hys sone hÿm drou.
[5] A þousend ȝer in þe ȝer of grace & þre & fÿfty þys was.
Lute harm, þey ech traÿtor ended in such cas.
Of al hÿs kun in Engelond Seynt Edward nadde noȝt on.
Vor hÿs broþeren were aslawe, oþer [6] ÿfleÿnd echon.
þeruore þo þÿs holÿ man [7] as" in to elde wende,
To þe emperour of Rome after hÿs [8] neueu he sende
Edward, [9] Edmonde's sone þat was Yrene sÿde,
þat hÿs eÿr were after hÿm, ȝÿf he myȝte alÿue abÿde.

[1] Ashamed *Ar.* [2] Thow mÿstrowest me more, And puttest vpon me thi brother, and nelt I leue me, For all that ich a quyt was bÿ men of Noblete: And also wys neuer this morsell thourgh my throte passe, As ich of thi brother deth never gulty nas. The morsell to his mothe he putte, but blessed was hit er Of a bisshop, so that ther with a strangeled he was ther. He deÿde stÿff atte borde in shamefull deth i now *Ar.* [3] *F.* ac. [4] Harold *Ar.* [5] A MI. as in the ÿere of grase and. liii. this was *Ar.* [6] I flemed *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar:* [8] Cosÿns [*l.* cosÿn] *Ar.* [9] That was the sone of Edmunde Irenside, That he his heÿre were *Ar.*

þys emperour hym sende, myd gode loue & fre,
Edward & Agace hys wyf, & her chyldren þre
þe ȝonge [1] Edward Adelyng, & also Margarete,
And [2] Cristyne her soster, þat god were & suete.
þo hii come to Engelond, glad was þe kyng þo,
Vor he nadde in hys fader alf kunnesmen nanmo.
þys was in a þousend ȝer & seuene & fyfty þerto
As in ȝer of ȝrace, þat þys dede was ydo.
Ac Edward de yde sone, & ybured was wyþ gret prute
At Seyn Poule's at Londone, as hys bones beþ ȝute:
And hys sone [3] Edward bote ȝong & tendre nas,
þeruore þe kyng vor hys deþ þe sorrore was.
[4] Vor þat chyld was wel ȝong, eyr & kyng to be,
And he wuste wel, þat in þe lond [5] muche wo me ssolde y se.
And vor hys vncle in Normandye hym adde [6] yusteyned er,
þo he was [7] fleyne & frendeles, [8] mo þan þruttyʺ ȝer,
He wolde, þat hys sone sone after hym kyng were
Wyllam duc of Normandie, ryȝt lawe þey yt nere.
[9] Vor he was in hys moder alf next of hys blod,
And þer nas non in hys fader alf þat þer to was so god.
þer uore þys Wyllam bastard Engelond he byhet,
And byqueþ in hys deþ vnel, ar he þat lyf let.

---

[1] *Lege*, Edgar Athelyng, *cum Ar.* [2] Christiene *Ar.* [3] *Repone*, Edgar, *cum Ar.* [4] For his sone Edgar to yonge was kyng to be *Ar.* [5] Muche stryf shulde be *Ar.* [6] Susteyned *Ar.* [7] Fleme *Ar.* [8] Negh xxx. *Ar.* [9] For in his moder half quene Emme he was the nexte bloode, And as for the londe's prough him thought none so goode *Ar.*

And

And þat muche vor þe londe's prou, vor hỳs neuen so ȝong was.
Hou [1] Wyllam bastard was bỳȝyte, Icholle telle þat cas.
Rychard duc of Normandye, Emme broþer þe quene,
Adde a sone, þat het Roberd, þat duc was suþþe, Ich wene.
Roberd, þys noble duc, as he wende ouer lond,
A wel vayr maỳde, as hỳm þoȝte, matresche he vond.
þỳs mayde hỳm paỳde suyþe wel, mỳd god wille he hỳr nom,
And huld hỳre as hỳs lefmon, as wo seỳþ in hordom,
And byȝet on hỳre þỳs Wỳllam, &, vor he was so ỳbore
Out of spoushod, me cluped hỳm Wyllam bastard þeruore.

[1] *Metra hac de re desunt in Ar. in quo tamen sequentia, eo pertinentia, narravit scriptor prosaicus, quibus similia itidem videas tam in Polychronico, quam & in Lelandi nostri Collect. Vol. VI. p.* 296. After him [Richarde the *IIIde.*] Robert his sone [was duc of Normandye,] a man of grete worthinesse. After him William Bastard, of wham this geste folweth. Robert duc of Normandỳe in a tỳme as he dwelled in a toune of Normandie, i cleped Faleys, he caste his chere to a mayde in the toune, that me cleped Herlote. And, when sheo was brought to the duke's bedde, and shulde go therto, she toke her smok a boue atte coler hem, and rent hit doune to the foot, and leide it a weỳ fram hure. And whenne sheo was esshet, whỳ she dude soo? she answered and seide, hit was nat curtasỳe ne reson that thinges, that touched her feet & hure lowe thynges, shuld touche her lorde's mouthe ne visage, & so thulke same nỳght the duc gat on her William Bastard. And after hure slepe sheo a woke, and made a grete gronỳng and syghỳng. So that the duc hurỳng that, esshet of hure, why sheo sighed so? And sheo answered, "Lord ich haue "worderliche [*f.* wonderliche] "i mette. Me thought," quod sheo, "that a grete tree growe "oute atte my wombe, and "by shadowed alle Norman- "dye." And after, whenne hit came to the tyme, when the childe was i bore, a non, þourgh

Ar þat chỳld were ỳbore, a wel wonder cas
þe moder mette bỳ hỳre chỳld, þat in hỳr wombe was,
þat hỳs gottes were to drawe aboute al Normandỳe,
And eke aboute al Engelond, þat was to sỳgnỳfỳe,
þat he ssolde be duc of Normandỳe, & kỳng of Engelond,
And bothe, as ỳt suþþe vel, holde in hỳs honde.
þe chỳld ek þo ỳt was ỳbore, & to grounde com,
Out of hỳs moder wombe verst, boþe hỳs honden he nom
Vol of þe poudre & of þe erþe sturnelỳche ỳnou,
And closedes to gader & hỳs fustes boþe adrou.
þo was yt jugged, þat he ssolde be, wỳþ oute faỳle,
Hardỳ kỳng & stalwarde, & muche do of bataỳle.
Al yt bycom to soþe suþþe. he bygan ȝong ynou,
To cuþe wat he wolde be, þat so ȝong hỳs fustes adrou.

þourgh negligence of women attendỳng a boute his moder forỳetỳng hỳm, he was walwed into the strawe that was bỳ, and had caught his. ii. hondes so fulle ther of, that vnnethe, with oute grete harme, me mỳght delỳuere hit oute of his hondes. Wherfor, muche folke demed, he shulde wexe to summe grete auoire of worlde's ricchesse. And as this childe was after in norỳsshỳng in Valeỳs, a grete man [*sic hæc concipiuntur*] of the contre, I hote William Tallmage. So that a burgeỳs, where as this childe was in norỳsshỳng, praỳde this William to come to his house, and visite his lorde's sone. This William Tallenage & alle his kynne hadde euer i hated this childe's fader and his kynne, and ỳut not withstondỳng that he cam to the hous, wher this childe was inne. And as non as this childe, that vnnethe coude speke, saugh him, sodeỳneliche hit gan chide towardes this man, and so ferde towardes him, that me toke grete hede there of, supposyng hit myght nat be withoute grete ordinaunce of God.

þat

þat chýld wax so wel & ýþen, as seýde fremde & sýbbe,
þat he wolde be a noble mon, ȝýf he moste lybbe.
Hýs fader adde of hym eke gret joýe & prýs,
þat so gode sýgne adde so ȝong, to be stalwarde & wýs.
Ar he were of sene ȝer old. þoru out moný a lond
þe pope sende creýserý toward þe holýlond.
Roberd duc of Normandýe þe croýs nom atten ende,
And ȝarked hým wýþ oþere to þe holylonde to wende.
At Festamp, ar he wende vorþ, he made al Normandýe
Suerýe, holde hýs ȝong sone, as to seýgnorýe.
ȝong duc he was on of sene ȝer vnneþe.
Vor þe fader ne com neuere aȝen, ar he were broȝt to deþe.
And þýs ȝong chýld byleued duc, & gret þyng adde an honde.
þýs was ar Seýnt Edward were kýng of Engelond.
And Seýnt Edward byleuede vorþ mýd hým, as he adde er ýdo
Myd hys fader in hys nede, & mýd hýs grantsyre al so.
þeruore þo he was kýng, gret loue he gan bede
þýs Wyllam, vor hii susteýned hým so in hys nede.
So þat suþþe in hýs elde, þo hýs lýf was neý ydo,
As in þe ȝer of hys kýnedom tuentý & tuo,
Of þe crounc of Engelond he nuste wat best do,
Vor Edgar, hys neuen sone, wel ȝong was þerto
To be kýng of Engelond, & hýs owe lyf ssoȝt was,
And he dradde of gret contek alonde vor þat cas.
Hym þoȝte to ȝýue Wyllam þýs lond, hyt was best to do.
Vor he was wurþe, & of hýs blod, & best ýt couþe wyte also.
þeruor he ȝaf ýt hým, as he byhet hým byuore,
And sende to hým mýd þe ȝýfte to Normandye þeruor

þe

þe erl Harald þe quene broþer, as me wende, & oþer mo.
Ac soþ ẏt ẏs, þat þe erl Harald passede þe see þo,
Wẏþ gret poer & folc ẏnou, so þat, as God ẏt wolde,
Wyþ wẏnd he was in strange londe ẏdrẏue, þer he nolde.
þere hii were, as strange men, [1] grẏmẏlẏche undervonge,
And ẏnome to albe of here, & ẏbrozt in bendes stronge.
Sẏr Gwẏ of Pountyn was hẏs name, þat hẏm adde in bende,
And asked hem gret ramson, in prison vorto wende.
Harald was of heẏe herte, & suor raþer he wolde
zẏue þe duc of Normandẏe of hẏs tresor & of hys golde,
þat so noble duc was & god, [2] þan a such alue man as he was.
To þe duc he sende sone, to helpe hẏm in þat cas.
þe duc sende to Sẏr Gwẏ, so [3] þat Sẏr Gwẏ anon
And adde Harald to þe duc, & hys felawes echon.
þe duc vaẏre hẏm vnderuong, & honoured hẏm ẏ nou,
So þat, as ryzt was, gret loue bytuene [4] hẏm drou.
Harald, vor to paẏe hẏm wel, sende hẏm sone hẏs sonde,
Hou þe kẏng hẏm [5] made after hẏm hys eẏr of hẏs londe.

---

[1] Greuẏliche vnderfonge In Sir Guẏ de Pounsoun's lond, and i prisoned wonder strong. And whenne theẏ hadde ther a while thus i dwelte in bende, Sir Guy asked hem Raunson grete, of prison for to wende *Ar.* [2] Than suche half man *Ar.* [3] That he a non Ladde Harolde tho to him, and his felawes echon *Ar.* [4] Hem drowgh. Harold than, to queme the duc, seide sone his sonde, *Ar.* [5] Maked after his daẏ heire of Engelond. And Harold swor to the duc, and to him fast bonde, That to his bẏ houe al on he wolde kepe the londe, And that the duke's doughter, whenne that tẏme come, That ẏong was thoo, in foreward to wẏf Harolde nome. And thus Harolde was i swor to do thes thinges twoo With also gret othe & bonde, as men mẏght doo *Ar.*

And þat he wolde take hym to wyte hys lond he vnderstode
To hys byefþe, & þat he wolde wardeyn be hym god.
As strong vorewarde as hii myzte hii made & as hard,
And vp holy relykes Harald suor to Wyllam bastard,
Treulyche to wyte Engelond to hym, vorte he come,
And þat he hys one dozter to wyue also nome,
þat zond was at þulke tyme, so þat hys þynges tuo
Wyþ as gret oþ he suor hym, as man myzte do.
þo þys vorewarde was ymad hard & strong y nou,
Harald toward Engelond wyþ gode loue drou.
þe kyng he tolde al þat cas, þat bytuene hem was ydo,
Hou he wolde to Wyllam trywe be, an hys dozter spousy al so.
þo was þe kyng glad ynou, þat he wel to hym truste,
[1] And bytot hym þat lond, þat he wel to þys Wyllam yt wuste.
Seynt Edward wuste of hys deþ, ar he henne wende.
Vor Seynt Jon euuangelyst byuore longe word sende,
And sende hym tokne by a ryng, þat at Westmynstre zut ys,
þat Seynt Edward þer byuore Seyn Jon zef ywys.
þe kyng þo þet word hym com, & þen ryng ysey,
He þonkede God þat he wuste, þat hys deþ was so ney.
Hys gode he delde pouere men, & made hys bernes bare,
And hys tresorye al so god, & to God hym made al zare.
Glad he was of Westmynstre þat he [2] let hym sulf rere,
þat byuore hym was ybrozt to grounde, þoru luþer kynges
þat were.

---

[1] And by toke him all the londe, to the duc that he wyst *Ar.* [2] Lette vppe a rere *Ar.*

Ac

Ac [1] vorþ chyrche vnhalwed was, þeruor hym was wo.
He þozte [2] lete hys halwy to mydewynter anon þo.
þey Seyn Peter hymsulf [3] yhalwed adde er,
ȝut he moste efsone vor þe nywe worke þere.
He sende after hys [4] baronye, at mydewynter [5] myd hym to be.
þo þe feste ygadered was, deol me myȝte yse.
Vor þo yt ssolde murgost be, þe kyng vnelede anon.
And naþeles glad he was hym sulf, [6] vor he wuste gon.
And vor joye of hys deþe, & vor þe heye feste also,
þe trauayl he nome to hym al, þat hem wolde vane to do.
He ber þe croune, & huld þe deys myd oþer atyl al so,
And myd gret semblant þe feste huld vorte þre dawes were ydo.
A Seyn Jone's day he sey þat al com to god endynge,
He made ac conferment to Westmynstre of eche þynge,
þat þoru hym hem yȝyue was, oþer þoru eny oþer kynge,
So þat no kyng after hym ne dude no destour brynge.
þe chyrche" he let halwy as a Chyldery masse day.
Wel feble he was þere hym sulf, as al [7] þat folc y say.
In a þousend ȝer of grace, & syxe & syxty þerto,
Hyt was þat þys holyman þys dede let do.

---

[1] For the churche *Ar.* [2] To habbe halwed hur atte midwynter thoo *Ar.* [3] Her hadde halwed er *Ar.* [4] Barons, *Ar.* [5] Negh *pro* myd *in Ar.* [6] For he wiste hoder gon. yut bare he the crowne, & helde the deys with other a tyre also, And with gret chere iii. dayes helde his feste so. A Seynt Johen's day, of all to make good endyng, He confermed by his chartre in all maner thyng To Westmynstre the fredomes i vsed yut huder to, And ho that a yenst hem ought dude, let seutence ther on doo. The churche he lette halwe a Childermasse day *Ar.* [7] The *Ar.*

Þo hỳt was al wel ỳdo, & ỳbrogt to god ende,
Þe kỳng feble & sỳk ynou to hỳs bed gan wende.
Þo was þer deol & sorwe ynou of men þat wuste þat cas,
Vor hii wuste, þat to Engelond muche wo to come was.
Worre & slagt, and oþer wo, & honger & gret wou.
Þe quene vel bỳ hỳm adoun, & byclupte hỳm vaste ỳnog
Vorto hete hỳs colde lymes, þat non hete ne come to,
Þoru hete of hỳre owe bodỳ, & of hỳre cloþes al so.
Þe kyng lay as he were ysnowe almest dawes two.
He gan, as he awoke of slepe, hỳs eyen þo vn do.
He sat [1] vpard vp hỳs bed, hỳs honden held vp anheỳ.
" Louerd," he seỳde, " þat ech þỳng madest queynte & sleỳ,
" And changest [2] poer & kỳnedoms alat þỳ nowe rede,
" And monne's sones wreche senst of her fader mỳs dede,
" gỳf þỳng, þat ỳch nou ỳseỳ, [3] come of þỳ soþnesse,
" get me poer yt to telle in al my feblesse,
" Vorto ssewé þỳ poer, þat hii þat yt ỳseþ
" Douty þe, & of þe sỳnne, þat hii in beþ,
" Repentỳ mowe, & þer of hem amendỳ so,
" [4] þat hii ssulde hem fram þe harm, þat þou þencst hem do.
Anon as þỳs holymon [5] adde hỳs oryson ỳ do þere,
Stalward man of speche he was, holy man as he were,
Þo gan he to [6] tellen þus: " þulke tỳme þat ych was
" [7] As man fleỳne in Normandye, me com monỳ god cas.

[1] Upwardes on his bedde, *Ar.* [2] Power and kyngdom atte thỳne awne wille, And mannes sonns sendest wreche of his fader's ille *Ar.* [3] Come shall of thỳ Rightwesnesse, *Ar.* [4] And pray the shilde hem fro the harme, that thow hem thenkest doo *Ar.* [5] Hadde doo his prayere, Strong i now his speche was *Ar.* [6] Segge *Ar.* [7] Flemed man in Normandỳe, me cam *Ar.*

" Men

" Men of relẏgyon ẏch louede wel ẏ nou,
" An to me hem, þat best were, [1] at vore alle oþer ych drou.
" [2] An tuene holẏ men at vore alle oþer mest yc louede þere.
" Nou wot ẏch wel, þat [3] monẏ daẏ in heuene boþe hii were.
" Hii tolde me, þat" to Engelond after me ssolde come.
" Hii seẏde me of þe wrecchede, [4] þat alonde aþ ȝare ẏbe.
" þe wreche hẏeþ & sone comeþ. & þat ssal me ẏse.
" Vor prestes, mẏd vnclene honde & mẏd lechor's mode
" Al soẏled, sacrẏeþ Gode's fless & hys blod.
" Ssepurdes hii [5] bet luþer, vor hii ne [6] wẏteþ noȝt
" Her ssep fram þe [7] wolues. vor be hem ẏbroȝt
" þe melke & þe wolle clene. of oþer [8] þẏng hii nolle telle.
" þe ssepurdes and þe ssep [9] al so ssulle to pẏne of helle.
" As god heẏmen of þe lond robbeors felawes beþ.
" Pouere men, þat hii mowe ouer, hii huldeþ as ȝe ẏseþ.
" Nou wole vr Louerd ssake hys suerd, hys bowe ẏs ẏbend,
" And [10] prest aþ ẏmade, vorto smẏte men þat bet mẏswende.
" þo seyde ẏch mẏd dreriẏ mode, ȝẏf hii wolleþ turne her þoȝt,
" An soriẏ be, & [11] bete her sẏnne, wolle vr Louerd voryẏue hem oȝt?

[1] By fore *Ar.* [2] Ac ii. holy men be fore *Ar.* [3] Manẏ a daẏ bothe in heuen they were. And now ryght bothe hii come to me, and the angwysses some Hii tolde me, that *Ar. adeo ut in Cod. nostro Harleyano metrum integrum omittatur.* [4] That longe in londe hath be, Of whiche the wreche hiegh faste, as me shall i see. For Prestes with vnclene hondes, and with lecherous mode, All i foẏled, vseth to sacre Godde's flesh & blode *Ar.* [5] Beth *Ar.* [6] Kepeth *Ar.* [7] Wolues, to hem that buthe by taught *Ar.* [8] Thẏnges nele I tell *Ar.* [9] Also bothe shulleth to Hell. And also Robbers of the londe high mennes felewes beth. Power men, that hii mowe, hii buẏldeth as ẏe seeth *Ar.* [10] Redy *Ar.* [11] Let *Ar.*

" þat ỳs vor noȝt," þe oþer seỳde, " vor þe folke's herte ỳs
" So ỳharded, þat hii beþ blynde & deue ywỳs,
" þat hii nolleþ non god þỳng ỳhure ne ỳse.
" þo seỳde ỳch, [1] wer vr Louerd wole euere wroþ be,
" [2] Wer he nolle grace do, & be of mỳlce more?
" Wanne þat lond, after so gret joỳe, so vol worþ of sore,
" Wat ende ssal þerof be, & wanne enỳ blỳs,
" Oþer comfort, after such sor?" þo seỳde þe oþer þys:
" A grene wexỳng tre, þat ỳs fram hỳs more
" Ismyte adoun, & þe brede of þe þre londes þerfram ybore,
" Wanne ỳt ỳs eft bỳ hỳm sulue, wỳþout ech monne's rede,
" Iturnd aȝen to hỳs rỳȝte more, þat er was as dede,
" And bỳgỳnþ to blowe, & suþþe to bere frut,
" þanne me maỳ, wo ỳt [3] ỳsucþ, to bote hopȝe ȝut.
þo þe quene, & hỳre broþer Harald, hurde þỳs,
And Roberd, þat wardeyn was of þe palays ỳwỳs,
Hii wepe, & made deol ỳ nou, vor hii seỳe þe soþnesse,
[4] In wuche lecherỳe & oþer sỳnne þe prestes songe her masse;
And hou þe heỳe men of þe lond þe pouere to grounde broȝte,
þe wreche, þat God wolde do, nas noȝt vor noȝt hii þoȝte.
þe sỳȝte bytokneþ þus, as ỳt was vnderstonde:
þỳs tre þe noble kynedom bỳtokneþ of Engelonde.
þe more bytokneþ þe rỳȝte kunde, þat ech of oþer come,
Fram kỳng Alfred [5] þe kunde more, þat furst was ỳheled at Rome,

---

[1] Whether oure *Ar.* [2] Whether he woll yet grace *Ar.* [3] Seeth, for bote *Ar.* [4] How in lecherie *Ar.* [5] The monarke, tha anoỳnted was atte Rome, *Ar.*

To

To Seynt Edwarde's fader, & to hym suluc al so.
Ac þo he deyde wyþoute ryzt eyr, þe wexynge was ydo,
And þat tre ysmyte fram þe more ouer þre londes brede.
Vor þe kynges were of Engelond of vn kunde sede.
Verst Harald þe quene broþer, & Wyllam bastard also,
And suþþe hys sone Wyllam, þe rede kyng, þerto.
Ac after þat Wyllam, þe rede kyng, yssote was by cas,
And þe gode Henry hys broþer after hym kyng was,
Seynt Edwarde's nece, þat of hys fader kunde come,
And of þe ryzte kunde of Engelond, kyng Henry to wyue nome,
þat was Mold þe gode quene, þat in gode tyme was ybore;
þo smot verst þys tre azen to hys kunde more,
And Normandy þoru þe kyng, & þoru þe quene Engelond
Joyned were þo kundelyche in one monne's honde.
[1] In a þosend zer of grace & syxe & syxty ryzt,
After vr suete Louerd in hys moder was alyzt.
Kyng he was þre & tuenty zer, & syx monþes þerto,
And þre woke & syxte dawes, ar hys lyf were ydo.
þo Seynt Edward adde þys ytold, he closede boþe hys eye,
And þe verþe day of Janyuere in þys manere gan deye.
Al þe franchyse of Engelond, & al joye & blysse,
Myd hym was vaste ybured, þo me bured hym ywys.
And þat me vond sone afterward myd mony deluol cas.
At Westmynstre a tuelfþe day þys gode man ybured was.

---

[1] Whenne Seynt Edwarde thus tolde, he ganne to close his eyghe, The iiii. day of Januare thenne ganne he deye, In the yere of oure Lorde. Ml. lxvi. right After that oure swete Lorde in his moder a light. Kyng he was. xxiii. yere and vi. moneths ther too, And iii. wokes and vi. dayes er his lyf was i doo. Al the fraunchise *Ar.*

HARALD þys false erl, þo Seynt Edwarde dede lay,
Hym sulue he let crouny kyng þulke sulue day
Falslyche. vor Seynt Edward so wel to hym truste,
[1] þat he bytot hym Engelond, þat he yt wel wuste
To [2] Wyllamme's byofþe bastard, duc of Normandye.
Ac hym sulf he made kyng [3] myd such trecherye.
Ac þe gode tryw men of þe lond wolde [4] abbe ymade kyng
þe kunde eyr, þe zonge chyld, Edgar Aþelyng.
[5] Wo so were next kyng bykunde, me clupeþ hym Aþelyng.
þeruor me clupede hym so, vor bykunde he was next kyng.
Ac Harald made hys wey byuore, [6] as myd suykedom,
Myd zyftys & myd vayre byheste, & auong þe kynedom.
So þat somme hym chose alout, & somme hem hulde stylle,
[7] And soffrede as hii nozt ne myzte al oþere's wylle.
So þat Harald was kyng, to wom þe hele þe kynedom.
And Seynt Edwarde's syzte by hym to soþe come.
Vor þo bygan þe wow vorst, as me myzte yse,
þat ssolde, as Seynt Edward seyde, by þre kynges day be.
Vor [8] Coste, Harald broþer, þat he drof er in to Flaundre
By kynge's day Edward hym sulue to gret sclaundre,

[1] Thenne he by toke him *Ar.* [2] Williame's by houe *Ar.* [3] With fals trechourie *Ar.* [4] Haue maked *Ar.* [5] He that were nexte kyng by kynde, Ethelyng he was, And there fore me cleped hym so, for nexte heire he was *Ar.* [6] All with swikeldom, With yeftes and with faire by hestes, to vonge the kyngdom *Ar.* [7] And suffred thulke tyme as men that myght not haue her wille. So that Harolde to wrothur hele helde the kyngdome, And sone, as Seynt Edwarde seide, after ward hit come. And thoo by ganne the wrake ferste, as all men myght i see *Ar.* [8] *Pro* Toste. *Alt in Ar.* Tostyn, Harolde's.

He

He com anon þo vppen hým mýd gret poer & eýe,
Mýd Harald [1] Darfager kýng of Norþweý,
And myd gret poer of Norþomber to Euerwýk hii com,
And muche [2] folc in þe Souþ syde boþe slowe" & nome.
Kýng Harald com aȝen hym mýd poer strong ýnou.
[3] Býsyde Euerwýk hýs ost aȝen hým he drou,
In a stude, þat me clupede [4] Stamford brugge þo,
And nou me clupeþ ýt Batayle brugge, vor þe bataýle þat was þo.
þer hii smýte to gadere, & made a sorý pleý.
Vor þere was Tost aslawe, & þe kýng of Norþweý,
And her sýde [5] al byneþe; to ende ýt com so·
þat Seynt Edward byuore seýde of þelke breþeren tuo,
þat hii ssolde to gadere fýȝte, & Harald aboue be.
[6] þer me mýȝte of þulke word þat soþnesse ýsc.
Fram anon amorwe vorte myd ouer none,
þo" bataýle laste strong, ar [7] he were ýdon,
þe Englysse ouer þe brugg droue þe oþer at laste.
Ac þo þat water was býtuene, hii stode aȝen vaste.
[8] On bodý þer was of Norþweý, betere nas þer non.
Vor he at stode vp þe brugg mýd anax al on,
And drof the Englysse men aȝen, [9] hym ne myȝte non atstonde.
And slou mo þan fourtý of hem mýd hýs owe honde,

---

[1] *Lege*, Harfager. [2] Folke, that hem with stode, bothe slawe *Ar.* [3] A lite bý side Euerwik the hostes geder drough, *Ar.* [4] Staýneforde *Ar.* [5] Was all bý-nethe; to ende cam hit thoo *Ar.* [6] Ther of me myght atte thulke týme all the sothe i see. Fram ernemorwe fort hit was myddeouer none, The *Ar.* [7] Hit *Ar.* [8] A man thér was *Ar.* [9] That non myght him withstande.

And

And wuste hem so vorte after none vorte on myd gyle nome
A ssyp, & ar he were ywar vnder þe brugg com,
And smot hym ar he were ywar vnder foundement lowe
Myd a sper, & so an hey, þat he deyde in a þrowe.
A stalwarde pece þat was, nou God cuþe hys soule loue.
Þo þozte þe Englysse vor hys deþ þat hii were al aboue,
And passede þe brugge anon, & slowe to grounde,
So þat þe oþer partye bynebe was in astounde.
Þo" Harald ysey hys broþer aslawe, [1] & þe kyng Arfager
Of Norþwey & her folc, he ne huld nour hys pere.
He ne zeld nozt wel her mede, þat wyþ hym hys fon slowe,
Þeruore hys men þe lasse her herte to hym drowe.
And þat hii kudde hym afterwarde, azen Willam bastard,
[2] As ze ssole sone yhure, vor he was euere assreward.

MUCHE aþ he sorwe ybe ofte in Engelond,
[3] As ze mowe here & er yhure & vnderstonde,
Of mony batayle þat aþ ybe, & þat men þat lond nome,
Verst, as ze abbeþ yhurd, þe emperours of Rome.

And slough him self fourty with a sparthe in hande. So atte laste vnder him pryuyliche on came lowe, And in the foundement him smote, that he deide in a throwe. Then were the Englysshmen a boue in lytell stounde, And passed the brugge, and slowe downe to grounde. Tho *Ar.*

[1] And Harolde Herfager, He toke gret pruyte ther of, and helde non his pere, And yelde not well *Ar.* [2] As ye mowe ther of hure he after [*f.* here after] warde *Ar.* [3] As ye mowe i hure by wryt, as Ich vnderstande, Of many batailles that hath i be of men this londe that nome, Of Giauntes ferste & Brutonus, and suth of men of Rome. Of Saxons suthe and Danes thenne, and Normannus atte laste. And yut there wolle be more wrake, Icham fulle sore a gaste *Ar.*

Supþe

Suþþe Saxons & Englysse mỳd bataỳles stronge.
Atte laste heỳ of Normandye, þat maystrus bet ȝut here,
Wonne ỳt & holdeþ ȝut, ỳ cholle telle in wuche manere.
[1] þo Willam bastard hurde telle of Haralde's suỳkedhede,
Hou he hadde ỳmad hym kỳng, & mỳd wuch fals hede.
Vor þat lond hỳm was bỳtake, as hỳt welle wuste,
To wỳte ỳt to hỳm wel, & he wel to hỳm truste.
As þe hende he dude verste, & messagers hym sende,
" þat he vnderstode hỳm bet hỳs dede vorto amende,
" And þoȝte on þe grete oþ, þat he hym adde er ỳdo,
" To wyte hym wel Engelond, & to spouse hỳs doȝter also,
" And hulde hỳm þerof vorewarde, as he bỳ het ek þe kỳnge,
" And bote he dude bỳtỳme, he wolde sende hỳm oþer tỳþỳng,
" And seche hỳm out ar tuelf monþe, & hỳs rỳȝtỳs wỳnne,
" þat he ne ssolde abbe in to al Engelond, & erne to wyte hỳm.
Harald hỳm sende word, " þat folỳe ỳt was to truste
" To such oþ, þat was·ỳdo mỳd strengþe, as he wel wuste.
" Vor ȝỳf a maỳde treuþe plỳȝte, to do a fole dede
" Al one priuỳlỳche, wỳþ out hyre frendes rede,
" þulke vorewarde ỳs vor noȝt. & wat loker ỳt aȝte her,
" þat ỳch suor anoþ, þat was þo al in þỳ poer,
" Wỳþoute consel of al þe londe, of þỳng þat mỳn noȝt nas?
" þeruor ned oþ ỳsuore, nede ỳbroke was.
" And ȝỳf þou me wolt seche in Engelond, ne be þou no so sturne
" Syker þou ne ssalt me fỳnde in none hurne.

[1] *Hic perplura prosaice habentur in Ar. haud paucis nimirum metris in eodem prætermissis.*

þo

þo Willam hurde, þat he wolde susteny hys trecherÿe,
He let of sende hys knÿȝtes of al Normandÿe,
To conseyly hÿm in þys cas, & to helpe hÿm in suche nede,
And he gan of her porchas largelyche hem bede,
As hii founde suþþe in Engelond, þo ÿt ywonne was,
þe betere was toward hÿm her herte vor þÿs cas.
þe duc Wÿllam hys wÿlle among hem alle seÿde,
þat four þÿnges hym made mest bÿgÿnne þulke dede.
Vor Godewyne, Haralde's fader, to deþe let do
So vÿllÿche Alfred, hÿs cosyn, & hÿs felawes also.
And vor Harald adde hÿs oþ ÿbroke, þat he suor mÿd hÿs ryȝt honde,
þat he wolde to hÿs byofþe wytÿe Engelond.
And vor Seynt Edward hÿm ȝef Engelond al so.
And vor he was next of hys blod, & best wurþe þerto,
And vor Harald nadde non ryȝt bote in falshede.
þes þÿnges hym made mest bygÿnne þÿs dede.
And vor he wolde, þat all men yseÿe hÿs trywede,
To þe pope Alysander he sende in such cas hÿm to rede.
Haralde's falshede þo he pope ÿseÿ þere,
And perauentere me hÿm tolde more þat soþ were,
þe pope asoÿled & blessed Wÿllam & al hÿs,
þat into þÿs bataÿle mÿd hÿm ssolde ÿwÿs,
And halewede hÿs baner, þat men at vore hÿm bere.
þo was he & al hÿs gladdore þan hii er were.
So þat þÿs duc adde aȝen heruest al ȝare
Hÿs barons & hÿs knÿȝtes, mÿd hÿm vorto fare.
To þe hauene of Seÿn Walrÿ þe duc wende þo
Mÿd þe men þat he adde, & abÿde mo.

After

After heruest þo her ssyppes & al hii preste were,
And wynd hem com after wylle, her seyles hii gon rere,
And hyderwarde in þe se wel glad þen wey nome.
So þat bysyde Hastynges to Engelond hii come,
Hem þozte, þo hii come alond, þat al was in her honde.
At see sone as þe duc Wyllam hys fot sette alonde,
On of hys knyztes zradde, " holde vaste Wyllam nou
" Engelond, vor þer nys non kyng bote þou.
" Vor syker þou be, Engelond ys nou þyn ywys.
þe duc Wyllam anon verbed al hys,
þat none nere so wod, to robby, ne no manere harm do þere
Vpe þe lond, þat hys was, bote hem þat azen hym were.
And an fourty nyzt hy byleuede þere aboute,
And conseylede of batayle, & ordeynd her route.
Kyng Harald sat glad ynou at Euerwyke atte mete,
So þat þer come a messager, ar he adde y zete,
And seyde, þat duc Wyllam to Hastynges was ycome,
And hys baner adde yrerd, & þe contreye al ynome.
Harald, a man wyþ grete herte corageus y nou,
As he of non man ne tolde, þuderwarde vaste drou.
He ne let nozt clupye al hys folc, so wyllefol he was,
And al vor in þe oþer batayle hym vel so vayr cas.
þo þe duc Wyllam wuste, þat he was ycome ney,
A monek he sende hym in message, & dude as þe sley,
þat lond, þat hym was ygyue, þat he ssolde yt vp zelde,
Oþer come, & dere em þe ryzt myd suerd in þe velde.
zyf he seyde, þat he nadde non ryzt þerto,
þat vp þe pope lokynge of Rome he ssolde yt do,

And he wolde þerto stonde, al clene wyþoute fyȝte,
Wer Seynt Edward yt hym ȝef, & wer he adde þerto ryȝt.
Harald sende hym word aȝen, þat he nolde hym take non lond,
Ne non lokynge of Rome, bote suord & ryȝt honde.
þo yt oþer ne myȝte be, eyþer in hys syde
Conseylede and ȝarked hem, batayle vorto abyde.
þe Englysse al þe nyȝt byuore vaste bygon to synge,
And spende al þe nyȝt in glotonye & in dryngynge.
þe Normans ne dude noȝt so, ac hii cryde on God vaste,
And ssryue hem ech after oþer, þe wule þe nyȝt ylaste,
And amorwe hem lete aselȳ wyþ mylde herte ynou.
And suþþe þe duc wyþ hys ost toward þe batayle drou,
An stounde he gan abyde, & hys knyȝtes rede.
" ȝe knyȝtes," he seyde, " þat bet of so noble dede
" þat nere neuere ouercome, ne ȝoure elderne naþemo,
" Understondeþ of þe kyng of France þat ȝoure elderne dude wo,
" Hou my fader in Parus amydde hys kynedom,
" Myd prowesse of ȝoure faderes myd strengþe hym ouercome.
" Understondeþ hou ȝoure elderne þe kyng nome al so,
" And helde hym vorte he adde amended þat he adde mys do,
" And Rychard, þat was þo a chyld, hii ȝelde Normandye,
" þat was duc her byuore, & to such maystrie,
" þat at eche parlement, þat he in France were,
" þat he were ygurd wyþ a suerd, þe wule þat he leuede þere,
" þat þe kyng of France ne hys so hardy were,
" þat atte parlement knyf ne suerd bere.
" Understoundeþ eke þe dedes, þat þulke Rychard dude al so,
" þat he ne ouercome noȝt kynges alone, ac ȝut more þerto.

" Ac

" Ac he ouercom þe deuel, & adoun hým caste
" To gadere as hii wrastled, & bond hýs honden vaste
" Bý hynde at hýs rugge. of such prowesse ȝe þenche,
" Ne ssame ȝe noȝt þat Harald, þat euere was of luþer wrenche,
" An býuore ȝou was versuore, þat he wole mýd hýs taýle
" Turne hys wombe toward vs, & hýs face in batayle.
" Vnderstondeþ þe suýkedom, þat hýs fader & he wroȝte,
" And hii þat mýd hým beþ, þo hii to deþe broȝte
" So výllýche Alfred mý cosýn, & ȝoure kunes men also.
" Hou myȝte in ený wýse more ssame be do?
" Monýe, þat dude þulke dede, ȝe mowe here to daý ýseý.
" Hou longe ssolle her luþer heued aboue her ssoldren be?
" Adraweþ ȝoure suerdes, & lokeþ wo maý do best,
" þat me se ȝoure prowesse fram þe Est to þe West.
" Wote awrete þat gentýl blod, þat so výllýche was ýnome
" Of houre kunes men. vor we mowe wel. vr týme ýs nou ýcome.

þe duc nadde noȝt al ýsed, þat mýd ernest gret
Al ys folc wel atyled to þe bataýle sscet.
A sueýn, þat het Taýlefer, smot vorþ byuore þere,
And slou anon a Englysse man, þat a baner bere,
And efsone anoþer baneur, & þe þrýdde almest al so,
Ac hým sulf he was aslawe, ar þe dede were ydo.
þe furst ende of hys ost býuore Harald mýd such gýnne
So þýcke sette, þat non man ne myȝte come wýþynne,
Wýþ stronge targes hem býuore, þat archers ne dude hem noȝt,
So þat Normans were ney to grounde ýbroȝt.
Wyllam byþoȝte an queintyse, & bygan to fle vaste,
And hýs folc vorþ wýþ hým, as hii were agaste,

And

And flowe ouer a longe dale, & so vp an heẏ.
þe Englysse ost was prout ẏnou, þo hii þẏs ẏseẏ,
An bygonne hem to sprede, & after þen weẏ nome.
þe Normans were aboue þe doune, þe oþere vpard come,
And bẏturnde hem aboue al heselyche, as yt wold be adonward.
And oþer byuore ne myȝte noȝt so quiclyche vpard.
And hii were byuore al to sprad, þat ne mẏȝte bytuene hem wende.
þe Normans were so wel porueẏd aboute in ech ende,
And stones adonward slonge vp hem ẏ nowe,
And mẏd speres & myd flon vaste of hem slowe,
And mẏd suerd & myd ax. vor hii, þat vpard nome,
Ne myȝte non wẏlle abbe of dunt, as hii þat donward come,
And her vantwarde was to broke, þat ne myȝte wyþynne hem wende,
So þat þe Normans vaste slowe in eche ende.
Of Englysse al vor noȝt þat valeẏe was neẏ
As heẏe ẏfuld mẏd dedemen, as þe doune an heẏ.
þe ssetares donward al uor noȝt vaste slowe to grounde,
So þat Harald þoru þe neye ẏssotte was deþe's wounde.
And a knyȝt þat ysey, þat he was to grounde ybroȝte,
And smot, as he laẏ bẏneþe, & slou as vor noȝt.
Fram þat ẏt was amorwe þe bataẏle ẏlaste strong
Vorte ẏt was neẏ mẏd ouernon, & þat was samdel long.
Monẏ was þe gode dunt, þat duc Wẏllam ȝef adaẏ.
Vor þre stedes he slou vnder hẏm, as muche folc ẏsaẏ
Ver prẏked, & ver arnd about, & ver wounded also,
And debrẏsed aȝen dedemen, ar þe bataẏle were ẏdo.

And

And ȝut was Wyllam's grace þulke daẏ so gode,
þat he nadde no wounde, war þoru he ssedde an drop blod.
Þus, lo! þe Englẏsse volc vor naȝt to grounde come
Vor a fals kẏng, þat nadde non rẏȝt to þe kẏnedom,
And come to a nywe louerd, þat more in rẏȝte was.
Ac her noþer, as me may ẏseẏ, in pur ryȝt nas.
And þus was in Normannes hond þat lond ẏbroȝt ẏwẏs,
þat anaunter ȝẏf euermo keuerynge þereof ẏs.
Of þe Normannes beþ þẏs hey men, þat beþ of þys lond,
And þe lowe men of Saxons, as ẏch vnderstonde.
So þat ȝe seþ in eyþer sẏde wat ryȝte ȝe abbeþ þerto,
As ẏch vnderstonde, þat yt was þoru Gode's wẏlle ẏdo.
Vor þe wule þe men of þẏs lond pur heþene were,
Non lond, ne no folc aȝen hem in armys nere.
Ac nou suþþe þat þet folc anong Cristendom,
And wel lute wule hii hulde þe bẏheste, þat hii nome,
And turnede to sleuþe, & to prute, & to lecherẏe,
To glotonẏe, & heẏe men muche to robberẏe,
As þe gostes in a uẏsẏon to Seynt Edward seẏde,
Wu þer ssolde in Engelond come such wrecchede,
Vor robberye of heẏ men, vor clerken hordom,
Hou God wolde sorwe sende in þẏs kynedom.
Bytuene Mẏhelmasse & Seynt Luc, a Seyn Calyxte's daẏ,
As vel in þulke ȝere in a Sater daẏ,
In þe ȝere of Grace, as yt vel al so,
A þousend & syxe & syxtẏ, þẏs batayle was y do.
And duc Wẏllam was þo old nẏne & þrytty ȝer.
And on & þryttẏ ȝer he was of Normandẏe duc er.

þo þỳs batayle was ỳdo, duc Wỳllam let brỳnge
Vaỳre hỳs folc, þat was aslawe, anerþe þoru alle þỳnge.
Alle þat wolde leue he ȝaf, þat hỳs fon anerþe brozte.
Haralde's moder vor hỳr sone wel ȝerne hỳm bỳsozte
By messagers, & largelỳche hym bed of hyr þỳnge,
To graute hyre sone bodỳ anerþe vorto brynge.
Wyllam ỳt sende hỳr vaỳre ynou, wyþoute eny þynge warnore:
So þat ỳt was þoru hỳre wyþ gret honour ỳbore
To þe hous of Waltam, & ybrozt anerþe þere,
In þe holỳ rode chỳrche, þat he let hym sulf rere,
An hous of relygyon, of canons ywys.
It was vaỳre anerþe ỳbrozt, as ỳt ȝut ỳs.
Wỳllam, þỳs noble duc, þo he adde ỳdo al þỳs,
þen wey he nome to Londone he & al hỳs,
As kỳng & prince of lond, wyþ nobleỳe ỳnou.
Aȝen hỳm wyþ vaỳre processyon þat folc of toun drou
And vnderuonge hym vayre y nou, as kỳnȝ of þỳs lond.
þus come, lo! Engelond into Normannes honde.
And þe Normans ne couþe speke þo bote her owe speche,
And speke French as dude atom, & here chỳldren dude al so teche.
So þat heỳmen of þys lond, þat of her blod come,
Holdeþ alle þulke speche, þat hii of hem nome.
Vor bote a man couþe French, me tolþ of hỳm wel lute.
Ac lowe men holdeþ to Englyss, & to her kunde speche ȝute.
Ich wene þer ne be man in world contreỳes none,
þat ne holdeþ to her kunde speche, bote Engelond one.
Ac wel me wot vorto conne bothe wel ỳt ỳs,
Vor þe more þat a man con, þe more worþ he ỳs.

RO-

Printed by Mercier and Chervet,
No. 32, Little Bartholomew Close, London.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 25 June, 2016